CENTRAL LIBRARY

THE
Surgical Instruments of the Hindus

CENTRAL LIBRARY
CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY
Sec. No.: 080 C U
Book No.: 311
LIBRARY.

THE

SURGICAL INSTRUMENTS OF THE HINDUS

WITH

A Comparative Study of the Surgical Instruments of the Greek, Roman, Arab and the Modern Eouropean Surgeons.

BY

GIRINDRANĀTH MUKHOPĀDHYĀYA, B.A., M.D.

Fellow of the Calcutta University, McLeod Gold Medalist in Surgery, Formerly Lecturer on Surgery, Calcutta Medical School and College of Physicians and Surgeons (Bengal), Member of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Life Member and Professor of Botany, Indian Association for the Cultivation of Science, Examiner, Calcutta University.

Griffith Prize Essay for 1909.

In Two Volumes.

VOL. I.

Published by the Calcutta University.

1913.

080 C.U.
311

BCU 2888

PRINTED BY ATULCHANDRA BHATTACHARYYA, AT THE CALCUTTA
UNIVERSITY PRESS, SENATE HOUSE, CALCUTTA.

GS 2387

CENTRAL LIBRARY

CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY
Sec. No.....
Book No.....
LIBRARY

TO

THE HON'BLE

SIR ASUTOSH MUKHOPADHYAY, Kt.,

Saraswati, Sastra-vachaspati,

C.S.I., M.A., D.L., D.Sc., F.R.A.S., F.R.S.E., F.A.S.B.,

Judge of the High Court of Judicature at Fort William in Bengal,

VICE-CHANCELLOR, CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY,

Ex-President of the Asiatic Society of Bengal,

AND

Chairman of the Board of Sanskrit Studies,

In recognition of his love of Science, his pre-eminent services to the cause of University Education, his administrative ability, and his generous liberality to scholars

AS WELL AS

In grateful remembrance of many acts of kindness,

THIS VOLUME IS

DEDICATED

BY

THE AUTHOR

PREFACE.

For researches into the state of medicine among the Ancient Hindus, we have several sources of information to scrutinise. The remarks of Dr. Payne regarding the sources of information of Anglo-Saxon Medicine may apply here with still greater force.[1]

First is the evidence of contemporary literature about the craft of physicians and surgeons, since we are sure that there has always been a class of medicine men of one kind or another. Thus we find in the Ṛgveda, the use of artificial limb as a substitute for a limb accidentaly lost[2]. From the Mahābhārata,

---

[1] Payne's English Medicine in the Anglo-Saxon Times, P. 7.

[2] चरित्रं हि वेरिवाच्छेदि पर्णम्
आजा खेलस्य परितक्म्यायाम् ।
सद्यो जङ्घामायसीं विश्पलायै
धने हिते सर्त्तवे प्रत्यधत्तम् ॥

Ṛgveda—15th Ṛk., 1st Mandala, 116 Sūkta.

अगस्त्य पुरोहितः खेलो नाम राजा तस्य सम्बन्धिनी विश्पलानामस्त्री, संग्रामे शत्रुभिः छिन्नपदा आसीत् । पुरोहितेन अगस्त्येन स्तुतौ अश्विनौ रात्रौ आगत्य आयोमयं पादं समधत्ताम् । तदेतदाह 'आजा'—आजौ, संग्रामे, अगस्त्य पुरोहितस्य—खेलस्य राजतः सम्बन्धिन्याः विश्पलाख्यायाः, 'चरित्रं'—चरणं, 'वेरिव'—वेः पक्षिणः, 'पर्णं' पतत्रम् इव, 'अच्छेदि हि'—पुरा छिन्नमभूत् खलु । हे अश्विनौ ! युवां अगस्त्येन स्तुतौ सन्तौ, 'परितक्म्यायां'—रात्रौ, आगत्य, 'सद्यः'—तदानीमेव, 'सर्त्तवे'—सर्त्तुं गन्तुम् इत्यर्थः, विश्पलायै 'आयसीं',—लौहमयीम्, 'जङ्घां'—जङ्घोपलक्षितं पादम्, 'प्रत्यधत्तम्'—सन्धानम एकीकरणमित्यर्थः कृतवन्तौ ।

Sāyana's commentary.

we learn that when Parīkṣit, the king of the Kurus, became certain of his approaching death by snake-bite, due to a curse uttered by a sage, he tried to protect himself by the constant attendance of a number of physicians, who were well supplied with antidotes.[1] Again it is stated that when the great warrior Bhīṣma was wounded in war, the skillful army surgeons came to him with the necessary medical and surgical appliances to treat his wounds.[2] From the Mohāvāgga, we learn that Jīvaka, the personal physician of Buddha, practised cranial surgery with success.[3] In the Mālavikāgnimitra, we find the use of charms—a signet

---

[1] संमन्त्र्य मन्त्रिभिश्चैव स तथा मन्त्रतत्त्ववित्।
प्रासादं कारयामास एकस्तम्भं सुरक्षितं।
रक्षाञ्च विदधे तत्र भिषजश्चौषधानि च।
ब्राह्मणान्मन्त्रसिद्धांश्च सर्व्वतो वैन्ययोजयत्।

Mahābhārata, Adi Parva, Ch. 42.

[2] उपातिष्ठन्नथो वैद्याः शल्योद्धरणकोविदाः।
सर्व्वोपकरणैर्युक्ताः कुशलैः साधु शिक्षिताः।
तान् दृष्ट्वा जाह्नवीपुत्रः प्रोवाच तनयं तव।
धनं दत्त्वा विसृज्यैतां पूजयित्वा चिकित्सकाः।
एवं गते मयीदानीं वैद्यैः कार्य्यमिहास्ति किं।
क्षत्रधर्म्मे प्रशस्तां हि प्राप्तोऽस्मि परमां गतिं।
नैष धर्म्मो महीपालाः शरतल्पगतस्य मे।
एभिरेव शरैर्याहं दग्धव्योऽस्मि नराधिपाः।
तच्छ्रुत्वा वचनं तस्य पुत्रो दुर्य्योधनस्तव।
वैद्यान् विसर्ज्जयामास पूजयित्वा यथार्हतः।

Mahābhārata, Bhīṣma Parva, Ch. 121, Vs. 5745—5750. (A.S.B. Ed.)

[3] Mohāvāgga, VIII. 1.18.

ring as a healing talisman for the cure of snake-bite;[1] and also we find there a reference to a class of physicians who specialised themselves in Toxicology (Viṣa-Vaidya),[2] and were held in high esteem for their professional skill by the public.[3] From the Bhojaprabandha, the administration of some kind of anæsthetic by inhalation before surgical operations can be ascertained. Similarly from the books of Law, we know the relations of the profession to society in general. In the Manusaṁhitā, we have unmistakable testimony of the decline of Hindu surgery as the author prohibits the eating of cooked rice from the hands of a surgeon.[4]

---

[1] सहि ! देवीए इदं सिप्पिसआसादो आनीदसागमुद्दासणाहं अङ्गुलीअअं सिणिद्धं णिभालअन्ती तुह उवालम्भे पड़िदच्छि ॥

Mālavikāgnimitra, Ch. I.

जय।—जेदु जेदु भट्टा। धुवसिद्धो विस्सवेदी। उदकुम्भविधाणेण सप्पमुद्दिआ कप्पिदव्वा। ता अक्खेसीअदुत्ति। धारि।—एदं सप्पमुद्दअम् अङ्गुलीअअम्। पच्छा मह हत्थे णम्।

Ibid, Ch. IV.

[2] परि।—छेदी दंशस्य दाही वा चतस्यारक्तमोचणम्। एतानि दृष्टसाधाणा-मायुष्या: प्रतिपत्तय: ॥ (संप्रति विषवैद्यानाम् कर्म्म।)

राजा।—जयसेने ! धुवसिद्धि: चिप्रमाह्यताम् ॥

Ibid, Ch. IV.

[3] निपु।—पसत्थमुद्दवत्ती दीसदि। अवि अ धुवसिद्धिणा चिद्दस्सिदी। मा से असङ्कणिज्जं पावं ॥

Ibid, Ch. IV.

[4] चिकित्सकान्देवलकान्मांसविक्रयिणस्तथा।
विपणेन च जीवन्तो वर्ज्या: स्युर्हव्यकव्ययो: ॥

Manusaṁhitā, Ch. III, 152.

चिकित्सकस्य मृगयो: क्रूरस्योच्छिष्टभोजिन:।
उग्रान्नं सूतिकान्नं च पर्य्याचान्तमनिर्दशम् ॥

Ibid, Ch. IV, 212.

Secondly, monuments or inscriptions scattered about the country have to be searched, as references found therein to the science of medicine, are more trustworthy than documents which may have been more or less tampered with by interpolations of subsequent writers. Thus we learn from the Edicts of Aśoka, that hospitals were established by him in different parts of his kingdom, not only for the treatment of suffering humanity but also for the brute creation[1].

Thirdly, personages and scenes in connection with medical practice, and figures of herbs may have been represented in works of art which must be thoroughly examined. But unfortunately we do not possess any such work of art and so we can learn nothing to our purpose from this source. In the interpretation of the subject of the Friezes of the Rani Naur and Ganesha's Cave, Dr. R. L. Mitra says,—"The shampooing in the Ganesa Cave may be for a parent, but the close seat with the right hand round the neck of the male personage in the other, would be highly unbecoming in an unmarried female. But if the stooping figure be taken to be that of a wounded man, a wounded priest for instance, the lady may be a maiden nursing him without any offence to propriety. It is true that the appearance of the figure on the mattress does not indicate suffering from a wound, but in the Rani Naur frieze, the stooping head affords some indication of it."[2]

पूयं चिकित्सकस्यान्नं पुंश्चल्यास्त्वन्नमिन्द्रियम्।
विड्वा वार्धुषिकस्यान्नं शस्त्रविक्रयिणो मलम्॥

Manusaṁhitā, Ch. IV, 220.

[1] Rock Inscriptions, Edict II.
[2] The Antiquities of Orissa, Vol. II, p. 11.

Fourthly, the various kinds of surgical instruments preserved in museums are to be examined and the reports of finds of surgical appliances in various localities are to be studied. We know what a flood of light has been thrown on ancient Greek surgery by the steady progress of archæological discovery and finds of instruments at Pompeii, Herculaneum and elsewhere, and by the study of the specimens preserved in the Naples museum, the Athens museum and other museums of Europe. But as far as I have been able to trace, our museums contain no finds supplying us with any information on the subject.

Fifthly, the literature of medicine itself should be thoroughly inquired into and excerpts elucidative of our subject should be compared with one another. "The detailed descriptions of the very numerous Hindu instruments not being very minute or precise, Professor Wilson says, we can only conjecture what they may have been, from a consideration of the purport of their names, and the objects to which they were applied, in connection with the imperfect description given."[1] We are fortunate, however, in possessing a copious medical literature of great merit from very early times. We shall describe the important books in the introductory chapter, with short notices of their authors.

Sixthly, the comparative study of the science at the same period in other countries also furnishes us with valuable materials as regards the state of medicine in a country. It is well known that Sanskrit works are often written in a very terse language

[1] Royle's Antiquity of Hindu Medicine, foot-note, p. 59-60.

and it might be said with greater truth about the works of early Sanskrit authors, the comment of a learned critic about the style of Thucydides, the famous historian,—"the most obvious and characteristic of his peculiarities is an endeavour to express as much matter as possible in as few words as possible, to combine many thoughts into one, and always to leave the reader to supply something of his own. Hence his conciseness often becomes obscure." I could not form any idea as to the shape of some of the surgical instruments from the descriptions given in the text books, and the commentators are often silent on those passages. But when I read the accounts of similar instruments in Greek and Roman literature, my difficulties at once cleared up. We know with what brilliant results comparative mythology and comparative philology have been studied of late years, and I am sure that a comparative study of medical science by scholars will lead to interesting discoveries. So I have added descriptions of the instruments according to the Greeks, Romans and Arabs at the end of the descriptions given in Sanskrit books: the former serving as commentaries on the latter.

Seventhly, in the accounts of historians, travellers and pligrims from foreign countries, may be found notices of medical science, as they saw it practised during their sojourn in a country, and such impressions, if properly collated, may bear impartial testimony to the progress of the science at the time. Again, we must enquire if the original treatises of medicine can be proved to have been translated into different languages and whether the remedial agents of a country can be traced in the Pharmacopœias of different nations. Thus we

learn from the accounts of Houen Tsang and Fa Hian that charitable institutions such as hospitals, dispensaries and Pûnyasālās (Houses of Charity) were quite common in ancient India.[1] Arrian informs us in his *Indica* that the study of medicine among the Brahmans was in great favour.[2] We know that the standard works on medicine were translated in Arabic in the 8th Century B. C.,[3] and that various medicinal herbs of Indian origin found their way into the Greek Materia Medica.[4]

Eighthly, we must enquire whether the medical practice of ancient times is still resorted to by the physicians of the present days. The Hindu system of medicine is still being practised all over India, more or less in its original form, and so can still be studied at first hand. But for our present purpose, we derive little or no help from the *Vaids* of the present generation. They know practically nothing about anatomy and surgery which began to decline during the Buddhist era, and finally all vestiges of the science became lost during the Mahomedan rule. I have spared no pains to exhaust these sources of information so far as surgical instruments are concerned. Whether or not I have been fortunate enough to give just the necessary details of instruments from the best accessible authorities without at the same time loading my pages with superflous matter, must be left to the judgment of my readers to determine.

---

[1] Beal's Buddhist Records of the Western World, Vol. I., P. 165, 198 and 214; Vol. II., p. 188 and 303.

[2] Arrian's *Indica* c. 27.

[3] Alberuni's India, Sachau's Preface, p. XXX—XXXI.

[4] Royle's Antiquity of Hindu Medicine, p. 77-113.

Now it may be asked why the Science and Art of Surgery, which was successfully practised in Ancient India, is so much neglected by the present generation of *Vaids*. So let us consider the causes that led to the downfall of Hindu Surgery:

1. The Hindus from a very early period have given up the dissection of human bodies—the only trustworthy method of acquiring anatomical knowledge—merely because it may occasion ceremonial uncleanliness. The Ancient Hindus were, however, free from such prejudices. Manu lays down that mere bathing will purify a Brahman who has touched a corpse,[1] whilst stroking a cow or looking at the Sun, having only sprinkled his mouth with water will remove the defilement due to touching a dead bone.[2] But even in the Manusaṁhitā, we can trace the decline of Hindu surgery, and his law forbidding any one from eating food from the hands of a doctor evidently refers to a surgeon.[3]

2. The interference of the priests in India, as in Europe played an important part. They began to cure diseases by spells, charms, texts and drugs; and temples have served as consulting rooms for the treatment as much of the diseases

---

[1] दिवाकीर्त्तिं मुदकां च पतितं सूतिकां तथा।
शवं तत्स्पृष्टिनं चैव स्पृष्ट्वा स्नानेन शुध्यति॥

The Institutes of Manu, Ch. V, 85.

[2] नारं स्पृष्ट्वास्थि सस्नेहं स्नात्वा विप्रो विशुध्यति।
आचम्यैव तु निस्नेहं गामालभ्यार्कमीक्ष्यवा॥

Ibid, Ch. V, 87.

[3] Ibid, Ch. III, 152; Ch. IV, vs. 212 and 220.

of the body as of the soul. The example of such a temple we still find in Tārakeśvar where many sick people repair to have their maladies cured by dreams, hypnotic suggestions and incubation or temple-sleep. Similar practice was prevalent in Egypt and Greece in olden times. The modern practice of using galvanic rings and abdominal belts is merely an advanced method of indulging in superstitious ideas.

3. The patients always dreaded the surgeon's knife—especially when the use of a general anæsthetic was unknown. At the same time, the comparative success of poultices, actual and potential cauteries, and other external applications have influenced the lay mind that operations by knife are not always needed.[1] The Hindu surgeons themselves believed in similar tenets, for Suśruta, the surgeon, remarks that "of all cutting instruments and their substitutes, caustics (or vegetable alkalies) are the most important, because by means of them, deep and superficial incisions and scarifications may be made, and derangements of the three humours (air, bile and phlegm) may be rectified"; and again he says that "with

---

[1] दिव्यौषधिं विना देवि शस्त्रविद्या सुनिष्फला।
वैरूप्यं कुरुते या च दुश्चिकित्स्ये व्यधान्तरे॥
जायन्ते हि यथार्शांसि पाटितानि पुनः पुनः।
किं तत्र शस्त्रसाध्यं स्यात् सुसिद्धैर्भेषजैर्विना॥
धातुनां व्यापदि यत्र भेषजं नैव सिद्ध्यति।
ह्याभये दुस्तरे तस्मिन् शस्त्रमेव विधीयते॥
पुनः संशमनं तत्र धातुनाम् हि प्रशान्तये।
प्रदातव्यं महादेवि शस्त्रादर्ध्वाक् ब्रवीमि ते॥

Mahānīlatantra, Paṭola X, vs. 72-74.

regard to surgical treatment, actual cautery is said to be superior to caustics, in as much as diseases treated with the actual cautery do not reappear, and because it can cure diseases which are incurable by medicines, instruments and caustics."[1] Thus we see that the Hindus were partial to external applications as a cure of surgical diseases, and gradually they neglected the surgical operations—one of the most important means of acquiring knowledge in Morbid Anatomy and of testing the correctness of diagonosis, in the absence of the post mortem examinations of the cadavers. Thus not only surgery but medicine also suffered materially.

4. The Hindus always cherish a high regard for the writings of their sages, and the earliest works on medicine became the standard works and were held sacred. Any violation of their opinions was considered a sacrilege ; and all knowledge thus soon became stereotyped. In later times, none dared to question the validity of the statements contained therein, and though about three thousand years have elapsed, and though the votaries of the science are still honoured and wellpaid, the science instead of improving has markedly deteriorated. In fact, only two authors—Caraka and Suśruta—are original; the later authorities—and there is a vast number of them—were merely their servile copyists who only differed from them when they indulged in some grave errors. We have a parallel in the history of medical science in Europe, where Galen

[1] चारादग्निर्गरीयान् क्रियासु व्याखातसद्दग्धानां रोगानामपुनर्भावाद्भेषजशस्त्रक्षारैरसाध्यानां तत्साध्यत्वाच्च ।

Suśruta, Sūthrasthānam, Ch. XII.

held his sway over the profession for about two thousand years.

5. One of the potent causes of progressive decadence in the knowledge and practice of surgery amongst the Hindus is the rapid spread of Buddhism in India. Though Buddha sanctioned the use of the lancet in some cases, in cases of a doubtful nature he prohibited the use of instruments in the treatment of even surgical diseases. For example, he allowed the surgical treatment of boils by knife,[1] but he prohibited not only the use of the lancet for treatment of fistula-in-ano but the use of clysters also.[2] As it would be interesting to know the reasons of this prohibition, I quote the story in full from the Mohāvāgga (Sacred Books of the East) :[3]

1. Now when the Blessed One had remained at Sâvatthi as long as he thought fit, he went forth on his journey to Râgagaha ; and wandering straight on he arrived at Râgagaha; and there at Râgagaha he stayed at the Veluvana in the Kalandaka-nivâpa.

Now at that time a certain Bhikkhu was suffering from fistula. And the physician (named) Âkâsa-gotta lanced it. And the Blessed One when he was going round through the sleeping-places came to the place where that Bhikkhu dwelt.

2. Âkâsa-gotta, the physician, saw the Blessed One coming from afar ; and when he saw him he said to the Blessed One : ' Let the venerable Gotama come and look at this Bhikkhu's orifice ;

---

[1] Mohāvāgga, VI. 14. 4 & 5.
[2] Ibid, VI. 22. 3.
[3] Ibid, VI. 22.

it is like the mouth of an iguana!' And the Blessed One thinking, 'This foolish fellow is making fun of me,' kept silence and turned away. And in that connection, and on account of that, he called a meeting of the Bhikkhu-sa*m*gha, and asked the Bhikkhus: 'Is there, O Bhikkhus, in that Vihâra a Bhikkhu who is sick?'

'There is, Lord.'

'What is the matter, O Bhikkhus, with that Bhikkhu?'

'That venerable one, Lord, has a fistula, and Âkâsa-gotta the physician, has been lancing it.'

3. The Blessed Buddha rebuked (that Bhikkhu), saying, 'This is improper, O Bhikkhus, for that foolish one, unbecoming, indecent, unworthy of Samaṇas, not allowable and ought not to be done. How can this foolish fellow, O Bhikkhus, allow a surgical operation to be performed in that part of his body? The skin there, O Bhikkhus, is tender, the wound is difficult to treat, the knife is difficult to guide. This will not redound, O Bhikkhus, to the conversion of the unconverted.'

And having rebuked him, the Blessed One, after delivering a religious discourse, said to the Bhikkhus: 'You are not, O Bhikkhus, to allow a surgical operation to be performed upon you in that part of your bodies. Whosoever allows that, is guilty of thulla*kk*aya offence."

4. Now at that time K*h*abbaggiya Bhikkhus, since a surgical opperation had been forbidden by the Blessed One, used a clyster.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

'Is it true, as they say, O Bhikkhus, that the *Kh*abbaggiya Bhikkhus use a clyster ?'

'It is true, my Lord.'

He rebuked them, and having delivered a religious discourse, said to the Bhikkhus: 'No surgical opperation is to be performed within a distance of two inches round the anus, and a clyster is not to be used. Whoever does so, is guilty of a thulla*kk*aya offence.'

And thus we find that Jīvaka, the famous surgeon, is said to have cured a case of fistula-in-ano by the single application of an ointment.[1] The operation fell into such disuse that when Śaṅkarāchāryya suffered from the same disease, no surgical aid was thought necessary by the physicians, though it is said that he was treated by renowned doctors of the time.[2]

From Megasthenes, we learn that "among the Sarmans the Hylobioi (living in woods) were held in most honour, and next to them the physicians, who are mendicants and also ascetics, like the class above them and the class below them,

---

[1] "And Gîvaka Komârabha*kk*a healed the fistula of the Magadha King Seniya Bimbisâra by one anointing."

Mohāvāgga (Sacred Books of the East), VIII. 1. 15.

[2] अचिकित्स्यभगन्दराख्यरोगप्रसरक्षीणितपङ्किलस्वगात्रां ।
अजुगुप्स्यविशोधनादिरूपां परिचर्यामकृताऽस्य तीटकार्य्यः ॥
* * * * * * * *
निगदिते मुनिनेति भिषग्वरा विदधिरे बहुधागदसत्क्रियाः ।
न च शशाम गदोबहुतापदोविमनसः पटवो भिषजोऽभवन् ॥

Śaṅkaravejoya, Ch. XVI.

which consisted of sorcerers and fortune-tellers;"[1] and Strabo[2] mentions that these physicians "cured diseases by diet rather than by medicinal remedies, which were chiefly unguents and cataplasms."[3]

6. No science can flourish without the support of the government of the day. The Hindus became a subject race; and any departure from the traditional store of knowledge in the shape of improvement in the quality and additions to its quantity was neither tolerated by the people, who are proverbially conservative, nor countenanced by the royal court, for the conquerors brought with them and patronised their own hakeems and doctors. Neither the Mahomedans nor the English have taken any real interest in the Indian Medical Science from preconcieved notions that it contains nothing worthy of their perusal. The *Kavirajes* again are so conservative in their opinions that they can not boldly advocate even the use of such drugs as are of unquestionable value in the treatment of diseases, as for example the use of Quinine in Malaria. To this may be contrasted the behaviour of Bhāvamiśra, who lived about three hundred years back and who adopted many medicaments of foreign origin. The consequence can easily be imagined, and in the language of Elphinstone, can be thus described: "Physicians follow the practice of their instructor without inquiry, and surgery is so far neglected, that bleeding is left to the barber, bone-setting to the herdsman, and every one is ready to administer

---

[1] The Invasion of Alexander the Great. M'Crindle. Appendices. p. 358.
[2] Geography, XV. i. 58-60.
[3] The Invasion of Alexander the Great. M'Crindle. Appendices. p. 368-69.

a blister, which is done with the juice of the euphorbium and still oftner with the actual cautery."[1]

But we need not enlarge any further. The object of this essay is not to write out an exhaustive dissertation on the Hindu medical science but by a few suggestive facts, however imperfect and fragmentary, to stimulate curiosity and divert attention of the diligent scholars to a vast field of research, which seems as yet to have been only partially explored.

It is proper here to acknowledge that I have on all occasions freely availed myself of the labours of Drs. Wise, Thakore Saheb of Gondal, and the translators of Suśruta Saṁhitā in the Biblotheca Indica, namely, Dutt and Hoernle. It is a great pity that this translation has not as yet progressed beyond three fasciculi. Hoernle's recent contribution, "Osteology of the Hindus," is a move in the right direction and we hope it to be followed by similar enquiries in other branches of the science. Royle for the first time proved beyond doubt the high antiquity of Hindu medicine, and established its right position in the history of the science. Wise is the pioneer of systematic research in this field of study, and his sympathetic appreciation of the Hindu system of medicine will always be remembered with gratitude by our countrymen. Dutt's Materia Medica of the Hindus is a work of great merit; and I have derived material assistance from the excellent treatise, "History of Aryan Medical Science," by the Thakore Saheb of Gondal. Dr. Ray's History of Hindu Chemistry is a valuable contribution in the cognate subject of chemistry. I have borrowed from these writers largely, but

[1] Elphinstone's History of India, 5th Ed., p. 160.

I flatter myself it will also be found that I have further collected from various sources a store of valuable information, for which I am in no way indebted to any of my predecessors in the same field of research. The descriptions of the surgical instruments of the Greeks, the Romans and the Arabs, I have taken from the excellent English translations of Paulus Ægineta, the Extant Works of Ætius and the Genuine Works of Hippocrates, prepared by the renowned Adams, for the Sydenham Society. I have also laid the recent monograph, "Surgical instruments in Greek and Roman times" by Dr. Milne, largely under contribution; I only regret that I had no access to the book a little earlier, otherwise much of my labour in search for descriptions of the instruments of the Greeks would have been saved. For the last five years, I have been engaged on this investigation and it was when I had nearly finished, that Milne's book was mentioned to me by the Hon'ble Mr. Justice Asutosh Mookerjee, the Vice-Chancellor of the Calcutta University and the President of the Asiatic Society of Bengal.

To complete the subject, I have added plates of nearly all the varieties of instruments; but they are more or less hypothetical as we do not possess any actual specimens of the instruments of the Hindus. Written descriptions of surgical instruments are uninteresting and often fail to convey the true idea, which could be easily made evident by the pencil. For purposes of comparison I have given drawings of instruments of the Greeks, the Romans and the Arabs, when I thought that they might be of value for the proper elucidation of my subject. I am indebted to many authors

I am indebted to many authors for some of the engravings of the instruments. I have been careful to give the source whence the borrowed ones are taken, as far as I have been able to ascertain them. If this has been omitted in any case, it is from inadvertence, not from design. My best thanks are due to them and I here acknowledge my indebtedness to the authors for availing myself of their labours without their permission. But many new illustrations will be found, and I have appended my name to those drawn by myself. These figures of the surgical instruments would be found to tally better with the descriptions of the instruments given in the Sanskrit books than the illustrations of the previous authors. The drawings of surgical instruments as given by me would look more like the figures in a modern catalogue of surgical instruments. Some of my friends could hardly believe when they saw the plates that these instruments were known to the ancient Hindus at such an early age. This feeling of amazement and incredulaty as regards the surgical instruments used by the ancient Hindus has its parallel in the observations of Billroth[1] about the surgical instruments found in the excavations at Pompeü and now preserved in the museum at Naples. He says: "It made a pecular impression upon me, when I saw before me this two thousand years old surgical armamentarium of a Roman colleague, differing but slightly in the form of the more ordinary instruments from those of our time. *Ars longa vita brevis.*" Milne[2] also remarks: "The works of those (Paré, Scultetus and Heister) are profusely illustrated with instruments, some of which can plainly be seen to tally exactly with the descriptions of the classical authors."

[1] Billroth's Surgery, Vol. I, Introduction, Page 7. Syd. Soc. Ed.

[2] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments, P. 8.

In describing the surgical instruments, I have confined myself strictly to the texts of the authors and commentators whom I have quoted, and have given the original Sanskrit passages in the foot-notes. These will be of great help to scholars who will try to study the subject at first hand, and prosecute further historical inquiries. The references in the foot-notes do not refer to pages of any particulars edition of the work, as such pagination causes inconvenience to the readers who may not secure the edition in question; so we have given the section, and chapter of the book which will be found in any edition.

In the translations of Sanskrit passages, I have endeavoured to follow the original as closely as possible, except where a somewhat free rendering was necessary to make the meaning clear.

The dates of the ancient Hindu authors of Sanskrit medical books cannot be ascertained with certainty. In the first chapter I have endeavoured to discuss briefly their approximate ages. But as I have compared the surgical instruments of the ancient Hindus with those of the Greeks, Romans and Arabs, a concise summary of the chronological dates of the Græco-Roman, Arab, and the later authors would be a great help in the proper elucidation of my text.

Authors.	*Date.*
Pythagoras	580-504 B.C.
Megasthenes	303 B.C.
Ktesias ...	400 B.C.
Hippocrates	460 B.C.
Hero of Alexandria ...	285-222 B.C.

Authors.	*Date.*
Dioscorides	First century A.D.
Celsus	25-30 B.C. to 45-50 A.D.
Scribonius Largus	45 A.D.
Soranus	First century A.D.
Rufus of Ephesus	98-117 A.D.
Galen	131-201 A.D.
Marcellus Empiricus ...	300 A.D.
Antyllus	3rd century, A.D.
Oribasius	326-403 A.D.
Theodore Priscianus ...	4th century A.D.
Caelius Aurelianus... ...	4th or 5th century A.D.
Moschion	5th century A.D.
Actius...	5th century A.D.
Alexendar of Tralles ...	525-605 A.D.
Paulus Ægineta ...	660 A.D.
Serapion	800 A.D.
Rhazes	850-932 A.D.
Haly Abbas	After 950 A.D.
Avicenna	980-1037 A.D.
Abul Cassim	x 1106 A.D.
Avenzoar	x 1162 A.D.
Paré	1509-90 A.D.
Scultetus	1650 A.D.
Heister	1739 A.D.

I can not suffer this work to go forth without offering at least an explanation of, if not an apology for, the delay which has occurred in the publication of this thesis. It is mainly due to the accidental fire which reduced the types and the blocks

for this work to ashes and distroyed a part of the manuscript. This portion had to be written again. Again the task of reading proof sheets was laid on me entirely. The occupation of a laborious profession encroached on my time; and I was not fortunate enough to secure the co-operation of any worker in this field of research. The result might be anticipated and no one is more conscious of the unsatisfactory issue than myself. I had no experience in proof reading, and so mistakes are not uncommon. Some of the errors will be found corrected in the corrigenda. As regards the corrections of many of the proof sheets of the Sanskrit foot-notes I was assisted by my son Hirendranāth Mukhopādhāya, who helped me much in getting this book completed. The author will feel obliged if informed of any errors that may be detected and of references to informations which ought to have been given, and also for any hints that may make a future edition more useful to the readers. But I have this consolation in my mind that I have not pushed this work through the press hurriedly or prefunctorily and I have done my best. I have laboured with the usual drawbacks of an active professonal life and if this be admitted by the critic as an excuse for errors and failures, I shall be grateful to him.

A copious index has been provided for this work, whereby anything material in the whole book may be readily found out; of which it may be said that it wants no other advantages than such as the author had not power to give.

It would not be out of place here to mention that part of this essay was read before the Asiatic Society of Bengal in June, July and August, 1908. The learned President in his annual address remarked as follows: "In the course of the last

session Dr. Girindranath Mukerjee submitted to the society a paper of considerable extent, in which he elaborately examined the subject of the surgical instruments of the ancient Hindus. The questions he has raised, as to the priority of Hindu medicine over that of the Greeks, the Romans and the Arabs, are likely to arouse controversy, but in whatever way the question of priority may be decided, it seems to me truly remarkable that the descriptions given in our most ancient books on medicine, of the surgical Instruments then in use, should bear a close resemblance to the descriptions given not only in Greek, Roman and Arab medical writings but in many cases with the descriptions given in medern works on surgery. I trust that this subject, so peculiarly Indian, will not be left alone and will receive the attention from investigators which it undoubtedly deserves."[1]

As regards the transliteration of Sanskrit words, we have employed the method adopted in the Congress of Orientalists and circulated in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, ignoring in fact, the unpleasant characters of the Sacred Book of the East.

---

[1] Journal and Proceedings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Vol. V, 1909, Annual Address, p. XXX.

GS 2387

I

SANSKRIT AND ALLIED ALPHABETS.

अ . . . . *a*	ओ . . . . *o*	ट . . . . *ṭ*	ब . . . . *b*
आ . . . . *ā*	औ . . . . *au*	ठ . . . . *ṭh*	भ . . . . *bh*
इ . . . . *i*	क . . . . *k*	ड . . . . *ḍ*	म . . . . *m*
ई . . . . *ī*	ख . . . . *kh*	ढ . . . . *ḍh*	य . . . . *y*
उ . . . . *u*	ग . . . . *g*	ण . . . . *ṇ*	र . . . . *r*
ऊ . . . . *ū*	घ . . . . *gh*	त . . . . *t*	ल . . . . *l*
ऋ . . . . *ṛ*	ङ . . . . *ṅ*	थ . . . . *th*	व . . . . *v*
ॠ . . . . *ṝ*	च . . . . *c*	द . . . . *d*	श . . . . *ś*
ऌ . . . . *ḷ*	छ . . . . *ch*	ध . . . . *dh*	ष . . . . *ṣ*
ॡ . . . . *ḹ*	ज . . . . *j*	न . . . . *n*	स . . . . *s*
ए . . . . *e*	झ . . . . *jh*	प . . . . *p*	ह . . . . *h*
ऐ . . . . *ai*	ञ . . . . *ñ*	फ . . . . *ph*	ळ . . . . *l*

ं (*Anusvāra*) . . . *ṁ*		ऽ (*Avagraha*) . . . '	
ँ (*Anunāsika*) . . *m̐*		*Udātta* . . . . . ˊ	
ः (*Visarga*) . . . . *ḥ*		*Svarita* . . . . . ˆ	
✕ (*Jihvāmūlīya*) . *ḫ*		*Anudātta* . . . . . ˋ	
⋏ (*Upadhmānīya*) *ḫ*			

CONTENTS.

PAGES.

PREFACE ... ... i—xxii

Sources of information: contemporary literature; monuments and inscriptions; figures of herbs and scenes of medical practice; museums; medical books; comparative study; accounts of historians, travellers and pilgrims; medical practice of the present time. Downfall of Hindu Surgery: causes: discontinuance of dissection; interference of priests; dread of the surgeon's knife; authority of the ancient sages; Buddhism; want of Government help. Acknowledgment. Chronological dates of the Græco-Roman, Arab and later authors. Transliteration of Sanskrit words.

CONTENTS ... ... xxiii—xxix

CORRIGNENDA ... ... xxx—xxxi

WORKS BY THE AUTHOR xxxii

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION ... ... 1—33

Ancient medical authors and their works: Āyurveda; Atharvaveda; Caraka Saṁhitā,—age of Caraka, editions and commentaries; Suśruta Saṁhitā—Dhanvantari, Suśruta, Nāgārjuna,—age of Suśrutā, Candrāṭe, Pāḷakāpya,—editions

PAGES.

and commentaries. Vāgbhaṭa I,—Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha, his age, edition and commentary; Vāgbhat II: Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, editions and commentaries; Vagbhaṭā III—Rasa Ratna Samuccaya; Mādhavakara:—Nidāna; Vṛnda Madhava:—Siddhayoga; Cakrapāṇi-datta:—Cikitsāsāra Saṁgraha, editions; Śāraṅgadhara:—Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, editions and commentary; Bhāva Miśra:—Bhava Prakāśa, editions.

CHAPTER II.

HOSPITALS AND DISPENSARIES ... ... 34—60

Hospital in the Caraka Saṁhitā; Greek iatrium; list of appliances in surgical operations; the lying-in-room; the child's room; room for operated cases; the kitchen; qualities of a good patient and a good nurse; Charitable hospitals during the reigns of Aśoka and Śilāditya II; Puṇyaśālās; animal hospital; opinions of ancient sages as to the merit of the founder of a hospital; Dispensaries; Anæsthetics.

CHAPTER III.

MATERIALS OF INSTRUMENTS ... ... 60—89

Iron and Steel, Copper, Tin, Lead, Bell-metal, Gold and Silver, Horn, Bone and Ivory; Wood, Stone. Execution. Ornamentation. Edges of sharp instruments. The tempering of sharp instruments. Good and bad qualities of surgical instruments. The uses of instruments.

Pages.

Whetstone. Instrument cases. Boxes for ointments, ointment pots, and portable cases. Kapāṭa-Śayana or Fracture-Bed.

CHAPTER IV.

The number of Surgical Instruments ... 90—99

Instruments and their classification; The Yantra or blunt instruments; The Svastika or cruciform instruments: The Sandaṁśa or pincher-like instruments; The Tāla or picklock-like instruments; The Nāḍī or tubular instruments, the śalākā or rod-shaped instruments. The Upayanta or accessory instruments. The Śastras or sharp instruments. The Anuśastras or substitutes for sharp instruments.

CHAPTER V.

Discription of the Blunt Instruments ... 100—224

1. The Svastika yantra or cruciform Instruments: Siṁhamukha svastika or Lion-faced forceps. Vyāghramukha or Tiger forceps. Vṛkamukha or Wolf forceps. Tarakṣumukha or Hyena forceps. Ṛkṣamukha or Bear forceps. Dwipimukha or Panther forceps. Mārjāramukha or Cat forceps. Śṛgālamukha or Jackal forceps. Airbhāruka or Deer forceps. Kākamukha or Crow forceps. Kaṁkamukha or Heron forceps. Kuraramukha or Osprey forceps. Cāsamukha or Blue-Jay forceps. Bhāsamukha or Eagle forceps. Śaśaghātīmukha or Hawk forceps. Ulukamukha or owl forceps. Cillimukha or Kite forceps. Syenamukha or Vulture forceps. Gṛdhramukha or Falcon forceps.

PAGES.

Krauñcamukha or Curlew forceps. Bhṛṅgarājamukha or Butcher-bird forceps. Aṅjalikarṇa forceps. Avabhañjanamukha forceps. Nandimukha forceps. II. The Sandaṁśa or Pincher-like forceps: Forceps with and without handles. Forceps with Smooth and rough ends. Epilation forceps. Mucuṭī or Mucundī. Vaṁśabidala or Bamboo forceps. III. Tāla-Yantra or Picklock-like instrument: Ectāla and Dvitāla. The Ear-scoop. IV. The Naḍī-Yantra or Tubular instruments: Kaṇṭhaśalyāvalokinī or Throat speculum. Pañcamuka and Trimukha. Tubulur instruments for inspection of arrows. Śalyanirghātanī. The Impellent. Tubular instruments for Piles—for inspection and medication. Śamī. The Rectal Speculum. Calopter. Tubular instruments for the Fistula-in-ano. Tubular instruments for the nose: Nasal Speculum. Nathu-karanī and Yamaka-nathu-karanī. Nasal tubes. The Aṅguli-trāṇaka or Finger-guard. Yoni-Vraṇekṣana or Vaginal Speculum. Diopter. Bivalve Speculum. The tubular instruments for wounds—Vraṇa-vasti or Wound-Syringe. Tubular instrument for ascites. Dākodara yantra or Canula. Tubular instruments for Hydrocele. Tubular instruments for rectal stricture. Tubular instruments for injection into the rectum—Vasti Yantra or Rectal clyster. Uttaravasti or urethral, vaginal and uterine tubes. Catheters. Tubular instruments for inhalation and fumigation. Disinfection of rooms, clothes &c. Tubular instruments for cupping. Śṛṅga or horn. Alābu Yantra or gourd. Ghati Yantra. V. Śalakā

PAGES.

or rods: Earthworm probes. Arrow probe. Snake's hood probe. Fish-hook probes. The Śaṅkus; Swab probe. Spathomele or spatula probe. Spoon-shaped probes. Cyathiscomele. Nail-shaped probes: Jāmvavauṣṭha probe. Gamma-shaped probe and the aṅkuśa cautery. Collyrium probes. Karṇa Śodhana or Ear-cleaner. Garbha-Śaṅku or Fœtus or Traction hook. Yujña-Śaṅku or Midwifery forceps. Sarpa-faṇa or snake's hood-like rods. Stone extractor. Hippocratic oath. Sarapuṅkha-mukha Probe. Arddhacandramukha or Half-moon Probe. Bone Lever. Director. Urethral Probe. VI. The Upayantra or Accessory Instruments. Rajju or thread, Venikā or twine; Paṭṭa or Bandages, Abdominal binder, Field Hospital, Dressings. Carma or leather: leather bandage, leathar ligatures. Yantra-Śaṭaka or Lithotomy Strap or binding apparatus, Pāśa. Leather bags. Śīrovasti or leather-bag for the head. Leather Band. Leather Bottles, Jars, etc. Antarvalkala or Barks. The crutches, Tendrils of creepers or Latā. Vastra or cloth. Aṣṭhilāṣma or stone. Mudgara or Hammer. Pāṇipadatala or hand and foot. Aṅguli or fingers. Jihvā or tongue. Danta or tooth. Nakha or nails. Mukha or mouth. Vāla or hair. Probang. Suture material. Aśvakaṭaka or the ring of a horse's bridle. Śākhā or branch of a tree. Sṭhīvana or spittle. Pravāhana or fluxing the patient. Har a or Happiness. Ayaskānta or Load-stone. Kṣāra or Caustics or Potential cautery. Agni or Actual cautery. Bheṣaja or medicines. Goats' gut; Arrest of hæmorrhage.

PAGES.

CHAPTER VI.

THE ŚASTRA OR THE SHARP INSTRUMENTS ... 225—281

The Mandalāgra or round-headed knife. Karapatra or saw. Vṛddhipatra—dīrghavaktra and hrasva-vaktra—the long and short-mouthed knives. Hypodermic medication. Nakhaśastra or Nail-parer. Mudrikā, angulisaśtra or finger or ring-knife. Utpalapatra, Phlebotome., Arddha-dhāra, Cakradhāra, adhyardhadhāra. Sucī or needles—curved, half curved and straight. Javamukhī needle. Kuśapatra. Āṭīmukha. Śararīmukha or scissors. Antarmukha: arddhacan-drānana or half-moon-faced scissors. Ardhacan-dra knife. Trikūrccaka, kūrcca, khaja. Kuṭhā-rikā. Vrīhimukha or trocar. Ārā or awl, Karṇa-vedhanī or ear-perforater, Juthikā, Pāni-mantha. Karmāra or nālī. Vetaspatraka. Vaṭiśa or sharp hook, Danta-Śaṅku or tooth-scaler. Danta-lekhana or tooth-scaler. Enī-pada. Eṣanī or sharp probes; needle-shaped probes, Kuruvaka probes. The operation of couching of cataract. Yavamukhī Śalā. Sarpāsya. Gold or silver knife. Pratuda. The mode of holding the sharp instruments. The practical training in surgical operations.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ANUŚASTRA OR ACCESSORY SHARP INSTRUMENTS... 282—294

Bamboo. Dissection. Crystal, Glass and ruby. Leeches. Fire and caustics. Fingers and nails. Leaves. Young stems of plants.

PAGES.

CHAPTER VIII.

HYGIENIC APPLIANCES AND HOSPITAL REQUISITES ... 295—328

Tooth-brush. Tooth-pick. Razor and Shears. The practice of shaving. Keśa-prasādhanī or comb. Looking-glass. Dress. Uṣnīṣa or head-dress. Chatra or Umbrellas. Yaṣṭhi or sticks. Upānaha or shoes. Vyājanī and cāmara or the fan. Filters. Water vessel. Bathing. Drinking Vessels. Dinner service. Spoons. Spittoons. Bedpans and Urinals. Pus Basins. Pestle and mortar. Sieves, Strainers and filters. Cold and hot applications. Balance or Māṇadanda. Collyrium pots. Medicine glass. Dropper. Grind-stone. Stone and iron muller.

CHAPTER IX.

THE CONCLUSION ... ... 329—362

Claim of Indian Medicine as a historical study. The knowledge of the Science in ancient India. Antiquarian value of the study. A comparative study. Relation of the Hindu and Greek Medical Science. Indebtedness of the Persians, Arabs, Chinese, Tibetans and the modern Europeans.

Appendix ... ... 365—366

List of works consulted ... ... 367—371

Index—English ... ... 374—416

Sanskrit ... ... 417—444

CORRIGENDA.

Page	ii		F. N. 3				
,,	xi	Para 5					
,,	xi	...	F. N. 1				
,,	xiii	...	,, 1	*read*	Mahāvagga	*for*	Mohāvāgga.
,,	82	line 4	,, 1				
,,	116	,, 23	,, 5				
,,	182	,, 10, 15	,, 2				
,,	x	,, 10	...				
,,	202	,, 1 of para. 5	...				
,,	203	,, 2 & last line	...				
,,	262	,, 12	...	,,	diagnosis	,,	diagonosis.
,,	308	...	,, 1				
,,	317	,, 10	...				
,,	319	...	,, 3				
,,	320	,, 5	,, 1				
,,	xiii	...	,, 2	,,	Vijoya	,,	Vejoya.
,,	xv	...	...		Bibliotheca	,,	Biblotheca.
,,	3	...	,, 1 & 2	,,	Macdonell	,,	Macdonnel.
,,	303	...	,, 1				
,,	4	...	,, 1	,,	Dārila	,,	Dārita.
,,	17	... 7	...	,,	Bhānumati	,,	Vānumati.
,,	27	item 8	...	,,	Rabi	,,	Robi.
,,	30	...	,, 1	,,	Archæo	,,	Archœo.
,,	12	...	,, 3	,,			
,,	31	...	...	,,	Śārṅgadhara	,,	Sārangadhara.
,,	35	... 13	...	,,	Skilful	,,	Skillful.
,,	40	,, 8					
,,	37	,, 11	...	,,	Sesame	,,	Seasame.
,,	39	,, 23	...	,,	Bhūrjja	,,	Bhūrya.
,,	40	,, 14	...	,,	Water and Mortar	,,	Water, Mortar.
,,	70	,,	,, 3	,,	Vṛddha	,,	Vṛddhya.
,,	71	...	,, 1 & 3				
,,	87	... 2 & 4	...	,,	Kapāṭa	,,	Kapāta.
,,	88	,, 13	...				
,,	99	,, 8	...	,,	Pālakāpya	,,	Pālakapya.
,,	109	,, 8	...	,,	Śalya	,,	Salya.
,,	117	,, 5	...	,,	bamboo	,,	bambu.
,,	119	,, 19	...	,,	Barnes'	,,	Barnes,
,,	120	,, 21	...	,,	Sorts	,,	Shorts.

Page	159	line 13	...	*read*	Jāmvovausṭha	*for*	Jamvovousṭha.
„	178	item 10	...	„	Cīna	„	Chīna.
„	181	...	„ 2	„	Obstetric	„	Obstetire.
„	196	line 12	...	„	Gayadāsa	„	Gayadāssa.
„	219	„ 14	...	„	Sesamum	„	Seasum.
„	219	„ 21	...	„	effectual	„	offectual.
„	221	item 3	...	„	Pācana	„	Pāchana.
„	242	line 2	...	„	Parietes	„	Parietis.
„	262	„ 10	...	„	Round...four cornered	„	four cornered.....round.
„	285	„ 15	...	„	Hippo	„	Hyppo.
„	295	„ 3	...	„	Requisites	„	Requisities.
„	306	„ 11	...	„	Yaṣṭhi	„	Yaṣṭi.
„	311	item 2	...	„	octagonal	„	octogonal.
„	328	„ 3	...	„	hātā	„	hata.
„	331	line 18	...	„	Jolly	„	Jolley.
„	340	„ 5	...	„	Physician	„	Physian.
„	346	„ 18	...	„	amber	„	ambar.
„	348	„ 2	...	„	Paitamaha	„	Paitāmoha.
„	352	„ 22	...	„	Firoz	„	Firroz.
„	354	„ 11	...	„	Areca	„	Arecha.
„	355	„ 12	...	„	Dvārusita	„	Davrusita.

WORKS BY THE AUTHOR.

1. Muscles of the Human Body, arranged in Tabular forms. Fourth Edition. Re. 1

2. Tropical Abscess of the Liver.

Thesis approved for the degree of Doctorate in Medicine, Madras University. Rs. 5

3. Glossary of Indigenous Medicinal Plants.

(In the Press)

4. Notices, Biographical and Bibliographical, of the Indian Physicians and their Works on Medicine.

(In the Press)

5. Medicine in the Vedic times.

(In preparation)

THE STAR MEDICAL HALL,
80, Russa Road North, Bhawanipur,
CALCUTTA.

THE

Surgical Instruments of the Hindus.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

ANCIENT MEDICAL AUTHORS AND THEIR WORKS.

The Science and Art of Medicine, like many other different branches of learning originated with the Hindus. They consider the art of healing as an Upaveda and it is generally known as Āyurveda, that is the art of prologing life. Like the Vedas, they trace the origin of the science to God, the fountain of all true knowledge. Bramhā transmitted this heaven-born science to this world for benefit of the mortals in one of the sacred writings, the Āyurveda.

It was composed as a sub-division of the Atharva Veda and consisted originally of a *lākh slokas* or a hundred thousand stanzas, divided into a thousand chapters. Then considering the short span of life and inadequate intelligence of man, he divided the book into eight parts[1] as follows :—

---

[1] तद्यथा ॥ शल्यं शालाक्यं कायचिकित्सा भूतविद्या कौमारभृत्यमगदतन्त्रम् रसायनतन्त्रं वाजीकरणतन्त्रमिति ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. i.

कायचिकित्सा शालाक्यं शल्यहर्तृकं विषगरवैरोधिकप्रशमनं भूतविद्या कौमारभृत्यकं रसायनानि वाजीकरणमिति।

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. xxx.

वेदौ ह्याथर्वणः स्वस्त्ययनबलिमङ्गलहोमनियमप्रायश्चित्तोपवासमूलादिपरिग्रहात् चिकित्सां प्राह।

Ibid.

1. Śalya Tantra or Major Surgery.
2. Śālākya Tantra or Surgery of parts above the Clavicles.
3. Kāya Cikitsā or Inner Medicine.
4. Bhūtvidyā or Demnology.
5. Kaumārabhṛtya or the Science of Pædiatrics.
6. Agada or Toxicology.
7. Rasāyana or Treatment to prolong life.
8. Vājīkaraṇa or Treatment to stimulate the sexual power.

The book is no more available now, Suśruta being the authority for the above information.[1]

A different view is held by others, who trace the origin of Hindu Medicine in the verses of the Ṛgveda.[2]

---

[1] इह खल्वायुर्व्वेदो नाम यदुपाङ्गमथर्व्ववेदस्यानुत्पाद्यैव प्रजाः श्लोकशतसहस्रमध्यायसहस्रञ्च कृतवान् स्वयम्भूः। ततोऽल्पायुष्ट्वमल्पमेधस्त्वाद्यावलोक्य नराणां भूयोऽष्टधा प्रणीतवान्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. i.

तत्र चैत् प्रष्टारः स्युः चतुर्णामृक्सामयजुरथर्व्ववेदानां कं वेदमुपदिशन्त्यायुर्व्वेदविदः। किमायुः कस्मादायुर्व्वेदः किंचायमायुर्व्वेदः शाश्वतोऽशाश्वत इति। कानि चास्याङ्गानि कथायमधीतव्यः किमर्थञ्चेति॥

तत्र भिषजा पृष्टेनैवं चतुर्णामृक्सामयजुरथर्व्ववेदानाम् आत्मनोऽथर्व्ववेदे भक्तिरादेश्या।

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. xxx.

The origin of medical science, as quoted in the above passage of Caraka, does not however agree with the view expressed by the author in the Sūtra Sthāna, Ch. I. (See footnote 1. P. 4). In Ch. XXX, we find that an attempt had been made to make a compromise between the two views of Agniveśa and Suśruta. Evidently this was the work of a later redactor, possibly Dṛḍhavala.

न त्वायुर्व्वेदस्याभूत्पत्तिरुपलभ्यते। अन्यत्रावबोधोपदेशाभ्यामितदेवमधिकृत्य उत्पत्तिमुपदिशन्त्येके स्वाभाविकत्वात् लक्षणमधिकृत्य यदुक्तम् इह चादौचाध्याये * * * *॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. xxx.

[2] ऋग्वेदस्यायुर्व्वेद उपवेदः।

Carana Vyūha by Vyāsa.

ATHARVA VEDA.

"On examining the contents of the Atharva Veda more in detail, we find that the hostile charms it contains are directed largely against various diseases or the demons which are supposed to cause them. There are spells to cure fever (takmān), leprosy, jaundice, dropsy, scrofula, cough, ŏphthalmia, baldness, lack of vital power, fractures and wounds; the bite of snakes or injurious insects, and poison in general; mania and other ailments. These charms are accompanied by the employment of appropriate herbs. Hence the Atharva Veda is the oldest literary monument of Indian Medicine."[1] This Veda can not belong to a period later than 1000 B. C., but possibly earlier.[2] It exists in the recensions of two different schools. That of the Paippalāda is only known in manuscript, discovered by Prof. Buhler in Kashmir and described by Prof. Roth in his tract Der Atharva Veda in Kaschmir (1875). The printed text, edited by Roth and Whitney in Berlin 1856, gives the recension of the Śaunaka School.[3] It has been translated into English Prose by Whitney, 2 Vols.; into English verse by Griffith, 2 Vols., Benares, 1897, and with the omission of the unimportant

---

[1] Medonnel's Sanskrit Literature, P. 196.

अथर्ववेदस्य * * * * चतुर्थं वेदत्वेऽपि प्रायेणाभिचारकार्यत्वादयज्ञविद्यायामनुपयोगाच्चानिर्देशः। तथाहि ऋग्वेदेनैव होत्रं कुर्वन् यजुर्वेदेनाध्वर्यवं सामवेदेनौद्गात्रं यदेव चयी विद्याय सूक्तेन ब्रह्मत्वमितिश्रुते स्त्रयीसम्पाद्यत्वं यज्ञानां ज्ञायते।

Kallūka Bhaṭṭa's Commentary on Manu Saṁhitā, Ch. III, Śloka I.

[2] On the date of Atharva Veda, see pp. CXL—CLXI, Prof. Lanman's Edition of Whitney's Transl.; Prof. Medonnel's Sanskrit Literature, pp. 185—201.

[3] Index Vervorum in the Journal of the Am. Or. Soc. Vol. XII.

hymns, by Bloomfield[1] into English Prose, with notes, in Vol. XLIII of the Sacred Books of the East.

CARAKA SAṀHITĀ.

In the Caraka Saṁhitā we find that Brahmā taught Dakṣa the science of medicine; Dakṣa became the preceptor of the Aśvin twins; they in their turn became the teachers of Indra and Indra imparted this knowledge to Bharadvāja who was sent by a conclave of sages to learn the art for the welfare of the human race.[2] Bharadvāja had Punarvasu Ātreya and the others as disciples. Ātreya's students were Agniveśa, Bhela, Jatukarṇa, Parāśara, Hārīta and Kṣārapaṇi, all of whom became celebrated as the authors of treatises on Medicine; the Caraka Saṁhitā being a revised and improved edition of the treatise of Agniveśa, which was declared to be the best production.[3] Caraka did not, however, redact the whole

[1] He has also edited the Kauśika Sūtra of the Atharva Veda, with extracts from the commentaries of Dārita and Keśava (see Vol. XIV Journ. Am. Orient. Soc.). It is very useful as a help to the proper understanding of the meaning of a hymn.

[2] दीर्घञ्जीवितमन्विच्छन् भरद्वाज उपागमत् ।
इन्द्रमुग्रतपा बुद्ध्या शरण्यममरेश्वरम् ॥
ब्रह्मणा हि यथा प्रोक्तमायुर्व्वेदं प्रजापतिः ।
जग्राह निखिलेनादावश्विनौ तु पुनस्ततः ॥
अश्विभ्यां भगवान् शक्रः प्रतिपेदे ह केवलम् ।
ऋषिप्रोक्तो भरद्वाजस्तस्माच्छक्रमुपागमत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. i.

[3] अथ मैत्रीपरः पुण्यमायुर्व्वेदं पुनर्व्वसुः ।
शिष्येभ्यो दत्तवान् षड्भ्यः सर्व्वभूतानुकम्पया ॥
अग्निवेशञ्च भेलञ्च जतुकर्णं पराशरम् ।
हारीतं क्षारपाणिञ्च जगदुस्तमृषेर्व्वचः ॥
बुद्धेर्विशेषतश्चासौ प्रोपदेशान्तरं मुनेः ।
तन्त्रस्य कर्त्ता प्रथममग्निवेशो यतोऽभवत् ॥
अथ भेलादयश्चक्रुः स्वं स्वं तन्त्रं कृतानि च ।
श्रावयामासुरात्रेयं सर्षिसङ्घं सुमेधसः ॥

Ibid, I. i.

book;—the last forty-four chapters[1] were edited by Dṛḍhavala,[2] a native of Panchanadapura, long supposed to refer to Punjab (the land of five rivers) but at present identified with a town in Kashmir by Dr. Hoernle.[3] Two other works, the treatises of Bhela and Hārīta, are still extant; the former existing in manuscript in the Tanjore Library[4] and the latter as printed texts by *Kavirājes* K. C. Sen and B. L. Sen, of Calcutta.[5]

Now as regards the age of Caraka, there is great divergence of opinions. The Indians generally believe him to be a Ṛṣi of great antiquity while the European scholars try

---

[1] For a discussion on the part added by Dṛḍhavala, see Hoernle's Studies in Ancient Indian Medicine, J. R. A. S. 1908, P. 997-1002. Also see pp. 11-15 in the Vanauṣadhi Darpaṇa, Vol. I., by Kavirāja Birajā Charan Gupta, 1908.

[2] अतस्तत्तोत्तमिदं चरकेणातिबुद्धिना।
संस्कृतं तत् तु संश्लिष्टं विभागेनोपलक्ष्यते॥
इदमन्यूनशब्दार्थं तन्त्रं दोषविवर्जितं।
अखण्डार्थं दृढबली जातः पत्तनदे पुरे॥
कृत्वा बहुभ्यस्तन्त्रेभ्यो विशेषाच्च बलीद्वयम्।
सप्तदशौषधाध्यायसिद्धिकल्पैरपूरयत्॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII, xii.

अस्मिन् सप्तदशाध्यायाः कल्पाः सिद्धय एव च।
नासाद्यन्तेऽग्निवेशस्य तन्त्रे चरकसंस्कृते॥
तानेतान् कापिलबलः शेषान् दृढबलोऽकरोत्।
तत्तस्यास्य महार्थस्य पूरणार्थं यथातथम्॥

Ibid, VI, xxx.

[3] Hoernle's Studies in the Medicine of Ancient India, Part I, Osteology, Introduction, p. 2. See also his article on "The authorship of Caraka Saṁhitā" in the *Archiv für die Geschichte der Medizin*, 1907.

[4] See Burnell's Tanjore Catalogue No. 10773 of Sanskrit Mss., P. 63.

[5] It is doubtful whether the Hārīta Saṁhitā is the genuine work of the Ṛṣi, Hārīta. The printed text refers to Caraka, Suśruta and even Vāgbhaṭa, who were decidely posterior to Hārita, See the Footnote 3, P. 6.

to connect him with historical events of more modern times. Sylvain Lévi has recently discovered in the Chinese Translation of the Buddhist *Tripiṭaka* that Caraka was the Court Physician of the Indo-Scythian King Kaniṣka, in the first century A.D.[1] But the following objections are to be met with before his conclusions can be accepted as proved :—

1. The age of Kaniṣka is not yet settled, the probable limits of his reign being from the first century B. C. to the second century A. D.[2] Moreover in the Buddhist *Tripiṭaka* referred to, the name of Caraka is simply mentioned as the Court Physician of the King Kaniṣka but there is nothing to identify him with the author of the book. The same name, found in different places, does by no means signify the same person.

2. The time assigned to Caraka by the Indian medical tradition is of great antiquity. With regard to the chronological position of the three old authors, he is mentioned as anterior to Suśruta and Vāgbhaṭa I.[3]

3. Dr. Rāy has pointed out that the name Caraka is patronymic in the Veda.[4] It is quite possible that a much

[1] See Journual Asiatique—July to December 1896, p. 444 to 484 and January to June 1897, p. 5 to 42 ; also Indian Antiquary Vol. XXXII, 1903, p. 382 and Viena Oriental Journal, Vol. XI., p. 164.

[2] See V. A. Smith's Early History of India, P. 225-26.
Dr. Fleet in J. R. A. S., 1906, P. 979.
Dr. Bhandarkar in J. R. A. S. (Bombay Branch), Vol. XX, P. 269.
J. A. S. B. Vol. XXXIX, 1870, p. 65 and 126.

[3] चरक: सुश्रुतश्चैव वाग्भटश्च तथापर: ।
मुख्याश्च संहिता वाच्यास्त्रिस्र एव युगे युगे ॥
अत्रि: कृतयुगे वैद्यो द्वापरे सुश्रुतो मत: ।
कलौ वाग्भटनामा च गरिमाव प्रदृश्यते ।
Hārīta Saṁhitā, Pariśiṣṭādhāya.

[4] Dr. P. C. Rāy's History of Hindu Chemistry, Introduction, P. X.

later namesake of his, is referred to by the *Tripiṭaka*, just as we know that more than one Vāgbhaṭa appeared as successful physician. Again we have evidence that eminent physicians in later times were called Caraka by way of a compliment and so Vāgbhaṭa was called Caraka of Sindh or Sindhicara.

4. Pāṇini wrote special Sūtras for the Agniveśas and the Carakas.[1] These names must have been famous before Pāṇini's time, otherwise he would not have written special Sūtras for them. Prof. Goldstucker has conclusively proved that Pāṇini could not have flourished later than the sixth century B. C.[2]

5. Patañjali wrote a commentary on Caraka.[3] He flourished during the second century B. C. Both Cakrapāṇi-datta and Bhoja allude to him as the redactor of Caraka Saṁhitā.[4] So Caraka must have flourished long before him, for unless his work was regarded as a standard work of authority, Patañjali would not have taken so much pains to write notes on the book, and still more for issuing a redaction.

6. The internal evidence of the book itself speaks against such an assumption. There is no salutation to any diety at the

---

[1] कटचरकाच्छूक । Pāṇini 4. 3. 107.

गर्गादिभ्यो यञ् ॥ Ibid, 4. 1. 105.

गर्ग । वत्स । * * * * अग्निवेश * * * * पराशर । जतुकर्ण । * * *.

[2] Goldstucker's Pāṇini ; and Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, Vol. XLII, P. 254.

[3] आप्तानाम अनुभवेन वस्तुतत्वस्य कात्स्न्येन निश्चयवान्, रागादिवशादपि नान्यथावादी यः स इति चरके पतञ्जलिः ।

Quoted in Laghumañjuṣā of Nāgeśa Bhaṭṭa (Rāy).

[4] पातञ्जल—महाभाष्य—चरकप्रतिसंस्कृतैः ।

मनोवाक्-कायदोषाणाम् हर्त्रेऽहिपतये नमः ॥

Vide salutation in the Āyurvedārthadīpikā.

beginning of the book,—a custom invariably found to be observed in the more modern compilations. There is complete absence of Paurāṇic theology in the Caraka Saṁhitā, nor is there any reference to Śākya Muni and his religion. Kaniṣka was a great patron of Buddhism, and it might naturally be expected from the Court Physician of the king to describe the charitable hospitals which we know from the edict of Aśoka, to have flourished in every quarter of India. On the contrary we find descriptions of a hospital as reserved for rich men only at their own houses. Those gods and godesses that figure so prominently in the Purāṇas were unknown during his time.[1] Beef was not then, apparently, a

[1] No doubt the names of Lakṣmī, Kṛṣṇa and Vāsudeva occur in Cikitsita Sthānam, Chapter XXV, but it should be remembered that they occur in the Supplement added by Dṛḍhavala in later times.

सर्व्वयक्षा न तत्र प्रभवन्ति न चाग्निशस्त्रनृपचौराः ।
लक्ष्मीश्च तत्र भजते यत्र महागन्धहस्त्यस्ति ॥
पिप्पलीं द्रमभाव सिद्धं सत्त्वमुदीरयेत् ।
मम माता जया नाम विजयी नाम मे पिता ॥
सोऽहं जयी जयापुत्री विजयीऽथ जयामि च ।
नमः पुरुषसिंहाय विष्णवे विश्वकर्म्मणे ॥
सनातनाय कृष्णाय भवाय विभवाय च ।
तेजो वृषाकपेः साक्षात् तेजो ब्रह्मेन्द्रयोर्यमे ॥
यथाहं नाभिजानामि वासुदेवपराजयम् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI, xxv.

But Kṛṣṇa and Vāsudeva are mentioned in Pāṇini as demigods, having many adherents who formed a class. "वासुदेवार्ज्जुनाभ्यां वुन" Pāṇini, 4. 3. 98. Again the passage may be an interpolation of a subsequent *Vaiṣṇaba Vaid.*

So Bṛsavadhvaja is also mentioned in Dṛḍhavala's Supplement, as a god to be worshipped during the preparation of some medicines :

ब्रह्मघोषशङ्खपटहभेरीनिनादैः सिद्धं सितच्छत्रकृतच्छायं गजस्कन्धमारोपयेद्भगवन्तं वृषध्वजमभिपूज्य तं खेटं विभागमूचिकमङ्गलाशीःस्तुतिदेवतार्च्चनैर्वस्तिं गमयेत् ॥

Ibid, VIII, xii.

forbidden food, for it is spoken of as an article of diet that should not be indulged daily,[1] nor should it be used in excessive quantity as it is mentioned as a cause of the disease, Vāta-Rakta.[2]

The style of the book is antiquated and decidedly savours that of the Brāhmaṇas. Nāya and Vaiśeṣiki systems occur in the text,[3] and so probably the book was written long before the compilation of these Sūtras.

Editions.—The book had undergone several editions. It was edited by Jībānanda Vidyāsāgar, Calcutta, in 1877 and 1896 (2nd Ed.) ; by Gaṅgādhar Kaviratna, Berhampur, 1879 ; by Gupta, Calcutta, 1897 ; with commentary by Cakrapāṇidatta, Calcutta, 1892-93 ; by Jaśodānandana Sarkār, with Bengali translation, 1894.

Translations.—It had been translated into English by A. C. Kaviratna, Calcutta, 1897. Caraka was translated from Sanskrit

---

And we find that the antidote to poisen called महागन्धहस्ती is said to have been told by Tryambaka (Śiva) to Baiśravaṇa (Kuvera):

अगदोऽयं वैश्रवणाख्यातस्त्र्यम्बकेण षडङ्गः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxv.

Also we find the name of Kārttikeya mentioned in Sec. IV. ch. viii.

प्रसुप्त स्वमविक्लिष्टमविक्लिष्टा सुभाषने,
कार्त्तिकेयद्युतिं पुत्रं कार्त्तिकेयाभिरक्षितमिति ॥

[1] कुर्चिकांश्च किलाटांश्च शौकरं गव्यमामिषं ।
मत्स्यान् दधि च माषांश्च यावकांश्च न शीलयेत् ॥

Ibid, I. v.

[2] कुलत्थमाषनिष्पावशाकादिपललैर्युभिः ।
दधिदारनालसौवीरशुक्तकैरसुरासवैः ॥

Ibid, VI. xxix.

[3] Vide Caraka, III. viii.

into Arabic in the beginning of the eighth century and his name "Sharaka Indianus" occurs in the Latin translations of Avicenna, Rhazes and Serapion. "A translation of the Karaka[1] from Sanskrit into Persian and from Persian into Arabic is mentioned in the Fihrst, (Finished 987 A.D.). It is likewise mentioned by Albērūnī[2]; the translation is said to have been made for the Barmekides."[3] Albērūnī's chief source on Medicine was "Caraka, in the Arabic Edition of Ali Ibn Zain, from Trabaristan."[4]

Commentaries.—

1. Patañjali—2nd century B.C.—not available.
2. Cakrapāṇidatta's Caraka Tātparya Tīkā, or Āyurveda-dīpikā[5]—1060 A.D.
3. Haricandra[6]—1111 A.D.—not available.
4. Śibadāsa's Caraka-Tattva-Pradīpikā.
5. Gaṅgādhar's Jalpa-Kalpa-Taru—1879 A.D.

---

[1] Proceedings of the As. Soc., Bengal, 1870, September.

[2] Reinaud, *Memoire sur l'Inde*, P. 316.

[3] Maxmuller's Science of Language, Vol. I., P. 168, Foot Note.

[4] Sachau's preface to India, P. XL.

[5] See Caraka Saṁhitā with Cakrapāṇidatta's Commentary by *Kavirāja* Harināth Viśārada, Calcutta, 1895.

[6] A Commentary written by Haricandra is referred to in the Sanskrit Ślokas narrating the geneology of Maheśvara, the author of Viśvaprakāśa and Sāhasāṅkacarita, who flourished during the reign of Sāhasāṅka, king of Gazipur in 1033 Saka (1111 A. D. Wilson).

श्रीसाहसाङ्कनृपतेरखवद्यविद्य-
वैद्योत्तरङ्ग पदपङ्तिमेव विभत्।
यद्वन्द्यचारुचरितो हरिचन्द्रनामा
सद्राव्यया चरकतन्त्रमलंचकार ॥

SUŚRUTA SAṀHITĀ.

The next treatise on Hindu Medicine is the Suśruta Saṁhitā. Suśruta was the son of the sage Viśvāmitra,[1] a contemporary of Rāma. He learned the Science of Medicine from Divodāsa, surnamed Dhanvantari, king of Benares, at his Himalayan retreat. According to Suśruta, Divodāsa was the incarnation of Dhanvantari, the celebrated physician of the gods in heaven, and he first propounded the Art of Healing in this world.[2] Suśruta represented the Surgical School while Caraka was pre-eminently a Physician in practice.

As regards the authorship of the book, opinions differ. To Suśruta, Dhanvantari addressed his lectures on Major Surgery,[3]

---

[1] Mahābhārata, Anuśāṣana Parva, Ch. 139, Vs. 8-11.

धन्वन्तरिर्धर्म्मभृतां वरिष्ठो वाग्विशारदः ।
विश्वामित्रात्मजस्तृषि शिष्यं सुश्रुतमब्रवीत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, V. ii.

अष्टाङ्गयर्व्वेदविदं दिवोदासं महामतिं ।
छिन्नशास्त्रार्थसन्देहं सूक्ष्मागाधमिवोदधिं ।
विश्वामित्रसुतः श्रीमान् सुश्रुतः परिपृच्छति ।

Ibid, VI. lxvi.

सर्व्वशास्त्रार्थतत्त्वज्ञ स्तपोदृष्टि रुदारधीः ।
वैश्वामित्रं शशासाथ शिष्यं काशिपतिर्म्मुनिः ॥

Ibid, VI. xxviii.

[2] अथ खलु भगवन्तममरवरमृषिगणपरिवृतमाश्रमस्थं काशिराजं दिवोदासं धन्वन्तरिमौपधेनवगौतरणीरभ्रपौष्कलावतकरवीर्य्यगोपुररक्षितसुश्रुतप्रभृतय ऊचुः ।

Ibid, I. i.

[3] अथ कस्मै किमुच्यतामिति । त ऊचुः । अस्माकं सर्व्वेषामेव शल्यज्ञानमूलं कृत्वोपदिशतु भगवानिति । स उवाचैवमस्त्विति । .....अस्माकमेकमतीनां मतमभिसमीक्ष्य सुश्रुतो भगवन्तं प्रत्येति ।

Ibid, I. i.

which he reproduced in this work. But in the opening lines of the book, salutation is offered to Brahmā, Dakṣa, Aśvins, Indra, Dhanvantari, Suśruta and others.[1] This shows that Suśruta can not be the author of the work or at least of the work in its present shape, for no author can offer salutation to himself. By "the others" are no doubt meant the notable surgeons who practised and taught the Science of Surgery and who were either contemporary with or posterior to Suśruta. Possibly the original Suśruta Saṁhitā had been recast and the redactor could appropriately offer a salutation to the original author and to other surgeons who flourished before him. There is also an Indian medical tradition, noted in Dallaṇacārya's Commentary, which assigns the improved and supplemented edition of Suśruta's original work to Nāgārjjūna,[2] the celebrated Buddhist Chemist, who is said to have been a contemporary of the king Sātvāhana.[3]

In the third chapter, Suśruta enumerates the subjects described by him,—the chapter forming an index of the book. Therein he mentions the five principal divisions of his book and says that the Uttara Tantra or the Supplement would be

---

[1] नमो ब्रह्मप्रजापत्यश्विवज्रभिङ्धन्वन्तरिसुश्रुतप्रभृतिभ्यः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I.

[2] यत्र यत्र परीक्षे नियोगस्तव तत्रैव प्रतिसंस्कर्त्तुं सूत्रं ज्ञातव्यमिति । प्रतिसंस्कर्त्तापीह नागार्ज्जुन एव ।

Dallaṇa's Commentary to Suśruta, I. i.

See also Dr. Cordier's Recentes Decouvertes, pp. 12-13.

[3] See Harṣacarita by Vāṇa.
Beal's *Buddhist Records of the Western World*, Vol II., P. 209, 212, 216.
Burgess' Archœological Survey of S. India.
Introd. a l'histoire du Budh. Ind., P. 508.

described afterwards.[1] Now the fact that the sixth part was appended to the work as a Supplement or Uttara Tantra (*i.e.*, after treatise) clearly shows that it was written afterwards by another surgeon and added to the original treatise. If the original Suśruta wished to have six divisions of his book, he would have mentioned it clearly in the index and would not have, after stating that his book consisted of five parts, added that "the Supplement would be described afterwards,"[2] which seems to be an interpolation of the Supplementor to pass his edition as the orginal work of the author. Again at the end of the fifth section, there is a passage describing the importantce of the Áyurveda, which was meant as the conclusion of the book by the author.[3] It is to be noted

---

[1] प्रागभिहितं सविंशमध्यायशतं पञ्चसु स्थानेषु । तत्र सूत्रस्थानमध्याया: षट्चत्वारिंशत् । षोड़श निदानानि । दश शारीराणि । चत्वारिंशच्चिकित्सितानि । अष्टौ कल्पा: । तदुत्तरं षट्षष्टि: ।

अध्यायानां शतं विंशमेवमेतदुदीरितम् ।
अत:परं स्वनाम्नैव तन्त्रमुत्तरमुच्यते ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. iii.

[2] बीजं चिकित्सितस्यैतत् समासेन प्रकीर्त्तितम् ।
सविंशमध्यायशतमस्य व्याख्या भविष्यति ॥

तत्र सविंशमध्यायशतं पञ्चसु स्थानेषु । तत्र सूत्रस्थाननिदानशारीरचिकित्सितकल्पेष्वर्थवशात् संविभज्योत्तरे तन्त्रे शेषानर्थान् व्याख्यायास्याम: ।

Ibid, I. i.

[3] सविंशमध्यायशतमेतदुक्तं विभागश: ।
इहोद्दिष्टाननिर्द्दिष्टान्सर्व्वान् वक्ष्याम्यथोत्तरे ॥
सनातनत्वाद्वेदानामचरत्वात्तथैव च ॥
तथा दृष्टफलत्वाच्च हितत्वादपि देहिनां ।
वाक्समूहार्थविस्तारात् पूजितत्वाच्च देहिभि: ॥
चिकित्सितात्पुण्यतमं न किञ्चिदपि सुश्रुत ।
ऋषेरिन्द्रप्रभावस्यास्तथा धन्वन्तरेरपि ॥
धारयित्वा तु विमलं मतम् परमसम्मतं ।
उक्ताचार समाचारईह प्रेत्य च मोदते ॥

Ibid, V. viii.

that at the end of no other sections do we find a similar passage. He also writes: "Thus one hundred and twenty chapters are described" but adds: "The other diseases shall be described in the Uttara Tantra": the latter part no doubt is an interpolation of the Supplementor. Moreover, in the opening lines which serve as a preface to the sixth part, the authority quoted for the diseases of the eye is Nimi, the king Janaka of Mithilā and not Dhanvantari.[1] But in the first chapter of the first section, it is described that the sages wanted Dhanvantari to teach them Śalyatantra or Major Surgery only and he consented to their request. And this subject he treated in detail in the five sections of the book. In the Supplement, on the other hand, are described the other branches of the science such as Minor Surgery, Inner Medicine, &c. Probably this part was added afterwards to give completeness to the treatise; and the original Suśruta was called Vṛddhya or the Old by the commentators to distinguish him from the Supplementor.

Suśruta's work is specially important to us as having two whole chapters (vii and viii of Section I.) devoted to the descriptions of Surgical Instruments and one whole chapter (xxv of Section I.) to the principles of Surgical Operations.

The age of Suśruta is also involved in obscurity. Nothing can be ascertained from the fact that he was a son of Viśvāmitra[2],

[1] अध्यायानां शते विंशे यदुक्तमसकृन्मया।
वक्ष्यामि बहुधा सम्यगुत्तरैऽर्थानिमानिति॥
इदानीन्तत् प्रवक्ष्यामि तन्त्रमुत्तरमुत्तमं।
निखिलेनोपदिश्यन्ते यत्र रोगाः पृथग्विधाः॥
शालाक्यशास्त्राभिहिता विदेहाधिपकीर्त्तिताः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. i.

[2] Viśvāmitra is the *gotra* name; so the simple name may either refer to the great Viśvāmitra or to his descendants.

for the age in which the latter lived is not known to us. But he must have flourished during the Vedic Age as many Vedic Hymns are ascribed to him. In the Mahābhārata, Suśruta is mentioned as one of the sons of Viśvāmitra[1] and in the Suśruta Saṁhitā the author is often described as his son. The age of the great epic has, with good reasons, been fixed at 1000 B.C. So Suśruta must have flourished much earlier. The latest limit which we can assign to Suśruta is 600 B.C. as "there are indications in the *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*, a secondary Vedic work, that the author of it was acquainted with the doctrines of Suśruta" as regards the Osteology. "The exact date of that work is not known, but it is with good reason referred to the sixth century B.C." Again in the Atharva Veda, in the tenth book, there is a hymn on the creation of man in which the skeleton is described according to Ātreya and Suśruta.[2] "The large portion of it (Books I to XVIII) indeed admittedly belongs to a much earlier period, possibly as early as about 1000 B.C.; and the hymn in question is included in this older portion"[3]. This shows that Suśruta could not have flourished later than 1000 B.C.

Again in Hastī-Āyurveda, a book on the Treatment of

---

[1] श्यामायनीऽथ गार्ग्यश्च जाबलिसुश्रुतस्तथा—

* * * * * *

विश्वामित्रात्मजाः सर्व्वे मुनयो ब्रह्मवादिनः ॥

Mahābhārata, Anuśāṣana Parva, Ch. IV.

[2] See J. R. A. S., 1906, P. 915; 1907, P. 1.

[3] Hoernle's Studies in the Medicine of Ancient India, Part I. Osteology, Introduction, P. 9.

Elephants by Pālakāpya, we find the Surgical instruments described after the manner of Suśruta. Pālakāpya lived as a Veterinary Surgeon in the Court of Romapāda, King of Aṅga, which had as its capital the famous town of Campā, identified with the modern town of Bhāgalpur. King Romapāda was contemporary with king Daśaratha, the father of Rāma, the hero of Rāmāyana.[1] Here we have a corroborative evidence of the age of Suśruta.

Suśruta is mentioned in the *Vārttikas* of Kātyāyana[2] who flourished during the fourth century B.C.

We have alluded to Nāgārjjūna,[3] the Buddhist Chemist, as the redactor of the Suśruta Saṁhitā. He is said to have been a contemporary of king Kaniṣka that is about the first century B.C.

Another revision was undertaken by Candraṭe, the son of Tīsaṭa, the author of Cikitsā-kalikā. He revised the text which must have fallen then into a state of corruption. The probable date of Candraṭe is the ninth century A.D.[4]

---

[1] अग्निं शुश्रुषमाणस्य पितरं च यशस्विनम् ।
एतस्मिन्नेव काले तु रोमपाद प्रतापवान् ।
Rāmāyana, Vālakāndam, Ch. IX.

See also Rāmāyana, i, 11, 13-20; Mahābhārat, iii, 110, 10008-9; Bhāgavat, ix, 2.3, 7-10.

[2] सुश्रुतेन प्रोक्तं सौश्रुतं ।

[3] Possibly more than one Nāgārjjūna appeared in ancient India as a chemist. Albērūnī says: "He lived nearly a hundred years before our time" (India, I. P. 189). Rājtarañginī places him in the 3rd century B.C. (I, Vs. 172-173). The modern scholars are of opinion that the founder of the Mahāyāna system lived in the first century A.D.

[4] Hoernle's Osteology, p. 100.

There is no doubt of the tradition that Suśruta's work was redacted, for the author could not write such a passage as follows: "The surgical treatises of Aupadhenava, Aurabhra, Suśruta and Pouṣkalāvata from the basis of other treatises on the subject."[1]

Commentators.[2]—

1. Cakrapāṇidatta—Vānumati—1060 A.D.
2. Gayadāsa—{Nyāya Candrikā or Pañjikā}—11th century A.D.
3. Jejjaṭācāryya.
4. Bhāskara.
5. Mādhava.
6. Bramhadeva.
7. Dallaṇācāryya—Nibandha Saṁgraha—12th century A.D.
8. Ubhalta (Kashmir).

Editions.—Suśruta Saṁhitā has been edited by Madhusūdan Gupta, Calcutta, 1835; by J. Vidyāsāgar, 3rd Edition, Calcutta, 1889; by A. C. Kaviratna, Calcutta, 1888-95; by Prubhurām Jībanarām, Bombay, 1901; and by Vīrasvāmī, Madras.

This book has been translated into English in part only by U. C. Datta 1883, A. Chaṭṭopādhyāy 1891, Hoernle 1897, Calcutta, in the Bibliotheca Indica. It has been translated into Latin by Hessler and into German by Vullurs.

The book was translated into Arabic before the end of the eighth century A.D. It is called "Kitab-Shawshoon-al-Hindi"

---

1 ओपधेनवमौरभं सौश्रुतं पौष्कलावतम्।
शेषाणां शल्यतन्त्राणां मूलान्येतानि निर्दिशेत्॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. iv.

2 * * * * श्रीसहनपालदेवनृपतिवल्लभः श्रीडल्लणः समभूत्। तेन श्रीजेज्झटं टीकाकारं श्रीगयदासभास्करौ च पञ्जिकाकारौ श्रीमाधवब्रह्मदेवादीन् टीपनककारांश्चोपजीव्यायुर्व्वेदशास्त्र सुश्रुतव्याख्यानाय निबन्धसंग्रहः क्रियते।
Dallaṇa's Commentary, I. i.

and also mentioned as "Kitab-i-Susrud" or Book Suśruta by Ibn Abillsaibial. Rhazes often quotes Sarad as an authority in Surgery.[1]

VĀGBHAṬA I.

The next author of celebrity and whose work is still extant is Vāgbhaṭa I or Vāgbhaṭa the elder, the author of Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha (*i.e.*, Compilation of the Octopartrite Science). In later times, a namesake of his, wrote another work called Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā (or the best Compendium *i.e.*, the Heart of the Octopartrite Science). In the Uttara Sthāna, Vāgbhaṭa the younger distinctly states that his Compendium is based on the Compilation of Vāgbhaṭa the elder.[2]

As regards the age of Vāgbhaṭa the elder, there is the same uncertainty as with his predecessors. We are however sure that he is posterior to Caraka and Suśruta for he refers to these writers by name.[3]

The chronological relation of the three early authors is described in a popular couplet that Ātreya, Suśruta and Vāgbhaṭa were the three great medical authors for the three Yugas—

---

[1] "His next description is from an author named Sarad, whom he frequently quotes in other parts of his works".

Adam's Commentary on Paulus Æginetta, VI. lxi.

[2] अष्टाङ्गवैद्यकमहोदधिमन्थनेन योऽष्टाङ्गसंग्रहमहामृततराशिराप्तः ।
तस्मादनल्पफलमल्पसमुद्यमाणां प्रीतर्थमेतदुदितं पृथगेव तन्त्रम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, Uttara Sthāna, Ch. XL, v. 82.

[3] By name, *e.g.* in Saṁgraha, Bombay ed., Vol. I, P. 246; Vol. II, P. 421. Again quoted from Cāraka, *Ibid.*, Vol. I, pp. 20, 93; Vol. II, pp. 212, 213, *et passim*; from Suśruta I, *ibid*, Vol. I. pp. 109, 121, 177, 247; Vol. II, p. 303, *et passim*. (Hoernle).

the Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali, respectively.[1] They are known as the Vṛddha Trayī or the Old Triad. This medical tradition goes much against the conclusion of Dr. Hoernle that Vāgbhaṭa I must have flourished early in the seventh century A.D. One of the reasons put forward by him is the fact, that "the Buddhist pilgrim I'Tsing, who resided ten years in the Nalandā University (in Bihar) from about 675-686 A.D., states in *Records of Buddhist practices* that the eight arts (*i.e.*, the branches of medicine) formerly existed in eight books but lately a man epitomised them and made them on one bundle (or book)."[2] Professor Jolly understands by it the Suśruta Saṁhitā while Dr. Hoernle points out with more reasons that it refers to Vāgbhaṭa I's work, the Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha (*i.e.*, the Compilation of the Octopartrite Science) and rules out Suśruta by the word "lately."[3] But the description that I'Tsing gives of the contents of the book does not warrant any reference to either. Moreover, he has not given any reason why Vāgbhaṭa II's book Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā (the best Compendium of the Octopartrite Science) might not be alluded to by I'Tsing. Dr. Hoernle, however, rules him out by date for "he can not be placed earlier than the eightth century"—an assertion unsupported by any evidence whatsoever. All that he has proved is that "Accordingly it is probable that all these three medical writers (Mādhava, Dṛḍhabala and Vāgbhaṭa II) come in the period from the 7th to the

---

[1] See foot-note 3, P. 6.

[2] I'Tsing: Records of the Buddhist Religion. Transl. by Professor Takakusu, P. 128.

[3] J. R. A. S., 1907, P. 413.

Hoernle's Osteology, Introduction, P. 10—11.

9th century A.D.[1] at no very great interval from one another," and this proof is based on the age of Vāgbhaṭa I as suggested by I'Tsing's remarks. Thus he has taken for granted what he is required to prove. He has shown that Susruta is anterior to Vāgbhaṭa I; and Vāgbhaṭa II is posterior to him. But in trying to prove that Vāgbhaṭa I lived in the seventh century he cannot assume that Vāgbhaṭa II lived in the eighth. Another evidence adduced in support of his conclusion is the fact that the non-medical version of the list of bones of the human body as contained in the Law-book of Yājñavalkya presupposes earlier uncorrupted forms of lists of bones both in Caraka and Suśruta, and "the corrupt recension, traditionally handed down, must have come into existence at a later date," that is to say, between the date of Yājñavalkya (350 A.D.) and Vāgbhaṭa I, the latter of whom is proved to have copied from the corrupt recensions of Caraka and Suśruta. Thus the older recensions still existed in the fourth century A.D. and if we add to it the interval of time necessary for the texts to have fallen into a state of corruption, we get the early seventh century A.D. for Vāgbhaṭa I. But we must remember that there is nothing to prevent against the supposition that Vāgbhaṭa I lived before Yājñavalkya. There might have been two recensions of the texts available during Yājñavalkya's time, one corrupted and it might or might not have been the work of Vāgbhaṭa I and another true version which was availed of by the sage Yājñavalkya. And similar events have happened, as has been pointed out by Dr. Hoernle himself, in our own generation. Gaṅgādhar's recension of Caraka is a corrupted form of the text,

[1] *Ibid*, P. 16.

BCU 2888

while the recension given in Jībānanda's edition is the traditional text of Caraka. No critic would I think jump into the conclusion that Gaṅgādhar lived three or four centuries after Jībānanda. Again if it be true, as he contends, that Suśruta was redacted by Vāgbhaṭa I, we could easily imagine that Yājñavalkya copied his list bones from the original Suśruta and not from the redaction of Vāgbhaṭa I. So we see that the age assigned to Vāgbhaṭa I, or the seventh century A.D. can not be accepted as proved. Dr. Hoernle says : "It should, however, be understood that these conclusions regarding the date and authorship of Vāgbhaṭa I, are not put forward as established fact."

Let us recapitulate the objections that can be urged against the conclusion that Vāgbhaṭa I lived in the seventh century A.D.

1. Vāgbhaṭa I is believed by the Indian medical men to have flourished long before the Christian era. By some, he is connected with the court of Yudhiṣṭhira, but his name is nowhere mentioned in the Mahābhārata. Ātreya, Suśruta and Vāgbhaṭa are described as the Old Triad or Vṛddhya Trayī and they were the authorities for the Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali Yugas, respectively. It is curious to observe that Dr. Hoernle in arguing against the conclusion of Prof. Jolly that Suśruta is meant by I'Tsing, takes advantage of this Indian medical tradition that Suśruta flourished during pre-historic times, but does not mention the same tradition with regard to Vāgbhaṭa I, which goes against his own conclusion. On the other hand the same objection does not apply against Vāgbhaṭa II.

GS 2386

2. The name of Vāgbhaṭa. I's book, Compendium of the

Octopartrite Science, no doubt, agrees very well with the description of I'Tsing that "lately a man collected them into one bundle." But Vāgbhaṭa II's book "The best Compendium of the Octopartrite Science" is equally suggestive, though Dr. Hoernle says: "it cannot prevail by the side of the more suggestive name of the rival work of Vāgbhaṭa the elder."

3. Again in arguing against Prof. Jolly, Dr. Hoernle has attached much importance to the word "lately" by which Suśruta is ruled out by date. Admitting the validity of such reasoning, it does not follow that by the word "lately" I'Tsing meant any contemporary author or any one who preceded him by a short period only. To comprehend the meaning of the sentence we must understand the word "lately" in connection with the word "formerly" used before.[1] Now the sentence "The science of medicine formerly existed in eight books" no doubt refers to the division of Āyurveda into eight parts by Brahmā and to the treatises on the different branches of Medicine by Agniveśa, Suśruta and others. These treatises are believed to be of remote antiquity, and so any later compilation may be spoken of as recent in comparision with the old treatises of unknown ages. Thus the word "lately" may refer either to Vāgbhaṭa I or Vāgbhaṭa II, but the latter author's claim to the honour becomes reasonable considering his decided posteriority to the former and so coming within the limit of the time suggested by the word "lately."

4. Again I'Tsing refers to a book which was recognised as the standard throughout India. This may refer either to

[1] J. R. A. S. 1907. P. 174.

Vāgbhaṭa I or II. But if Vāgbhaṭa I's book occupied such a position at the time of I'Tsing, it becomes difficult to imagine why Vāgbhaṭa II should write another work principally based on the work of Vāgbhaṭa I after a lapse of a century or so. Moreover, we find at the present time, that Vāgbhaṭa II's book, Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, has a wider popularity than the book Astāṅga Saṅgraha of Vāgbhaṭa I. The former has been printed many times and is widely read by the students,—so much so Vāgbhaṭa is generally known as the author of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā.

5. Moreover, the Arabian physician Rhazes, who is said to have lived in the ninth century (882 A.D.) in treating of the property of ginger, the common plantain or musa and other drugs, quotes from an Indian writer, whom he calls Sindaxar or Sindicara.[1] Royle says: "But in the article De Allio another Indian author is quoted, whom I have not been able yet to trace out—*Ait Sindifar* (in another place written "*Dixit sindichar*") *indianus* valet contra Ventositatem." This Sindicara is identified with Vāgbhaṭa II of Sindh who was in his time known as a second Caraka or Cara, the syllable "ka" making no difference, as in words like "bāla" and "bālaka," both meaning a child.[2] We know that the Vāgbhaṭa's Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā was one of the medical works translated by the order of Caliphs in the eighth century.[3]

6. The translations of the Caraka, the Suśruta and the Vāgbhaṭa occur in the Thibetan Tanjur.[4] "George Huth,[5]

---

[1] Antiquity of Hindu Medicine, Page 38.
[2] History of Aryan Medical Science, P. 196.
[3] Zeit. deut. morg. Ges. 34, p. 465.
[4] Jour. Asiatic Soc. XXXVIII. (1835).
[5] Zeit. deut. morg. Ges. T. (LXIX. pp. 279—284).

who has recently critically examined the contents of the Tanjur, concludes that the most recent date at which it can be placed is the 8th century A.D."[1]

So I cannot avoid the conclusion that of the three authors, Suśruta, Vāgbhaṭa I and II, to which I'Tsing's remarks may refer, the last has probably the best claims to that reference; and the date assigned to Vāgbhaṭa I may well suit Vāgbhaṭa II *i.e.*, "as late as the early 7th century A.D.,"[2] and possibly still earlier.[3] Again it is impossible for us to say whether I'Tsing's remarks may not appropriately refer to other authors whose works are lost to us.

Mention should also be made of the fact pointed out by Dr. Cordier that Vāgbhaṭa is mentioned in Rājtaraṅgiṇī and his date is fixed there as 1196-1218 A.D.[4]

But the name of Vāgbhaṭa does not occur in Stein's edition of Rāj, which is no doubt the most reliable, and so we can easily dismiss this view as untenable.

Editions.—Vāgbhaṭa I's book Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha has been printed in Bombay.

Commentary.—Aruṇadatta—about 1220 A.D.

---

[1] P. C. Rāy's History of Hindu Chemistry, Intro., P. XXIX.

[2] Hoernle's Osteology, Intro., p. 10.

[3] Dr. Kunte places him "at least as early as the second century before Christ," Vide his Intro. to Vāgbhaṭa's Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā.

[4] सिंहगुप्तसुत: परमबौद्धो वागभटाचार्य: काश्मीरनगरपति जयसिंहस्य प्रजापालनसमये (खृ: द्वादश शताब्दाम्, शक १११८—४०) वर्त्तमाना आसीत्।

Quoted in Cordier's Vāgbhaṭa et L'Aṣṭāṅgahṛdaya Saṁhitā, 1896.

See Intro. to the Vaidyakśabdasindhu by *Kavirāja* Umeścandra Gupta, 1894.

VĀGBHAṬA II.

The next great authority in Hindu medicine is Vāgbhaṭa II, son of Siṁha Gupta, an inhabitant of Sindh.[1] His work, Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, the author himself states, is based on the summary of Vāgbhaṭa the elder.[2] In the first chapter of Sūtra Sthāna, he acknowledges the help he received from the works of Agniveśa, Hārīta, Bhela, and others.[3] The fact that Caraka is not referred to here as one of the sources of Vāgbhaṭa II has been taken advantage of by some to prove the posteriority of Caraka.[4] They conclude that Agniveśa and Suśruta wrote their works long before him, and the Agniveśa Tantra was not called by the name of, and in fact was not as yet edited by, Caraka, at the

---

1 भिषग्वरो वाभट इत्यभूनमे
पितामहो नामधरोऽस्मि यस्य
सुतोऽभवत्तस्य च सिंहगुप्त:
तस्याप्यहम् सिन्धुषु जातजन्मा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga.

2 Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, Uttara Sthāna, Ch. XL, v. 82.
See foot note 2, p. 18.

3 ब्रह्मा स्मृत्वाऽऽयुषो वेदं प्रजापतिमजिग्रहत् ।
सोऽश्विनौ तौ सहस्राक्षं सोऽत्रिपुत्रादिकान्मुनीन् ॥४॥
तेऽग्निवेश्यादिकांस्ते तु पृथक् तन्त्राणि तेनिरे ।
तेभ्योऽतिविप्रकीर्णेभ्य: प्राय: सारतरोदय: ।
क्रियतेऽष्टाङ्गहृदयं नातिसंक्षेपविस्तरम् ॥५॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Sūtra Sthāna, Ch. I.

4 "It would appear also that at the time Vāgbhaṭa lived, Agnivesha's work was not called by the name of Caraka, and Suśruta had also been written. Hence it follows that Caraka's edition of Agnivesa, that is the work now called Caraka, was probably edited after Suśruta had been written."

Dutt's Materia Medica of the Hindus, Intro., p. IX.

time Vāgbhaṭa II flourished. The argument is however not conclusive ; it only shows that the Agniveśa Tantra was available to Vāgbhaṭa II in its original form. No definite results can be expected from this *argumentum ex silentio.* Again it may easily be imagined, and I think it is the right view of the question, that Caraka lived and edited Agniveśa's work long before Vāgbhaṭa, the reason of Caraka being not mentioned in Vāgbhaṭa's book, is the fact that Caraka did not usurp the authorship of Agniveśa Tantra but clearly states at the end of each chapter the real nature of his share in the authorship of his book in the following words :—" Here ends the chapter of Agniveśa Tantra as corrected and edited by Caraka." Many modern text books of medicine have been edited and improved, though the books are still called after the original authors. Moreover to make Caraka flourish after Vāgbhaṭa II would bring him to quite modern times.

We are however arguing on false premises. Though Caraka is not mentioned in the Sūtra Sthāna of Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, his name occurs in the Uttara Sthāna.[1] So there can be no doubt that Caraka's edition of Agniveśa was current in India long before Vāgbhaṭa II wrote his Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā.

---

[1] यदि चरकमधीते तदध्रुवं सुश्रुतादि
प्रणिगदितगदानां नाममात्रेऽपि वाच्यः ।
अथ चरकविहीनः प्रक्रियायामखिन्नः
किमिह खलु करोतु व्याधितानां वराकः ॥४८॥
* * * *
ऋषिप्रणीते प्रीतिश्चेन्मुक्त्वा चरकसुश्रुतौ ।
भेड़ाद्याः किं न पठ्यन्ते तस्माद्ग्राह्यं सुभाषितम् ॥५३॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, (Ed. Vijayratna Sen), Uttara Sthāna, Ch. XL.

Editions.—There are various editions of the book but the following are reliable :—

1. By Dr. Anna Moreśvara Kunte, M.D., 2 vols., Bombay, 1880; 2nd Ed., 1891.
2. By Jībānanda Vidyāsāgara, Calcutta, 1882.
3. By Vijayratna Sen Kaviranjana, Calcutta, 1885-90.
4. By Ganeś Sastri Tartevaidya, Bombay, 1888.
5. In Sanskrit and Bengali, with the commentary of Arūṇadatta by Vijayratna Sen Gupta, Calcutta, 1888.
6. In Sanskrit and Guzrathi by Behicharlal Nathuram, Ahmedabad, 1889.
7. In Sanskrit and Bengali by Kāliśa Cundra Sen Gupta, Calcutta, 1890-1892.
8. In Sanskrit and Hindi by Pandit Robi Dutta, Bombay, 1890.
9. In Sanskrit and Marathi by Ganeś Kṛṣṇa Garde, Poona, 1891.
10. In Sanskrit and Bengali by *Kavirāja* Binod Lāl Sen, Calcutta, 1891-1892.

Commentaries.[1]—

1. Sarvāṅga Sundarī[2] by Arūṇadatta, son of Mṛgāṅka-datta, 1220 A.D.

---

[1] See Cordier's Vāgbhaṭa et L'Aṣṭāṅgahṛdaya Saṁhitā, P. 6.

[2] इति श्रीमृगाङ्कदत्तपुत्र श्रीमदरुणदत्तविरचितायां सर्व्वाङ्गसुन्दराख्यटीकायां * * * * *

Colophon at the end of each Chapter of the Commentary.

2. Āyurvedadarśayana (Dinacharyā Prakarana) by Hemadri or Kamadeva, Raja of Devagiri. It is available in parts only.
3. Aṣṭāṅgahṛdayarddyota by Aśadhara Sallaxana.
4. Padārthacandrikā by Candracandana.
5. Saṅketamañjarī by Dāmodara.
6. Aṣṭānga Hṛdayatikā by Rāmanāth Vaidya.
7. Vālaprobodhikā (Anonymous).
8. Hṛdayabodhikā ,,
9. Pāṭhya.
10. Vāgbhaṭartha Kaumudī by Hari Kṛṣṇa Sen Mullick.
11. Pradīpa by Jaśodānandan Sarkār, 1298 B.S.

VĀGBHAṬA III.

The author of Rasaratna Samuccaya in the Colophons at the end of each chapter identifies himself with Vāgbhaṭa II: "Here ends Book first (or so) of R.R.S. composed by Vāgbhaṭa, son of Siṁha Gupta, prince of physician." The salutation at the beginning of his book is strictly Buddhistic. The probable date of the book is "placed between the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries A.D."[1] "The chemical knowledge, as revealed in Vāgbhaṭa is almost on a par with that in the Suśruta," whereas the R. R. S. indicates an advanced state of that science. He quotes Rasārṇava as a source of his information; he does not mention opium as a medicine, and the Firaṅga roga and its treatment find no place in his book.

[1] P. C. Rāy's History of Hindu Chemistry, Intro., p. li.

MĀDHAVAKARA.

He is the author of the famous work on Pathology or Nidāna. His book was translated into Arabic by the order of Harun-Al-Rasid and so the most recent date that can be assigned to him is the seventh century A.D.[1] Thakore Saheb of Gondal identifies him with Mādhabācāryya, the celebrated author of Sarvadarśana Saṁgraha, the brother of Sāyana, the commentator of the Vedas.[2] I do not find any authority for such an assertion and here is an example of fallacious reasoning based simply on the identity of names. Mādhabācāryya and Sāyana lived in the twelfth century A.D. Mention should also be made of the view expressed by Dr. Hoernle as certain that Mādhavakara, the author of Nidāna and Vṛnda Mādhaba, the author of Siddhayoga are one and the same person. He holds that Vṛnda is the real name, but he was known to the commentators as Mādhava, for his melodious diction. There is no proof given of this opinion, and we have reasons for not accepting it. However as he does not treat of surgical instruments, his work is not important to us.

CAKRAPĀṆIDATTA.

Cakrapāṇidatta or more commonly Cakradatta in a Colophon[3] has given an account of himself in his book called

---

[1] Jolly's Indian Medicine, ff. 5, 6, pp. 7-9.

[2] History of Aryan Medical Science, Ch. II, p. 35.

[3]
गौड़ाधिनाथ रसवत्याधिकारिपात्र—
नारायणस्य तनयः सुनयोऽन्तरङ्गात्।
भानोरतु ग्रथितलोध्रवलीकुलीनः
श्रीचक्रपाणिरिह कर्तृपदाधिकारी॥

Colophon in Cakradatta.

Cikitsā Sāra Saṁgraha: "The author of this work is Śrī Cakrapāṇi who belongs to the family of Lodhravalī; and who is the youngest brother of Vānu and the son of Nārāyaṇa, the superintendent of the kitchen of Nayapāla,[1] the king of Gour." This book is arranged on the plan of Vṛnda in his Siddhayoga[2] which again follows closely as a companion volume to Mādhava's Nidāna.[3] The age of Cakradatta is about 1060 A.D.; and Vṛnda must have flourished between Mādhava and Cakrapāṇi for he quotes the former while he is himself quoted by the latter. So the probable age of Vṛnda is the ninth century A.D. Besides being a celebrated author, Cakradatta wrote excellent commentaries of Caraka and Suśruta. His extant works are—

1. Cikitsā Sāra Saṁgraha or Cakradatta. A treatise on Medicine.

---

[1] For the date of Nayapāla, vide Cunningham's Archœo. Survey of India. III. P. 119; also J. A. S. LX. Pt. I. P. 46. Life of Atisa by S. C. Dās.

[2] य: सिद्धयोगलिखिताधिकसिद्धयोगा—
नत्रैव निक्षिपति केवलमुद्धरेद्य: ।
भट्टत्रयत्रिपथवेदविदा जनेन
दत्त: पतेत् सपदि मूर्द्धनि तस्य शाप: ॥

Śloka at the end of the Cakradatta.

य इत्यादौ।—सिद्धियोग इति ग्रन्थकृतसंग्रहस्य संज्ञा, तल्लिखितयोगमपेक्ष्याधिका ये च सिद्धियोगा अत्र संग्रहे उक्तास्तानधिकयोगान् तत्रैव सिद्धियोगे निक्षिपति, तथा यो वा तानधिकसिद्धयोगानित: संग्रहादुद्धरेत् दूरीकुर्यात्, तस्य मूर्द्धनि दैवेन पुंसा दत्त: शाप: पतेत्। कीदृशेन पुंसा? भट्टत्रयत्रिपथवेदविदा। कारिका इष्टीका चन्द्रटीकेति भट्टत्रयं, त्रिपथवेद: ऋग्यजु:सामरूप:, तद्विदा ॥

Śibadāsa Sen's Commentary.

[3] ग्रन्थेन * * * * * * * संलिख्यते गदविनिश्चयक्रमेण ॥

Vṛnda's Siddhayoga.

2. Cakradatta or Materia Medica. It treats on drugs applicable to a number of deseases.

3. Muktābali. This treatise on the nature and properties of medicinal drugs is ascribed to Cakrapāṇi.

4. Vānumati—Commentary on Suśruta Saṁhitā.

5. Cakratattwadīpikā—Commentary on Caraka Saṁhitā.

Editions.—

1. Cakradatta or Cikitsā Sāra Saṁgraha edited by *Kavirāja* Pyāri Mohan Sen Gupta, Calcutta, 1295 B.S.

2. Cakradatta with Bengali translation by Candrakumār Dās Kavibhuṣan.

3. Cakradatta with Bengali translation and with commentary of Śiva Dās Sen, by Jaśodā Nandan Sarkār, 1302 B.S.

SĀRAṄGADHARA.

He wrote Sāraṅgadhara Saṁgraha. It is compiled from the works of Caraka, Suśruta, Vāgbhaṭa and others.[1] It is very popular in Western India. It treats on nosology and practice of Medicine. He was the son of Dāmodara and flourished in the fifteenth century A.D.

Edition.—By *Kavirāja* Pyāri Mohan Sen Gupta, Calcutta, 1296 B.S.

---

[1] प्रसिद्धयोगा मुनिभिः प्रयुक्ता
चिकित्सके यें वहवोऽनुभूताः।
विधीयते शार्ङ्गधरेण तेषां
सुसंग्रहः सज्जनरञ्जनाय॥

Sāraṅgadhara Saṁgraha, I. i.

Commentary.—Sāraṅgadharatīkā: It is a commentary on the above work by Adhamulla.

BHĀVA MIŚRA.

About 350 years ago, a compilation was made by Bhāva Miśra, son of Lataka Miśra, an inhabitant of Benares, from the most celebrated medical works and was called Bhāva Prakāśa.[1] He lived about 1550 A.D. and was considered a "Jewel of Physicians and Master of Śāstras." He mentions China root called Tob Chini[2] in the Vernacular as a remedy of Firaṅga roga or Syphilis[3] which he describes for the first time in India. He was the first to make mention of certain drugs of foreign countries as Badhkshani Naspasi,

---

[1] आयुर्वेदाब्धिमध्यादतिमतिमुनयो योगरत्नानि यत्ना-
ल्लब्ध्वा स्वे स्वे निबन्धेदधुरखिलजन व्यधिविध्वंसनाय ।
तत्तद् ग्रन्थादृगृहीतैः सुवचनमणिभि र्भावमिश्रश्चिकित्सा
शास्त्रे जाड्यान्धकारं प्रशमयितुमिमं सन्विधत्ते प्रकाशम् ॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

इति श्रीमिश्र लटकतनय श्रीमद्भिश्रभावविरचिते
भावप्रकाशे षष्ठ प्रकरणं सम्पूर्णं ॥

Colophon at the end of Section I.

[2] द्वीपान्तरवचा किञ्चित्तिक्तोष्णा वह्निदीपिनी ।
विबन्धाध्मानशूलघ्नी शुक्रमूत्रविशोधिनी ॥
वातव्याधीनपस्मारमुन्मादं तनुवेदनाम् ।
व्यपोहति विशेषेण फिरङ्गामयनाशिनी ॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[3] फिरङ्गसंज्ञके देशे बाहुल्येनव यद्भवेत् ।
तस्मात् फिरङ्ग इत्युक्तो व्याधिर्व्याधिविशारदैः ॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, II. iv.

Khorasani and Parasika Vacha (Acorus Calamus), Sulemani Kharjura (date fruit of Suleman),[1] and opium.

Editions.—

1. By Jībānanda Vidyāsāgara, Calcutta, 1875.
2. By Rasik Lāl Gupta.
3. By Kālīśa Candra Vidyāratna.

Besides these books, the number of Sanskrit medical works is simply legion; many of them are daubed with fancy names and are excellent treatises on the different branches of medical science. But they are quite foreign to our purpose. I intend to publish in a separate volume short notices of the medical authors and their works, and so we need not dwell on them here.

---

[1] पारसीक यवानी तु यवानी सदृशी गुणै: ।
विशेषात् पाचनी रूक्षा याहिणी मादिनी गुरु: ॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I.

पारसीकवचा शुक्ला प्रोक्ता हैमवतीति सा ।
हैमवत्युदिता तद्वातं हन्ति विशेषत: ॥

Ibid.

उक्तं खसफलचीरमाफूकमहिफेणकम् ।

Ibid.

चीनाक सज्ञ: कर्पूर: कफघ्नयकर: स्मृत: ।

Ibid.

खर्ज्जुरी गोस्तनाकारा परदीपादिहागता ॥

Ibid.

CHAPTER II.

HOSPITALS AND DISPENSARIES.

Before entering into our proper subject, it would not be amiss to notice here two objects—Hospitals and Anæsthetics—which are essentially necessary for the devolopment of surgical knowledge. We know from the Edict II of Aśoka that India during his reign was studded with hospitals not only for the treatment of human beings but also for the brute creations. But even before Aśoka, hospitals flourished in India. In Caraka we can trace the germ of such an institution though it was used for rich men and did not accommodate the public.[1]

---

[1] दृढं निवातं प्रवातैकदेशं सुखप्रविचारमनुपल्यकं धूमातपरजसामनभिगमनीयमनिष्टानाञ्च शब्द-स्पर्श-रस-रूप-गन्धानां सोपानोदूमलसुपलवर्चःस्थानस्नानभूमिमहानसोपेतं वास्तुविद्याकुशलः प्रशस्तं गृहमेव तावत् पूर्व्वमुपकल्पयेत्।

ततः शीलशौचानुरागदाक्ष्यप्रादक्षिण्योपपन्नानुपचारकुशलान् सर्व्वकर्म्मसु पर्य्यवदातान् सूपौदनपाचकस्नापकसंवाहकौत्सादकसंवेशकौषधपेषकांश्च परिचारकान् सर्व्वकर्म्मस्वप्रतिकुलान्। तथा गीतवादित्रोल्लापकश्लोकगाथाख्यायिकेतिहास-पुराणकुशलानाभिप्राय-ज्ञाननुमतांश्च देशकालविदः परिषदश्च। तथा लावकपिञ्जलशशहरिणैनकालपुच्छकसृगमातृकोरभ्रान्। गाञ्च दोग्ध्रीं शीलवतीमनातुरां जीवद्वत्सां सुप्रतिविहितलक्षणशरणपानीयाम्। जलपात्राचमनोदकीष्ठमणिकपिठरघटकुम्भीकुम्भकुण्डशरावदर्व्वीकपरीपचनमन्थानचेलसूत्रकार्पासोर्णादीनि च शयनासनादीनि चौपस्यस्तरणप्रतियहाणि सुप्रयुक्तान्तरणोत्तरप्रच्छदोपधानानि स्वापाश्रयाणि संवेशनोपवेशनस्नेहस्वेदाभ्यङ्गप्रदेहे परिषेकानुलेपनवमनविरेचनास्थापनानुवासन-शिरोविरेचनमूर्द्धोद्वारकर्म्मणामुपचारसुखानिसुप्रचालितोपधानाश्च शस्त्रक्षारमध्यमा दृशद शस्त्राणि चोपकरणार्थानि।

धूमनेत्रं वस्तिनेत्रञ्चोत्तरवस्तिकञ्च। कुशहस्तश्च तुलाञ्च मानभाण्डञ्च घृततैलवसामज्जक्षौद्रफाणितलवणोन्मर्दक-मधुसुरासौवीरकतुषोदकमैरेयमेदकदधिमण्डोदश्विद्धानाम्लमूत्राणि च। तथा शालिषष्टिकमुद्गमाषयवतिलकुलत्थबदरमूलीकापूपकाभयामलकविभीतकानि नानाविधानि च स्नेहस्वेदोपकरणानि द्रव्याणि तत्रैवोर्द्धहरणानुलोमिकीभयभाञ्जि संग्रहणीयदीपनीयपाचनीयोपशमनीयवातहराणि समाख्यातानि चौषधानि यद्यान्यदपि किञ्चिद्यापदः परिसंख्यायीपकरणं विद्यते यच्च प्रतिभोगार्थं तत्तदुपकल्पयेत्॥

Caraka Saṁhitā. I., xv.

He advises us as follows:—The engineer is to erect a strong and spacious building, well-ventilated at one part, the other part being free from draughts. The scenery should be pleasing and one should feel happy to walk in it. It must not be behind any high building, nor exposed to the glare of the sun. It should be inaccessible to smoke and dust. There must not be anything injurious to our senses as regards sound, touch, taste, form and smell. There should be stairs, large wooden mortars and pestles; and there must be additional bare ground for the construction of a privy, bath-room and kitchen. The staff should consist of servants and companions. The servants should be good, virtuous, pure, fond, clever, generous, well trained in nursing, skillful in works, able to cook rice and curries well, competent to administer a bath, expert masseur[1], trained in raising and moving a patient, dexterous in making or cleaning beds, practiced in the art of compounding medicines and willing workers not likely to show displeasure to any order. The companions should be good singers and musicians, fluent speakers, well-versed in distichs, ballads, tales, history and mythology, well-acquainted with the design of a patient's nods or signals, agreeable and should have knowledge of the season and the locality. The various kinds of animals

[1] From the accounts of Megasthenes, we learn that four attendants used to massage him (Candragupta) with ebony rollers during the time that he was engaged in disposing of cases. Such an attendant (saṁvāhaka) is a minor character in the Toy Cart or little Clay Cart, drama, transl. by Ryder, in Hāvard Oriental Series, Vol. IX, 1905—Smith's Early History of India, 2nd Ed., Page 122. Footnote. We also find in the Kāmandikya Nītisāra that the king is cautioned against shampooers who have the opportunity of poisioning him.

सूदव्यञ्जनकर्त्तारस्तल्पका व्यवकास्तथा।
प्रसाधका भोजकाश्च गात्रसंवाहका अपि॥

Ch. XII. V. 45.

should always be kept in stock such as Lāva (*Perdix Chinensis*), Kapiñjala (partridge), hares, sheep and the different kinds of deers, Ena (the black antilope) blacktailed deer, and Mṛgamātṛka. There should be a diary attached to the building. The cow should be good natured and healthy, and should yield profuse milk. The calves must be living. There should be stocked for them potable water and hay in a clean fold. In that building must be kept the following necessary articles :—

Water vessels, washing basins, tubs, jars, dishes, ghata, (small jars) kumbhī, kumbha (larger and smaller vessels), kundu (jug or pitcher), soraba (earthen basins), spoons or ladles, cooking utensils, churning rods, cloth, thread, cotton, wool, bedding and āsana (seats). Near them should be placed drinking vessels of gold and spittoons. The bedding should consist of a broad carpet, bed-sheet, pillows, and a bedstead. There should be collected good furnitures for beds and seats ; and also utensils and appliances for application of oleaginous medicines, heat, oil, ointment, bath and perfumeries, and for the acts of emesis, purgation, draining of the brain, injection into the rectum, defaecation and urination (*i.e.* Vasti-yantra, urinal, bed-pan &c.). The blunt and sharp instruments and their accessories, well-washed mullers and whetstones of different degrees of smoothness—polished, plain or rough—should be near at hand ; the tubular instruments for fumigation, inhalation and injection into the rectum, urethra and vagina, should be available there ; and the following articles are also to be stocked :—brushes and brooms, weighing scales and weights, ghee (melted butter), oil, fat, marrow, honey, molasses, salt, wood, water, spirituous liquor formed by steeping husked grains of barley in water, or by boiling together the husks of fried māṣkalāya

(pulse of Phaseolous Rox.), barley and water, spirituous liquor from the blossoms of Lythrum Fruticoscence with sugar, spirit distilled from the different sorts of grains, curdled milk, rice, gruel, whey, sour liquid produced from the aceteus fermentation of powdered paddy, and the various kinds of urines of animals. Different kinds of rice such as Śāli (or that reaped in cold season) and Saṣṭhika (or that grown in hot weather in low lands and reaped within sixty days of its sowing), Mudga (Phaseolus mungo), Māṣa (Phaseolus Rox.), Yava (Hordeum Vulgare), seasame (Seasamum Indicum), Kullatha (Dolichos Biflorus), plums (Zizyphus Jujube), raisins (Vitis Vinifera), Paruṣa (Grewia Asiatica), Abhayā (Chebulic Myrobolan), Āmlakī (Phyllanthus Emblica), Vibhītaka (Terminalia Bellerica) and other classes of medicaments, as oils, diaphoretics, sternutatories, cathartics, emetics, purgatives, astringents, stomachics, digestives, calmatives, carminatives and various other forms of medicines, are required for treatment. Besides these, there must be stored the antidotes to poisons caused by overdoses of medicines and other appliances likely to add to the patient's comfort.

To this may be compared the description of the Greek iatrium, which is mentioned in the Hippocratic treatise, De Medicio. He directs that "it should be so constructed that neither the wind nor sun might prove offensive to the patient, and goes on to enumerate the various articles which it should contain, such as scalpels, lancets, cupping-instruments, trepans, respatories, with bandages and medicines." [1]

[1] Works of Hippocrates, Syd. Soc. Vol. II, page 470, Footnote

Suśruta gives us a list of appliances[1] required in surgical operations:—

1. Blunt Instruments. 2. Sharp Instruments. 3. Potential Cautery. 4. Actual Cautery. 5. Śalākā or rods. 6. Horns. 7. Leeches. 8. Hollow bottle gourd. 9. Jāmbav-ouṣṭha [a bougie of blackstone, the extremity of which is shaped like the fruit of the Jambul tree (Urginea Jāmbolana)]. 10. Cotton. 11. Pieces of cloth. 12. Thread. 13. Leaves. 14. Materials of bandaging. 15. Honey. 16. Ghee, or clarified butter. 17. Suet. 18. Milk. 19. Oils. 20. Tarpan.—flour of any perched grain or condensed milk etc. mixed with water to mitigate thirst. 21. Decoctions. 22. Liniments. 23. Plasters. 24. Fan. 25. Cold and hot water. 26. Iron pans, kalasi and other earthen vessels; beddings and seats. 27. Obedient, steady and strong servants.

The Lying-in-room.—Caraka says: "Before the ninth month of pregnancy, the lying-in-room should be constructed. The land should be cleaned of bones, gravels and potsherds. The ground selected should be of auspicious colour, taste and smell. The gate of the house should face towards the east or the north.[2] There must be a store of wood such as Vilva (Ægle

---

[1] अतोऽनामतं कर्म चिकीर्षता वैद्येन पूर्वमेवोपकल्पयितव्यानि तदयथा यन्त्रशस्त्रक्षाराग्नि-शलाकाग्रङ्गजलौकालाबूजाम्बवौष्ठपिचुप्रीतसूत्रपत्रपट्टमधूघृतवसातैलतर्पणकषायलेपन कल्क-व्यञ्जनशीतोष्णोदक कटाहदीनि परिकर्म्मणश्च स्निग्धाः स्थिरा बलवन्तः।

Suśruta Saṁhitā. I. v.

[2] "The best sort of ground should abound with milky trees, full of fruits and flowers; its boundary should be of a quadrangular form, level and smooth, with a sloping declivity towards the east producing a hard sound, with a stream running from left to right, of an agreeable doour, fertile, of an uniform

Marmelos), Tinduka (Diospyros Embryopteris), Inguda (Balanites Rox.) Bhallākaka (Semecarpus Anacardium), Vāruṇa (Ocimum Basilicum), Khadira (Acacia Catechu) or wood of other kinds said to be auspicious by a Brāhman versed in the Atharvaveda; and there must be a sufficient provision for clothes, liniments, and covers. For the pregnant woman, be careful to have a fire-place, water, pestles and mortars, a privy, a bathing place, and ovens. These should be constructed according to the science of engineering and should be pleasant with regard to the season. There should be collected clarified butter, oil, honey, different kinds of salts as rock salt, sonchal salt, and black salt, Viḍaṅgas (Embelic Ribes), treacle, Kuṣṭha (Saussurea Lappa), Kilima (Pinus Deodara), Nāgara (dried root of Zinziber Officinale), Pippalī (Piper Longum), its root, Hasti-pippalī (Scindaspus Officinalis), Mandukparni (Hydroctyle Asiatica), Elā (Elettarium Cardamomum), Lāngolī (Gloriosa Superba), Vāca (Acorus Calamus), Cavya (Piper Cava), Chitraka (Plumbago Zeylanicum), Chiravilva (Pongamia Glabra), Hingu (Ferrula Assafætida), Sarṣapa (Mustard seeds), Laśuna (Allium Sativum), finely or thickly powdered rice, Kadamba (Anthocephalous Kadamba), Ātasi (Linum Usitatissimum), Vallija (Cucurbita Pepo), Bhurya (Betula Bhojpatra), Kulatha Dolichos Uniflorus), Maireya (a spirituous liquor from the blossoms of Lythrum Frutecoscence) and Āshava (Vinous fermented liquor from sugar or molasses, Rum). Also clollect two pieces of

---

colour containing a great quantity of soil, producing water when dug to the height of a man's arm raised above his head, and situated in a climate of moderate temperature."

Manosara, Ch. I. quoted in Ram Raz's The Architecture of the Hindus, Page 16.

stone (muller and stone slabs), two pestles, two mortars, an ass, a bullock, two sharp needles of gold and silver, two skeins of threads, sharp instruments of steel, two wooden bedsteads (Ægle Marmelos), and wood (Tinduka and Ingudi) for easily igniting fire. The female attendants should be mothers of children, and friends and relatives of the patients. They must be fond of her, skillful in work, intelligent, jolly, laborious full of tender love for the children and a favourite of the mother."[1]

The Child's Room:—He continues—" The engineer is to construct a room, spacious, beautiful, full of light, well-ventilated but free from draughts, strong, and free from beasts of prey, animals with fangs, mice and insects. There should be kept water, mortar and seperate places should be assigned for bathing, cooking, urination and defæcation. It should suit the season of the year. The beddings, seats and covers should be confortable and suitable to the season. Auspicious ceremonies should be performed in that room such as *homa*, expiations and presents to gods, for the proper protection of the child ; and there should be present pious old men, doctors, and devoted

---

[1] प्राक् चैवासद्मा नवमान्मासात् सुतिकागारं कारयेदपङ्कतास्थिशर्कराकपालेदेशं प्रशस्तरूपरसगन्धायां भूमौ प्राग्द्वारमुदग्द्वारं वा। तच्च वैखानां काष्ठानां तिन्दुकेङ्गुदानां भल्लातकानां वारुणानां खदिरानां वा यानि चानान्यपि ब्राह्मणाः शंसेयुरथर्ववेदविदस्तदसनालेपनाच्छादनापिधानसम्पदुपेतं तत्। वास्तु-विद्या-हृदययोगेनाग्निसलिलीलुखलवर्च:स्थानस्नानभूमिमहानससतुसुखञ्च। तच्च सर्पिस्तैलमधुसैन्धवसौवर्चलकाललवणविड्डगुडकुष्ठकिलिमनागरपिप्पलीमूलहस्तिपिप्पलीमस्तूकपर्णीलालाङ्गलीवचाचव्यचिचकचिरविल्व-हिङ्गुसर्षप लशुनकनकनिकानीपातसीवल्लिजभूर्ज्जाः कुलत्थमैरेयसुरासवाः सन्निहिताः स्युः॥ यथाग्नानौ द्वौ द्वे चण्डमूषले द्वे उलूखले खरौ दृषदश्च द्वौ च तीक्ष्णौ सूचीपिप्पलकौ सौवर्णराजतौ द्वे शस्त्राणि च तीक्ष्णायसानि द्वौ च वित्तमयौ पर्यङ्कौ तैन्दुकेङ्गुदानि काष्ठान्यग्निसन्धुक्षणानि स्त्रियश्च बह्वीर्बहुप्रजाताः सौहार्दयुक्ताः सततमनुरक्ताः प्रदक्षिनाचाराः प्रतिपत्तिकुशलाः प्रकृतिवत्सलाश्चक्षविषादाः क्षीरसर्पिषीडाभिमता ब्राह्मणश्चाथर्ववेदविदो यश्चान्यदपि तत्र समर्थं मन्येत यच्च ब्राह्मणाः ब्रूयुः स्त्रियश्च इडास्तत्कार्यम्॥

Caraka Samhitá. IV. viii.

attendants constantly. The child's bed, covers and sheets should be soft, light, pure and scented. These should always be free from sweat, dirt, worms or bugs, urine and fæces. If repeated change of new clothes be impossible, the soiled coverings should be well washed and the beddings well purified with steam and thoroughly dried before they are used again. To purify or sterilise the dress, beddings, coverings and sheets by fumigation use the following medicines with clarified butter:—Barley (Hordeum Vulgare), mustard seeds, linseeds, assafœtida, Guggula (Balsamodendron Mukul), Vāca (Acorus Calamus), Coraka (Andropogon Acicularis), Vayasthā (Chebulic Myrobolan), Golomi (Panicum Dactylon), Jaṭilā (Nardostachys Jatamansi), Palankaṣā (a variety of Guggula), Aśoka (Saraca Indica), Rohiṇī (Picrorrhiza Kurroa) and sankes' skin.....A variety of toys to please the child should be at hand and these should be coloured, light, musical, beautiful and must not be sharp pointed. They should be of such a size and shape as cannot be put into the childs' mouth or do not terrify or kill the child."[1]

---

[1] अतोऽनन्तरं कुमारागारविधिमनुव्याख्यास्यामः॥ वास्तुविद्याकुशलः प्रशस्तं रम्यमतमस्कं निवातं प्रवातैकदेशं दृढमपगतश्वापदपशुदंष्ट्रिमूषिकपतङ्गं सुसंविभक्तसलिलीदूखलमूत्रवर्चः-स्थानस्नानभूमिसहानसस्तुसुखं यथर्तु शयनासनास्तरणसम्पन्नं कुर्यात्। तथा सुविहित-रक्षाविधानबलिमङ्गलहोमप्रायश्चित्तं शुचिव्रतवैद्यानुरक्तजनसम्पूर्णमिति। कुमारागारविधिः॥ शयनास्तरणप्रावरणानि कुमारस्य मृदुलघुशुचिसुगन्धीनि स्युः। स्वेदमलजन्तुमन्ति मूत्रपुरीषोपसृष्टानि च वर्ज्यानि स्युः॥ असति सम्भवेऽन्येषां तान्येव च सुप्रक्षालितपीधानानि सुधूपितानि सुशुष्कशुष्काण्युपयोगं गच्छेयुः। धूपनानि पुनर्वाससां शयनास्तरणप्रावरणानाञ्च यवसर्षपातसीहिङ्गुगुग्गुलवचावीरकवयःस्थागोलोमीजटिलापलङ्कषाशोकरोहिणीसर्पनिर्मोकानि घृतसिक्तयुक्तानि स्युः॥ मणयश्च धारणीयाः कुमारस्य खड्गऋषभगवयवृषभानां जीवतामेव दक्षिणेभ्यो विषाणेभ्योऽग्राणि गृहीतानि स्युः। मन्त्रौषधयो जीवकर्षभकौ च यान्यप्यन्यानि ब्राह्मणाः प्रशंसेयुः। क्रीडनकानि खलस्य तु विचित्राणि घोषवन्त्यभिरामाणि अगुरुण्यतीक्ष्णानि अनास्यप्रवेशीनि अप्राणहराणि अविवासनानि स्युः॥

Caraka Saṁhitā IV. viii.

Suśruta directs that there should be a particular room provided for patients who have undergone surgical operations.[1] "Patients suffering from surgical diseases as inflammatory swelling, wounds &c. should, from the very commencement of their illness, confine themselves inside a clean house, situated in a wholesome locality, free from draughts and not exposed to the glare of the sun. For, in such a building, constitutional, mental and accidental diseases are not likely to occur. In that room, the bed for the patients should be soft, spacious, and well-arranged. The patient should lie down, his

---

[1] व्रणिनः प्रथममेवागारमन्विच्छेत्तच्चागारं प्रशस्तवास्त्वादिकं कार्य्यं ।

प्रशस्तवास्तुनिरुद्दे शुचावातपवर्ज्जिते ।
निवाते न च रोगाः स्युः शारीरागन्तुमानसाः ॥

तस्मिन् शयनमसम्बाधं स्वास्तीर्णं मनोज्ञं प्राक्शिरस्कं सशस्त्रं कुर्व्वीत ।

सुखचेष्टाप्रचारः स्यात् स्वास्तीर्णे शयने व्रणी ।
प्राच्यां दिशि स्थिता देवास्तत्पूजार्थं नतं शिरः ॥

तस्मिन् सुहृद्भिरनुकूलैः प्रियम्वदैरुपास्यमानो यथेष्टमासीत् ।

सुहृदो विचिपन्त्याशु कथाभिर्व्रणवेदनाः ।
आश्वासयन्तो बहुशस्त्वनुकूलाः प्रियम्वदाः ॥

न च दिवानिद्रावशगः स्यात् ।

दिवास्वप्नाद्व्रणे कण्डूर्गौरवं तथा ।
शयथुर्व्वेदनारागः स्रावश्चैव भृशं भवेत् ॥

उत्थानसंवेशनपरिवर्त्तनचंक्रमणीयेर्भाषणादिषु चात्मचेष्टास्वप्रमत्तो व्रणं संरक्षेत् ।

स्थानासनं चंक्रमणं यानयानातिभाषणं ।
व्रणवान्न निषेवेत शक्तिमानपि मानवः ॥
उत्थानाद्यासनं स्थानं शय्या चातिनिषेविता ।
प्राप्नुयान्मारुतादङ्गे रुजस्तस्मादिवर्ज्जयेत् ॥

गम्याणाञ्च स्त्रीणां सन्दर्शनमसम्भाषणसंस्पर्शनानिदूरतः परिहरेत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā I. xix.

head pointing towards the east, and keep there some weapon for his own protection. On such a bed, the patient can lie comfortably and turn to his sides at pleasure. He should be surrounded by his dear friends, for their sweet words relieve the pain of inflammation. The female friends, however, should be avoided and kept at a distance. He should observe strictly the orders of the surgeon as regards his food, drink and mode of living. He should have his hairs clipped and nails pared short, be pure in his person, put on white clothes and devote himself to religious duties. A light should be kept burning; and garlands of flower, weapons &c., should be provided in the room to ward off the demons. He should be cheered and inspired by pleasant stories; and the physicians and the priests should attend the patient morning and evening. Pastils made of Sinapis Nigra and Azadirachta Indica with clarified butter and salt, should be burnt in the room morning and evening for ten days continually. The inflamed part should be fanned with a *cāmar* or yolk-tail. Sleep during the day, exercise and sexual intercourse must on no account be indulged in."

Suśruta also describes the kitchen of the king thus:— "That is the proper kitchen which is built on good ground, towards an auspicious quarter, full of utensils for cooking, spacious, clean, provided with windows guarded by a network, frequented by friends, cleared well of grass furnished with a canopy, purified by auspicious ceremonies, and managed by men and women of good character. The superintendent of the kitchen should, like the doctor, be noble and virtuous. The cook and servants should be pure, noble, capable, mild, good looking, engaged in their respective duties, high-minded, should have their hairs and nails cut short, steady,

well-bathed, of subdued passion, well-dressed, obedient and have their heads well-covered."

"The doctor in charge of the kitchen should be of noble family, religious, friendly, a clever manager for getting king's food properly prepared, ever careful for his health, non-avaricious, simple, fond, grateful, good-looking, cool-tempered, well-behaved, not proud and envious, laborious, of subdued passion, forgiving, pure, of good character, kind, intelligent, not easily fatigued, always loving, well wisher, capable, bold, clever, skillful, not unreasonably tender, provided with medicines and well proficient in the art of healing."[1]

---

1 कुलीनं धार्म्मिकं स्निग्धं सुभृतं सततोत्थितं।
अलुब्धं अशठं भक्तं कृतज्ञं प्रियदर्शनं॥
क्रोधपारुष्यमात्सर्य्य मदालस्य विवर्ज्जितं।
जितेन्द्रियं क्षमावन्तं शुचिं शीलदयान्वितं॥
मेधाविनमसंभ्रान्तमनुरक्तं हितैषिणं।
पटुं प्रगल्भं निपुणं दक्षं मायाविवर्ज्जितं॥
पूर्व्वोक्तैश्च गुणैर्युक्तं नित्यं सन्निहितागदं।
महानसे प्रयुञ्जीत वैद्यं तद्विद्यपूजितं॥
प्रशस्तदिग्देशकृतं शुचिभाण्डं महच्छुचि।
सजालकं गवाक्षाढ्य मात्मवर्गं निषेवितं॥
विकृष्टसृष्टसंसृष्टं सवितानं कृतार्च्चनं।
परीक्षित स्त्रीपुरुषं भवेच्चापि महानसं॥
तत्राध्यक्षं नियुञ्जीत प्राज्ञो वैद्यगुणान्वितं।
शुचयो दक्षिणा दक्षाः विनीताः प्रियदर्शनाः॥
सविभक्ताः सुमनसो नीच कैश्चनखाः स्थिराः।
स्नाताहृदः संयमिनः कृतीक्षीषाः सुसंयुताः॥
तस्याज्ञा विधेयासुः विविधाः परिकर्म्मिणः।
आहारस्थित यथापि भवन्ति प्राणिनो यतः॥
तस्मान्महानसे वैद्यः प्रमाद रहितो भवेत्।
माहानसिक वीदारः सौपोदनिक पौपिकाः॥
भवेयुर्वैद्यशुश्रूषा ये चान्ये तु कैचन।
इङ्गितज्ञो मनुष्याणां वाक्चेष्टमुखवैक्रतेः॥

Susruta Saṁhitā V. I.,

In the Kāmandakiya Nītisāra, we find the king advised to take thoroughly examined food, and to be surrounded by physicians well-versed in the science of Toxicology ;[1] and again it is said that king should take his medicines, cordials, and edibles after having his medical attendants tasted them.[2] The king is advised to kill his enemy by weaning over his physician or by administering poisonous liquids.[3]

In the Mahāvāgga[4] we find the qualities of a good patient and a good nurse described :—

"6. What are five qualities, O Bhikkhus, which when a sickman has, he is easy to wait upon—

When he does do what is good for him ; when he does know the limit (of the quantity of the food) that is good for him ; when he does take his medicine, when he does let a nurse who desires his good, know what manner of disease he has, or when he is getting worse that that is so, or when it is getting better that that is so ; and when he has become able to bear bodily pains that are severe, sharp, grievous, disagreeable, unpleasant and destructive to life. These are the five qualities, O Bhikkhus, which when a sickman has, he is easy to wait upon.

---

1 विषघ्नैरुदकैः स्नातः विषघ्नमनिभूषितः ।
परीक्षितं समश्नीयाच्चाङ्गुलाविङ्गिषग्वृतः ॥ १० ॥
Kāmandakya Nītisāra vii. v. 10.

2 औषधानि च सर्व्वाणि पानं पानीयमेव च ।
तत्कल्पकैः समास्वाद्य प्राश्नीयाद्भोजनानि च ॥ २७ ॥
Ibid. vii. v. 27.

3 भिषग्भेदेन वा शत्रुं रसदानेन साध्ययेत् ॥ ७० ॥
Ibid. IX. v. 70.

4 Mahāvāgga viii. 26, 6 & 8 (Sacred Books of the East).

8. There are five qualities, O Bhikkhus, which, when one who waits upon the sick has, he is competent to the task—when he is capable of prescribing medicines; when he does know what (diet) is good and what is not good for the patient, serving what is good and not serving what is not good for him; when he deos wait upon the sick out of love, and not out of greed; when he does not revolt from removing evacuation, saliva or vomit; when he is capable of teaching, inciting, arousing and gladdening the patient with religious discourses. These are the five qualities, O Bhikkhus, which, when one who waits upon the sick has, he is competent to the task."

There is also good deal of evidence to show that medicines were distributed free to the poor and to the pious men. When Viṣakhā asked for eight boons of the Buddha, she mentioned amongst them the previlege of bestowing her life long "food for the sick, food for those who wait upon the sick and medicines for the sick" and explained her reasons as follows[1] :—

"9. Moreover, Lord, if a sick Bhikkhu does not obtain suitable foods, his sickness may increase upon him, or he may die. But if a Bhikkhu have taken the diet that I shall have provided for the sick neither will his sickness increase upon him, nor will he die. It was this circumstance, Lord, that I had in view in desiring to provide the Samgha my life long with diet for the sick.

Moreover, Lord, a Bhikkhu who is waiting upon the sick if he has to seek out food for himself, may bring in the food (to the invalid) when the sun is already far on his course, and he will lose the opportunity of taking his food. But when

[1] Mahāvāggā VIII, 15-9.

he has partaken of the food I shall have provided for those who wait upon the sick, he will bring in food to the invalid in due time and he will not lose the opportunity of taking his food. It was this circumstances, Lord, that I had in view in desiring to provide the Sa*m*gha my life long with food for those who wait upon the sick.

10. Moreover, Lord if a sick Bhikkhu does not obtain suitable medicines his sickness may increase upon him, or he may die. But if a Bhikkhu have taken the medicines which I shall have provided for the sick, neither will his sickness increase upon him, nor will he die. It was this circumstance, Lord, that I had in view in desiring to provide the Sa*m*gha, my life long with medicines for the sick."

The Edict No. II of Aśoka clearly shows that charitable institutions were common in India, during his reign. The Edict runs as follows :—

"Everywhere in the kingdom of the king Piyadasi, beloved of the gods, and also of the nations who live in the frontiers such as the Cholas, the Pandyas, the realms of Satyaputra and Keralaputra, as far as Tambapani, (and in the kingdom of) Antiochus, king of the Greeks and of the kings who are his neighbours, everywhere the king Piyadasi, beloved of the gods, has provided medicines of two sorts, medicines for men and medicines for animals. Wherever plants useful either for men or for animals were wanting they have been imported and planted. Wherever roots and fruits were wanting, they have been imported and planted. And along public roads, wells have been dug for the use of animals and men."

We also learn from Houen Tsang's account that Śilāditya II

(610 - 650 A. D.) was inclined towards Budhism and he forbade the slaughter of living animals, built *stupas*, and "in all the highways of the towns and villages throughout India, he erected hospices, provided with food and drink, and stationed there physicians with medicines for travellers and poor persons round about, to be given without any stint."[1]

He also mentions about the father of the Bhikkhu Śrutaviṁśatikoṭi, that "from his house to the snowy mountains, he had established a succession of rest-houses, from which his servants continually went from one to the other. Whatever valuable medicines were wanted, they communicated the same to each other in order, and so procured them without loss of time, so rich was this family."[2]

He also mentions charitable institutions called Puṇyaśālās as common in India. "There were formerly in this country (Tsch-kia-Takka) many houses of charity (goodness or hppiness, Puṇyaśālās) for keeping the poor and the unfortunate. They provided for them medicines and food, clothing and necessaries; so that travellers were never badly off."[3]

Again he says: "Benevolent kings have founded here (Mo-ti-pil-lo or Matipura) a house of "merit" (Puṇyaśālās). This foundation is endowed with funds for providing choice food and medicines to bestow in charity on widows and bereaved persons, on orphans and the destitute."[4] A similar Puṇyāśālā or hospice was in K'ei-P'an-to (Kabandha).[5] In describing

[1] Beal's Record, Vol. I, p. 214.
[2] *Ibid*, Vol. II, p. 188.
[3] *Ibid*, Vol. I, p. 165.
[4] *Ibid*, Vol. I, p. 198.
[5] *Ibid*, Vol. II, p. 303.

Multan he says: "They have founded a house of mercy (happiness), in which they provide food, and drink, and medicines for the poor, and sick, affording succour and sustenance."[1] Of Śilāditya he says: "Every year he assembled the Sramanas from all countries, and on the third and seventh days he bestowed on them in charity four kinds of Alms (*viz.*—food, drink, medicine, clothing)."[2]

Fa Hian (405-11 A.D.), a contemporary of Candragupta Vikramāditya, describes the charitable dispensaries in the town of Pāṭāliputra thus:—"The nobles and householders of this country have founded hospitals within the city to which the poor of all countries, the destitute, cripple and the diseased may repair. They receive every kind of requisite help gratuitously. Physicians inspect their diseases, and according to their cases order them food and drink, medicines or decoctions, every thing in fact that may contribute to their ease. When cured, —they depart at their convenience."[3] Smith remarks: "No such foundation was to be seen elsewhere in the world at this date; and its existence, anticipating the deeds of modern Christian charity, speaks well both for the character of the citizens who endowed it, and for the genius of the great Aśoka whose teaching still bore such wholesome fruit many centuries after his decease. The earliest hospital in Europe, the Maison Dieu of Paris, is said to have been opened in the 7th centuries."[4]

"Upatisso, son of Buddha Das, builds Hospitals for cripples,

---

[1] Beal's Record, Vol. II, p. 274.
[2] *Ibid*, Vol. I, p. 214.
[3] *Ibid*, Vol. I, Intro. lcii.
[4] Smith's Early History of India, 2nd Ed., p. 280.

for pregnant women, and for the blind and diseased.[1] Dhatushena builds Hospitals for cripples and sick[2]. Buddha Das[3] himself ordained a physician for every ten villages on the high road, and built assylums for the crippled, deformed and destitute."[4]

The animal Hospitals or Piñjrāpoles which still exist at Ahmedabad, Surat, and Sodepore in Bengal, and elsewhere may be regarded as the survivals of the institutions founded by the Maurya monarch. The following account of the Surat Hospital in the 18th century is from the pen of Hamilton:—

"The most remarkable institution in Surat is the Banyan Hospital, of which we have no discription more recent than 1780. It then consisted of a large piece of ground enclosed by high walls, and sub-divided into several courts or yards for the accommodation of animals. In sickness they were attended with the greatest care, and here found a peaceful assylum for the infirmities of old age.

"When an animal broke a limb, or was otherwise disabled, his owner brought him to the Hospital, when he was received without regard to the caste or nation of his master. In 1772 this hospital contained horse, mules, oxen, sheep, goats, monkies, poultry, pigeons, and variety of birds; and also an aged tortoise, which was known to have been there seventy-five years. The most extraordinary ward was that appropriated for rats, mice, bugs, and other noxious vermins for whom suitable food was provided."[5]

---

[1] Mahāwanśo, p. 249. [2] *Ibid*, p. 245.
[3] *Ibid*, p. 256. [4] Cunningham's Bhilsa Topes, p. 54, foot note.
[5] Hamilton's Description of Hindustan (120) Vol. I, p. 718, quarto ed., Crooke. Things Indian, Art. Pinjrapole, (Murray 1906).

We quote here from Hemādri the opinions of the sages and the Purāṇas as to the merit of the founder of a hospital[1] :—

Visvāmitra.

There is no gift more precious than the gift of cure ; therefore it should be given freely to the sick to augment one's good fortune. He who gives medicines, diet, food, oil for smearing and shelter to the sick, becomes free from all diseases.

Samvartta.

The giver of medicines, oleaginous remedies and food for the cure of the sick, becomes free from all diseases, happy and long-lived.

Agastya.

Those who give rice and medicines freely attain happiness, being free from desease.

Saura Purāṇa.

He, who gives medicines to the sick to cure their diseases always remains healthy, long-lived and happy.

---

[1] अथ आरोग्यदानं ।

तचारोग्यदानन्नाव दुच्यते ।

आह विश्वामित्रः ।

आरोग्यदानात्परमं न दानं विद्यते क्वचित् ।
अतीदृयं रुजार्त्तानामारोग्यं भाग्यदृद्धये ॥
औषधं पथ्यमाहारं तैलाभ्यङ्गप्रतिश्रयं ।
यः प्रयच्छति रोगिभ्यः सभवेद्व्याधिवर्जितः ॥

संवर्त्तः ।

औषधं स्नेह-माहारं रोगिणां रोगशान्तये ।
ददानो रोगरहितः सुखी दीर्घायुरेव च ॥

Nandi Purāṇa.

The high-souled man who gives the Brahmins collyrium in charity to cure the diseases of the eye, goes to the Sun (after death) and becomes free from eye deseases, fine-looking and fortunate.

Good health is a step to the acquirement of religious merit, wealth, pleasure and final emancipation, and so the man who bestows cure to the sick and also he who erects a hospital equipped with good medicaments, dresses, learned doctors, servants and rooms for students, always gain them. The doctor should be well-versed in the religious treatises, experienced, familiar with the actions of medicines, a discriminator of the colour of the roots of the herbals and well-acquainted with the

---

अगस्त्यः ।

अन्नौ-षधप्रदातारः सुखं यान्ति निरामयाः ।

सौर पुराणे ।

रोगिणी रोगशान्त्यर्थमौषधं यः प्रयच्छति ।
रोगहीनः स दीर्घायुः सुखी भवति सर्व्वदा ॥

नन्दि पुराणे ।

अन्नं यो नरीदद्यादचौर्व्याधिनिवृत्तये ।
विप्राय स पुमान् याति सूर्य्यलोकं महामतिः ।
आरोग्यनयनो दिव्यः सुभगो जायते नरः ॥

तस्मिन्नेव पुराणे ।

धर्म्मा-र्थ-काम-मोक्षाणां आरोग्यं साधनंयुतः ।
अतस्त्वारोग्यदानेन नरो भवति सर्व्वदा ॥
आरोग्यशालां कुरुते महौषधपरिच्छदां ।
विदग्धवैद्यसंयुक्तां सत्यावसथसंयुतां ॥

proper season of raising them from the ground, well-trained with the qualities of the juices, (their strength and actions), ṣāli rice, meat and medicaments, trained in compounding medicines, one who knows well of the physique of men by intelligence, one who knows the temparament and the qualities of the diet, a pathologist who is not idle, well acquainted with the remedial agents for the premonitary signs and sequelæ of diseases, proficient in the requirements of time and place, well-read in the medical text-books—the Ayurveda with its eight divisions and an expert in curing diseases by domestic remedies (prepared from handful of common ingredients).

The pious man who erects such a hospital in which the services of good physicians of this nature are retained, becomes celebrated as the virtuous, the successful and the intelligent

---

वैद्यस्तु शास्त्रवित् प्राज्ञो दृष्टौषधपराक्रमः ।
औषधीमूलवर्षज्ञः समुद्धरणकालवित् ॥
रसवीर्य्यविपाकज्ञः शालिमांसौषधीगणे ।
योगविद्देहिनां देहं यो धिया प्रविशेदुधः ॥
धातुपथ्यमयज्ञश्च निदानविदतन्द्रितः ।
व्याधीनां पूर्व्वलिङ्गज्ञस्तदुत्तरविधानवित् ॥
देशकालविधानज्ञश्चिकित्साशास्त्रवित्तथा ।
अष्टाङ्गायुर्वेदवेत्ता सुष्टियोगविधानवित् ॥

अष्टावङ्गानि आयुर्वेदस्य ।

यथाशल्यं शालाक्यं कायचिकित्सा भूतविद्या कौमारभृत्यमगदतन्त्र रसायणतन्त्र वाजीकरणतन्त्रमिति सुश्रुतोक्तानि ।

एवं विधः शुभो वैद्यो भवेद्यत्राभियोजितः ।
आरोग्यशालामवन्तु कुर्य्यादीधर्म्मसंश्रयः ॥
स पुमान् धार्मिको लोके स कृतार्थः सबुद्धिमान् ।
सम्यगारोग्यशालायामौषधैः स्नेहपाचनैः ॥

man in this world. If in such a hospital the kind-hearted man can cure a single patient of his maladies by simple medicines, oleaginous remedies and compounds of medicinal decoctions, goes to the Brahma's residence with his seven generations upwards. The rich and the poor acquire religious merit in proportion to the amount of riches they possess; where would the poor man get a hospital and a young physician to cure his diseases? The man secures the eternal regions mentioned before by rendering the sick healthy by the use of roots to some and by good rubbing (with external applications) to others. He who cures the sick suffering from an increase or decrease of the Air, the Bile and the Phlegm by simple remedies, he too goes to such blessed regions (after death) as are secured by those who perform many religious sacrifices (Yajñas).

व्याधिनं विरुजी कृत्य अप्येकं कृच्छायुतः।
प्रयाति ब्रह्मसदनं कुलसप्तकसंयुतः॥
आढ्यो वित्तानुसारेण दरिद्रः फलभाग् भवेत्।
दरिद्रस्य कुतः शाला आरोग्याय भिषग्युवा॥
अपिमूलेन केनापि महौनाद्यैरथापि वा।
स्वस्थीकृते भवेन्मर्त्यो पूर्व्वोक्तं लोकमव्ययं॥
वात-पित्त-कफाद्यानां चया-पचयभेदिनां।
यस्तु स्वल्पाभुपायेन मोचयेत् व्याधिपीड़ितान्॥
सोपि याति शुभान् लोकान् अवाप्यान् यज्ञयाजिभिः।

स्कन्दपुराणे।

आरोग्य शालां यः कुर्य्यात् महावैद्यपुरस्कृतां।
सर्व्वोपकरणोपेतां तस्य पुण्यफलं शृणु॥
धर्म्मा-र्थ-काम-मोक्षाणामारोग्यं साधनं यतः।
तस्मादारोग्य दानेन तद्दत्तं स्याच्चतुष्टयं॥
अथैकमार्त्तं विहसं स्वस्थीकृत्य प्रयत्नतः।
प्राप्नोति सुमहत्पुण्यमनन्तं क्षयवर्जितं॥
ज्ञानयोगरतं शान्तं रोगार्त्तं शिवयोगिनं।
यः स्वस्थं कुरुते सोपि सर्व्वदानफलं लभेत्॥

Skandapurāna.

Hear, the amount of religious merit secured by a man who erects a hospital containing all the necessary articles (of treatment) and in which are engaged eminent physicians by reward. As good health is the means of attaining religious merit, wealth, pleasure and final emancipation, therefore, he by rendering the sick healthy, gives these four blessings.

By carefully curing a learned man of his sickness great merit is secured, which is eternal and indestructible. He too who cures a sickman who is calm and absorbed in meditation of Siva and knowledge, attains the virtue of all kinds of gifts. Bramhā, Visńu, all the gods, diseases, relatives and kings—they are obstacles to yoga but not to those who perform it (yogi). Whatever merit is obtained by the great, by supporting the sick Brāhmans (priests), Kshatriyas (warriors), and Biṭh (cultivators) and Sudras (servants), can not be obtained by the performance of all the great Yajñas (religious ceremonies). As even the gods can not reach the end of the

---

ब्रह्मा विष्णः सुराः सर्व्वे व्याधयः स्वजना नृपाः।
योगस्यैते महाविघ्ना व्याधयस्ते न योगिनां * ॥
ब्रह्म-क्षत्रिय-विट्-शूद्रान् रोगार्त्तान् परिपाल्य च।
यत्पुण्यं महदाप्नोति न तत्सर्व्वैर्महामखैः ॥
आकाशस्य यथा नान्तः सुरैरप्युपलभ्यते।
तद्वदारोग्यदानस्य नान्तोवै विद्यते क्वचित् ॥
पुण्येनानेन महता गत्वा शिवपुरं नरः।
मोदते विविधैर्भोगैर्व्विमानैः सर्व्वकामिकैः।
एकविंशत्कुलोपेतः सभृत्यः परिपालितः।
आस्ते शिवपुरे तावद्यावदाभूतसंप्लवं ॥
ततः स्वधर्म्मशेषेण संप्राप्तः प्रयतः सदा।
ज्ञानमुत्पद्यते तस्य रुद्रेभ्यः परिचारकः ॥

* स्वेन योगिनामिति वा पाठः।

firmament, so there is no end (to the merit) of the gift of cure. By this great merit, the man reaching the region of Siva enjoys himself by soaring in a balloon which can go to the various desired directions. With his twenty-one generations upwards and surrounded by his servants, he stays in the Siva's realm so long till deluge does not occur. There, after the lapse of his merit, the devoted servant acquires knowledge from Siva.

Abandoning this world by knowledge, abiding by the prayers to Siva, and casting away this body as a straw, he reaches beyond the limits of sorrow. Being freed from all sorrows, becoming pure, all-knowing and self-sufficient, and absorbed in his ownself, they are called the Liberated. Therefore to mitigate the diseases, the sick should be well nursed; the great sages should especially be attended to even by the sacrifice of one's body or riches. The wise must not irritate the weak patients, and they like the preceptors should be rescued constantly from sins. He who relieves the sick, by taking them under his care, reaches the other bank of this ocean of world.

ज्ञानादिरक्तः संसाराच्छिवध्यानमुपाश्रितः ।
स्वदेहं तृणवत्त्यक्त्वा सर्व्वदुःखान्तमाप्नुयात् ॥
समस्तदुःखनिर्म्मुक्तः युक्तः स्वात्मव्यवस्थितः ।
सर्व्वज्ञः परिपूर्णश्च मुक्त इत्यभिधीयते ॥
तस्माद्रोगापवर्गार्थं रोगार्त्तं समुपाचरेत् ।
विशेषेण तु योगीन्द्रं शरीरेण धनेन च ॥
रोगिणो नोद्विजेत् प्राज्ञो दुर्ब्बलानपि सर्व्वदा ।
तान् पापाद्गुरुवन्नित्यमेवन्धर्म्मः प्रवर्त्तते ॥
योऽनुगृह्णीतमात्मानं मन्यमानो दिने दिने ।
उपसर्पेत रोगार्त्तस्तीर्णस्तेन भवार्णवः ॥

इत्यारोग्यदानं ।

Hemādri's Caturvarga, Cintāmoni, Dāna Khaṇdam. Asiatic Soc. Ed. Ch. XIII. P. 891—95.

After these proofs, the statement of Mr. Ameer Ali that "the Arabs invented chemical pharmacy, and were the founders of those institutions which are now called dispensaries"[1] can not be accepted as correct.

DISPENSARIES.

As regards dispensaries, Suśruta advises the physician to construct his dispensary in a clean locality; and the building should face towards some auspicious direction as the east or the north. He says:—"The medicines should be kept in burnt earthen pots arranged on planks supported by stakes or pins".[2] This is still the method of storing medicines used by the *Kavirājas*. Dallvaṇa explains the passage thus:—"The medicines should be kept in pieces of cloth, earthen pots, wooden pots and Śaṅku (kīlaka)."[3] The former explanation is plausible for it is impossible to imagine how a kīlaka or stake can be a container of medicine, unless it is implied as a point of support for hanging the medicine vials from it.

Dr. Heyne (1814) thus describes the ancient dispensaries of the Hindus: "The place in which medicines are kept should

---

[1] History of the Saracens p. 262, 1899.

[2] प्रीतमृद्भाण्डफलकशङ्कुविन्यस्तभेषजं
प्रशस्तायां दिशि शुचौ भेषजागारमिष्यते ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā. I. xxxvii.

[3] गृहीतौषधसंस्थापनोपायं दर्शयन्नाह:,—प्रीतेति। प्रीत: कर्पटखण्डं, मृदा भाण्डं, मृद्भाण्डं। फलकं पट्टकं इति पुस्तकान्तरे पाठ:, शङ्कु: कीलक:, एतेषु प्रीतादिषु विन्यस्तं धृतं भेषजं यस्मिन् गृहे तत् भेषजागारं भेषजगृहमिष्यते इति सम्बन्ध:। प्रशस्तायां दिशि पूर्व्वस्यामुत्तरस्यां वा, शुचौ देशे अस्मिन् भूमिप्रविभागीयाध्याये, निवन्धेषु व्यत्ययेन न पाठो दृश्यते। अस्माभिस्तु इष्टक्रमरीत्यैव पाठो लिखित इति सर्व्वत्रोपयवसाध्येत्यादि यावन्नवं द्रव्यं पुराणञ्चेति पाठं केचिदाचार्य्या न पठन्ति ॥

Dallvana's Commentary.

be clean, dry, and not accessible to rats, white ants or dust. The drugs ought to be put in nets, or large pots, the mouth of which must be tied over with a piece of cloth, and suspended in a room. Fire, smoke and water must be kept at a distance.

The house in which medicines are stored, should be neither in too high nor too low a situation, and it should not be far distant from places in which medicines may be collected. Its front should face either the south or the north, with a convenient *viranda* before the door of the same side.

The necessary apparatus for mortars, scales, &c., must be kept in a place in the wall that has been consecrated for that purpose by religious ceremonies."

After describing the different classes, and members composing each class, of medicines, Suśruta continues: "The wise physician should collect and classify these medicines, and with them prepare external applications, infusions, oils, ghee, syrups, &c., as required for derangement of a particular humour. The medicines should be carefully preserved in all seasons, in rooms free from smoke, rain, wind and dust. The medicines should be used singly, or in combinations of several medicines of a class, or of an entire group, or of more than one group, according to the nature of the disease, and the extent of derangement of the humours."[1]

---

[1] एभिर्लेपान् कषायांश्च तैलं सर्पींषि पानकान्।
प्रविभज्य यथान्यायं कुर्व्वीत मतिमान् भिषक्॥
धूमवर्षानिलक्लेदैः सर्व्वर्त्तुष्वनभिद्रुते।
गाढयित्वा गृहे न्यस्येद्विधिनौषधसंग्रहं॥
समीक्ष्य दोषभेदांश्च गणान् भिन्नान् प्रयोजयेत्।
पृथग्भिन्नाण् समस्तान् वा गणं वा व्यस्तसंहतं॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā I. xxxviii.

ANÆSTHETICS.

In the medical text books of the Hindus, there is no mention of a general anæsthetic, from which we can infer that it was unknown in those ancient days. There are, however, many indications to show that the earlier surgeons felt the necessity of such an agent to produce insensibility to pain. Both Caraka and Suśruta mention the use of wine to produce the desired effect. Caraka says: "After extraction of a dead fætus before the full term of pregnancy, wine should be prescribed to her, for that will improve the condition of her uterus, make her happy and alleviate the pain of the operation."[1] Suśruta, however, distinctly lays down that "wine should be used before operation to produce insensibility to pain." He again remarks: "It is desirable that the patient should be fed before being operated on. Those who are addicted to drink and those who cannot bear pain, should be made to drink some strong beverage. The patient, who has been fed, does not faint, and he who is rendered intoxicated, does not feel the pain of the operation."[2]

The use of certain drugs to produce anæsthetic effects was well known to the ancient Greeks and Romans. Dioscorides

---

[1] व्यपगतगर्भशल्यान्तु स्त्रियमामगर्भां सुराशीध्वनरिष्टमधुमदिरासवानामन्यतममद्ये सात्म्यतः पाययेत गर्भकोष्ठविशुद्ध्यर्थमग्निविस्मरणार्थं प्रहर्षणार्थञ्च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, IV, viii.

[2] प्राक्शस्त्रकर्म्मणश्चेष्टं भोजयेदातुरं भिषक् ।
मद्यपं पाययेन्मद्यं तीक्ष्णं योऽवेदनासहः ॥
न मूर्च्छत्यन्नसंयोगान्मत्तः शस्त्रं न बुध्यते ।
तस्मादवश्यं भोक्तव्यं रोगिणूत्तेषु कर्म्मसु ॥
प्राणो ह्याभ्यन्तरो नृणां बाह्यप्राणगुणान्वितः ।
धारयत्यविरोधेन शरीरं पाञ्चभौतिकं ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I, xvii.

mentions Mandragora (Mandragora Atropa) to have been employed internally as a hypnotic and anæsthetic. Pliny (32-79 A.D.) in his Natural History mentions that this anæsthetic was also used by inhalation; and this fact is corroborated by Galen, Arætæus, Celsus and others. The Arabian physicians also used it. The Chinese surgeons still use some powder (Indian hemp probably) to throw their patients into profound sleep. In the 13th century Theodoric (died 1298) described the "spongio somnifera" the vapours raised from which were capable, when inhaled, of setting patients into an anæsthetic sleep, thus inducing insensibility to the agony and torture of a surgeon's knife. Baptista also mentions his "Pomum somniferum", to be made with mandragora, opium, &c. The Hindus also inhaled the fumes of burning Indian hemp as an anaesthetic at a period of great antiquity. As early as 927, A. D., they also knew drugs which they employed for the same purpose, for Paṇḍit Vallāla, in his Bhoja Prabandha, alludes to a cranial operation performed on the King Bhoja after he was rendered insensible by some drug called Sammohinī (producer of unconsciousness). Another drug is also mentioned, Sañjībanī (restorer to life), by which he soon regained consciousness after the operation had been finished.[1]

---

[1] ततस्तावपि राजानं मोहचूर्णेन मोहयित्वा शिरःकपालमादाय तत्करीटिकापुटे स्थितं शफरकुलं गृहीत्वा कस्मिंश्चिद्राजनि निक्षिप्य सन्धानकरणया कपालं यथावदारचय्य सञ्जीवनाा च तं जीवयित्वा तस्मै तद्दर्शयताम्।

Bhoja Prabandha (Jibānanda's Edn.), P. 98.

CHAPTER III.

MATERIALS OF INSTRUMENTS.

Iron and Steel.

In the Ṛgveda, *ayas*, (Latin aes), next to gold, is the metal most often referred to. *Ayas* often stands as a generic name to mean simply "metal," though in later works it signifies iron as a rule. The mention of dark and red *ayas* in the Atharva-veda indicates a distinction between iron and copper or bronze. The surgical instruments of the Hindus are recommended generally to be made of iron; but Suśruta allows other suitable material when iron of good quality is not available.[1] He says: "A wise surgeon should get the instruments made of pure iron and with sharp edges by an expert blacksmith who is skilful and experienced in his craft."[2] The use of impure iron as a material for surgical instruments, he deprecates as a defect and advises the surgeons not to rely on such instruments.

The Hindus were acquainted with steel and they knew how to turn out steel of fine quality from a pure iron ore. Nāgārjuna, the well known Buddhist chemist, wrote a scientific

---

[1] तानि प्रायशो लौहानि भवन्ति तत्प्रतिरूपकाणि वा तदलाभे।

Suśruta Saṁhitā. I. vii.

[2] शस्त्राण्येतानि मतिमान् यत्नेनैकायसानि तु।
कारयेत् करणैः प्राप्तं कर्मारं कर्मकोविदं॥

Ibid, I. viii.

treatise on steel and iron.[1] Śibodāsa in his commentary on Chakrapāṇi quotes Patañjali as an authority on the subject.[2] In the Dhanurveda, Vīracintāmaṇi, Śārañgadharapaddhati and Lohārnava, steel as a material of sword has been described and classified.

Dr. Mitra quotes some references[3] about the knowledge of iron possessed by the ancient Hindus from the Ṛgvida. He finds that "swords (II. 156), spears (IV. 25), javelins (II. 292), lances (I. 774), (IV. II. 288) and hatchets (I. 120) are frequently mentioned; and these weapons were bright as "gold" or golden (IV. 19), "shining bright" (I. 175), "blazing" (IV. 93), "sharp" (IV. 113) and "made of iron" (I. 226); they are "whetted on a grind stone" (II. 36) to improve their keenness (I. 150), and "polished to enhance their brightness" (II. 326)....."According to Nearchus, King Porus gave 30 lbs of steel to Alexander as the most precious present he could offer."

Royle also remarks[4]: "Working in metals they have long been famous for: their steel acquired so great celebrity at an

---

[1] नागार्ज्जुनो मुनीन्द्र श्शास यल्लोहशास्त्रमतिगहनम्।
तस्यार्थस्य श्रुतये वयमेतद्विशदाचरैर्ब्रूमः॥

Cakradatta, Rasāyanādhikāra.

[2] अर्चयित्वा विधानेन हेरम्बं गुरुभास्करौ।
लोकपालान् यहांश्चैव क्षेत्रपालानथौषधम्।
आदित्यदेवताश्चेद्या धन्वन्तरी-पतञ्जली
दद्याद्बलिञ्च सर्व्वेभ्यो नानामन्त्रोपचारतः॥

Quoted in Śibodas's commentary on Louhamārana-Vidhi in Cakradatta.

[3] Dr. R. L. Mitra's Indo-Aryans, Vol. 1, P. 301. See Wilson's Ṛgveda.

[4] Royle's Antiquity of Hindoo Medicine, Pp. 46-7.

early period, as to have passed into a proverb among the Persians, where *fouladee hind* indicates steel of the best quality; and *juwabee hind*, an Indian answer, means a cut with a sword made of Indian steel."

Copper.

Pure copper was also used as a material of instruments; and vessels and instruments of copper are frequently mentioned in the medical books of the Hindus. A copper probe for applying antimony to the eye has been found in the excavations of Bijnor and another in the Bihat excavations. Cakradatta[1] advises us to use a copper probe for the application of *lekhana* collyrium; and sušruta mentions a copper needle in the operation for reclination of cataract.[2]

Tin.

Tin was also used as a material of blunt instruments. Sušruta mentions plates of tin to surround a tumour and to protect the healthy parts, before the application of actual cautery.[3] Such plates are recommended to be made of tin, or lead, or copper, or iron.

Lead.

Tubes of lead were used for purpose of fumigation. Probes made of lead were used for application of collyrium. The use

---

[1] प्रशस्ता लेखने ताम्री रोपने कललौहजा।

Cakradatta, Añjanadhikāra.

[2] तामायसी शातकौम्भी शलाका स्यादनिन्दिता।

Sušruta Saṁhitā, VI. xvii.

[3] अल्पावशिष्टे क्रमिभिः कृते च लिखेत्ततोऽग्निं विदधीत पश्चात्।
यदल्पमूलं त्रपुताम्रसीस पट्टैः समावेष्य तदायसैर्वा।
चाराग्निशस्त्राण्य सकृद्विदध्यात् प्राणापहिंसनं भिषगप्रमत्तः॥

Sušruta Saṁhitā, IV. xviii.

of lead plates to sorround tumours before application of actual cautery has been noted above.

Bell-metal.

The use of bell-metal—an amalgam of zinc or tin and copper, 25 parts of the former with 75 parts of the latter,—as a material of probes for applying collyrium, is mentioned by Suśruta.[1]

Gold and Silver.

Gold was known to the Hindus from the remote antiquity; and among the metals, it is the one most frequently[2] mentioned in the Ṛgveda. Silver was perhaps unknown during the earlier Vedic age, from its name being not mentioned in the Ṛgveda. But no conclusion can safely be drawn from this argument[3]. We find, however, gold, silver, and other precious

---

[1] सौवर्णं राजतं शाङ्खनाभं वैदूर्यकांस्यजं
आयसानि च यौज्यानि शलाकाश्च यथाक्रमं ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xviii.

[2] "निष्क ग्रीव"

Ṛgveda. 5 Mandala. 19 Sūkta.

"निष्केन सुवर्णेन अलङ्कृता ग्रीवा"।

Sāyana.

अश्वः न हैम्यावान्।

Ibid. 4 Mandala. 2 Sūkta.

"सुवर्णं निर्म्मित कक्ष्यावान् अश्वः"।

Sāyana.

"A horse with golden caparisons"—Wilson.

[3] "एनीं रयिं"।

Ṛgveda. 5 Mandala. 33 Sūkta.

एनवर्णां श्वेतवर्णां रयिं धनं।

Sāyana.

"Query, if silver money be intended"—Wilson.

stones mentioned as materials of instruments in the medical books. Gold and silver vessels and plates are often described in Sanskrit literature.[1] Suśruta mentions the use of drinking cups made of gold, silver and precious stones.[2]

Caraka, amongst other things necessary for a lying-in-room, mentions two needles of gold and silver.[3] To cut the navel-cord of the new-born child, he recommends a knife made of gold, or silver, or iron.[4] In the Manusaṁhitā[5] we find: "Before the section of the navel string, a ceremony is ordained on the birth of a male; he must be made while sacred texts are pronounced, to taste a little honey and clarified butter from a golden spoon."[6] A golden needle is mentioned by

---

[1] सुवर्णरूप्यशङ्खाश्म शुक्ति रत्न मयानि च।
कांस्याय स्ताम्र शैलानि एषसीस मयानि च।
निर्लेपानि विशुद्ध्यन्ति केवलेन जलेन तु॥

इति वाचे।

[2] सौवर्णे राजते ताम्रे कांसे मणिमये तथा
पुष्पावतंस भौमे वा सुगन्धि सलिलं पिबेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xlv.

[3] * * * तीक्ष्णौ सूचीपिप्पलकौ सौवर्णराजतौ द्वे शस्त्राणि च तीक्ष्णायसानि।

Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

[4] नाभिबन्धनात् प्रभृति छित्वाष्टाङ्गुलमभिज्ञानं कृत्वा च्छेदनावकाशस्य द्वयोर्नाडयोः अन्तरं ज्ञात्वा तीक्ष्णेन रौक्मराजतायसानां छेदनानामन्यतमेनोर्द्ध्वधारेण छेदयेत्॥

Ibid.

[5] प्राङ् नाभिवर्धनात्पुंसो जातकर्म्म विधीयते।
मन्त्रवत्प्राशनं चास्य हिरण्यमधुसर्पिषाम्॥

Manusaṁhitā, II. 29.

[6] Manusaṁhitā (ch. II. V. 29. Jones's trans.)

Suśruta for pricking the bulb of Soma plant to extract its juice.[1] To cure trichiasis, Cackradatta mentions a needle cautery of gold.[2] For destroying the hair follicles, he advises us to pass the hot needle into them as soon as the eyelashes are removed by epilation. In the Yogaratnākara, is mentioned a cautery of gold, to burn the fistuious track round the anus.[3] Śārṅgadhara mentions silver or coral pots for keeping medicated snuffs,[4] and gold and silver tubs for immersing patients in medicated lotions.[5]

Horn.

Horns of animals are mentioned as suction-apparatus. For

---

1 * * * * * सोमकन्दं सुवर्णमूच्यादिविदार्य्य पयोग्रहीयात् सौवर्णे पात्रेऽञ्जलिमात्रं * * * *

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxix.

2 प्रहृद्धान्तर्म्मुखं रोम सङ्घिणीरुद्धरच्छनैः ।
सन्दंशेनोद्धरेद्धृष्ट्वां पक्ष्मरोमाणि बुद्धिमान् ।
दहन्नपि दहेत् पक्ष्म तप्तहैमशलाकया ।
पक्ष्मरोगे पुननैवं कदाचिद्रोमसम्भवः ॥

Cakradatta. Netraroga Cikitsā.

3 अपानमार्गपिटिकां दहेत् स्वर्णशलाकया ।
अग्निप्रतप्तया पश्चात् कुर्य्यादग्निव्रणक्रियाम् ॥

Yogaratnākara, p. 347.
(Anandāsram Series).

4 कोष्णमच्छिन्नधारञ्च हैमतारादिशुक्तिभिः ।
युक्त्या वा पात्रे युक्त्या वा प्रातर्ध्वा नस्यमाचरेत् ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. viii.

5 सौवर्णं राजतं वापि ताम्रमायसमेव वा दारुजं ।
कोष्ठकं तत्र कुर्व्वीतोच्चायै षट्चिंशदङ्गुलं ॥

Ibid, III. ii.

this purpose, the horn of a cow is recommended.[1] A probe made of horn is advised to be used for applying collyrium. Suśruta mentions goat's horn to be used as a container of medicine.[2] He also recommends for this purpose vessels manufactured out of horn.[3] Similarly Caraka advises us to keep medicines in the lamb's horn.[4] Tubes of Vasti-yantra (clysters) are often described to be made of horn.[5]

Bone and Ivory.

Vāgbhaṭa II describes the aṅguli-trāṇaka or finger-guard to be made either of wood or ivory.[6]

---

[1] "चुषणे", विष पूयादा चूषण निमित्तं शरीरेषु युज्यते यत्, "शृङ्ग" गवादि भवं शुषिरं शृङ्ग * * * * *

Vāgbhatārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[2] चुर्णाञ्जनं कारयित्वा भाजने मेषशृङ्गजे ॥
संस्थाप्योभयतः कालमञ्जयेत् सततं बुधः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xv.

वंशे वा माहिषे शृङ्गे स्थापयेत् शोधितं रसम् ।

Rasendra Cintāmaṇi. IX.

[3] एतच्चूर्णाञ्जनं श्रेष्ठं निहितं भाजने शुभे ।
दन्तस्फटिकवैदूर्य्य शङ्खशैलासनोद्भवे ।
शातकुम्भेऽथ शार्ङ्गे वा राजते वा सुसंस्कृते ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xix.

[4] सिद्धः शैलासने भाण्डे मेषशृङ्गे च संस्थितः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxvi.

[5] विमुद्रासं विखण्डाञ्च धातुजां काष्ठजां तथा ।
षड़ङ्गुलीस्यां गोपुच्छां नाड़ीं युञ्जात् द्विहस्तिकां ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. ii.

[6] अङ्गुलि त्राणकं दान्तं वार्द्धं वा चतुराङ्गुलं ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya. I. XXV.

Wood.

To apply vapour-bath, Śārṅgadhara mentions tubes made of wood or metal.[1] Wooden Tubes for injections were also used.[2]

Stone.

Śārṅgadhara says: "The collyrium probes should be made either of stone or metal".[3] For compounding medicines, stone *khal* or mortar and pestles are mentioned. A big stone slab with a muller is recommended to be used for grinding dry or fresh vegetable medicines. In extracting the Soma juice, two slabs of stone are mentioned in the Ṛgveda.[4]

Execution.

The execution of the instruments is said to have been all that can be desired. Suśruta says[5]: "They should be made just of the proper size with their ends rough or polished; they should be also strong, well-shaped and capable of a firm grasp." Again he continues: "When an instrument (has been selected) of

---

[1] नेत्राणि धातुजान्याहुर्नल वंशादिजान्यपि ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. ix.

[2] नेत्रं कार्यं सुवर्णादिधातुभिश्चत्वेरुभिः ।
नलैरिक्षुविषाणाद्यैः मणिभिर्वा विधीयते ॥

Ibid, III. v.

[3] मुखयोः कुण्ठिता श्लक्ष्णा शलाकाष्टाङ्गुलोन्मिता ।
अश्मजा धातुजा वा स्यात् कलायपरिमण्डला ॥

Ibid, III. xiii.

[4] Ṛgveda. 10 Mandala, 76, 94 & 175 Sūktas.

[5] समाहितानि यन्त्राणि खरश्लक्ष्णमुखानि च ।
सुदृढानि सुरूपाणि सुग्रहाणि च कारयेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

a fine make and with an edge keen enough to divide the hairs on the skin, and when it has been firmly grasped at the proper place, only then it should be used in any surgical operation"[1]. And again: "A wise surgeon will get his instruments made of good iron and with sharp edges, by a blacksmith who is skilful and experienced in his craft."[2] Vāgbhaṭa also gives the same directions.[3]

Ornamentation.

In the absence of actual specimen, it is impossible to say whether there was any ornamentation on the surgical instruments of the Hindus. No ornamentation is described in the extant medical treatises. Only one instrument—Mucutī—is mentioned by Vāgbhaṭa II as being ornamented with a ring.[4]

Edges of Sharp Instruments.

Suśruta says[5]: "The edges of instruments, used in incising

---

[1] यदा सुनिश्चितं शस्त्रं रोमच्छेदि सुसंस्थितं ।
सुग्रहीतं प्रमाणेन तदा कर्म्मसु योजयेत् ॥
Ibid, I. viii.

[2] See foot-note 2, P. 61.

[3] षड्विंशतिः सुकर्मारैर्घटितानि यथाविधि ।
शस्त्राणि रोमवाहीनि वाङ्मल्येनाङ्गुलानि षट् ॥
सुरूपाणि सुधाराणि सुग्रहाणि च कारयेत् ।
अकरालानि सुभ्रातसुतीक्ष्णावार्त्ततेऽयसि ॥
समाहितमुखायाणि नीलाम्भोजच्छवीनि च ।
नामानुगतरूपाणि सदा सन्निहितानि च ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[4] सुचुटी सूक्ष्म दन्तर्जुर्मूले रुचकभूषणा ।
Ibid.

[5] तत्र धारा भेदनानां सामुरी । लेखनानामर्द्धसामुरी ।
व्यधनानां विस्रावणानाञ्च कैशिकी । छेदनानामर्द्धकैशिकीति ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

(as of Vṛddhipatra, Nakhaśastra, &c.) should be of the fineness of a masūra (Ervum Lens); of those used in scarifying (as Maṇḍalāgra &c.) of a half a masūra; of those used in puncturing (as Kuṭhārikā) and evacuating (as needles, kuśapatra, &c.) of a hair; and those used in dividing (as Vṛddhipatra), of half a hair". As to the Vaḍiśa or hook and the Dantaśaṅku or tooth-scalers, the former should have a curved end and a fine point, while the latter should have an end shaped like the first leaf of barley."[1]

The Tempering of Sharp Instruments.

Suśruta remarks[2] that "the instruments are tempered in three ways;—by immersing the heated *śastra* in an alkaline solution, or water, or oil. Those tempered in an alkaline solution are used in dividing bones and in excising arrows and other foreign bodies. Those tempered in water are used in incising, dividing or clearing muscles; and those tempered in oil are used in puncturing veins and dividing nerves and tendons."

As the methods of tempering the śastras are the same as those recommended for the arms of war, we quote from Vṛddha Śārṅgadhara (the elder), two methods of tempering arrow-heads and swords. He says[3]: "I shall describe the ways of tempering arrow-heads, by smearing them with a paste of

---

[1] वड़िशो दन्तशङ्कुश्चानताग्रे तीक्ष्णकण्टकप्रथम यवपत्रमुखे।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[2] तेषां पायना त्रिविधा क्षारोदकतैलेषु तत्र क्षारपायितं शरशल्यास्थिच्छेदनेषु। उदकपायितम् मांसच्छेदनभेदनपाटनेषु तैलपायितं सिराव्यधनस्नायुच्छेदनेषु।
Ibid.

[3] फलस्य पायनं वक्ष्ये वनौषधिविलेपनैः।
येन दुर्भेद्यवर्माणि भेदयेत् तरुपर्णवत्॥
Vṛddhya Śāraṅgadhara.

vegetable drugs, which would thus acquire the power of piercing a coat-of-mail as easily as the leaf of a tree."

I.

"Make a paste of Pippalī (Piper Longum), rock-salt and Kuṣṭha (Saussurea Lappa) with cow's urine. These are to be well mixed until the paste becomes cold and yellow. The arrow-heads and other sharp cutting instruments are to be well smeared with that paste and then heated to redness. Then they are to be removed from the furnace and allowed to cool down to a state short of redness and dipped in oil. By this means, the iron acquires special power as a cutting instrument[1]".

II.

"Make a paste of the five kinds of salts,[2] mustard and honey. Let the instrument-maker smear it on the śastras which are then to be heated in a furnace. When the colours resembling those of a peacock's feather are displayed on the śastra, the burning is known to be adequate. The instrument is then dipped in water[3]".

---

[1] पिप्पली सैन्धवं कुष्ठं गोमूत्रेन तु पेषयेत् ।
अतिशीत मनाविद्धं पीतं नष्टं तथौषधम् ॥
अनेन लेपयेच्छस्त्रं लिप्तं चाग्नौ प्रतापयेत् ।
ततो निर्व्वापितं तैले लौहं तच्च विशिष्यते ॥

Vṛddhya Śārṅgadhara.

[2] सौवर्चलं सैन्धवञ्च विड्मौद्भिदमेव च ।
सामुद्रेन सहैतानि पञ्चस्युर्लवणानि च ॥

Vaidyaka.

[3] पञ्चभिर्लवणैः पिष्टं मधुसिक्तैः ससर्षपैः ।
एभिः प्रलेपयेच्छस्त्रं लिप्तं चाग्नौ प्रतापयेत् ॥
शिखिग्रीवानुवर्णाभं तप्तपीतं तथौषधं ।
ततस्तु विमलं तीव्रं पाययेच्छस्त्रमुत्तमम् ॥

Vṛddhya Śārṅgadhara.

III.

The sage Uṣanās or Śukrācāryya thus describes[1] the tempering of swords in the Vṛhat Saṁhitā (Kern's trans. Ch. L.) :—

23. The fluid to imbrue a sword with, according to the precepts of Uśanās, is: blood, if one wishes for a splendid fortune; ghee, if one is desirous to have a virtuous son; water, if one is longing for inexhaustible wealth.

24. An approved mixture to imbrue the sword with, in case of one desirous to attain his object by wicked means, is: milk from a mare, a camel and an elephant. A mixture of fish bile, deer-milk, horse-milk, and goat-milk, blended with toddy, will make the sword fit to cut an elephant's trunk.

25. A sword first rubbed with oil, and then imbrued with an unguent compounded of the milky juice of the Calotropis, goat's horn, ink, dung from doves and mice, and afterwards whetted, is fit for piercing stone.

---

[1] वड़वीष्ट्रकरेणुदुग्धपानं
यदिपानेन समीहतेऽर्थसिद्धिं ।
ऋषभिष्टमृगाश्व वस्तदुग्धैः
करिहस्तच्छिदये सतालगर्भैः ॥
आर्कं पयो हुडु विषाणमसीसमेतं
पारवतास्तु शकृता च युतं प्रलेपः ।
शस्त्रस्य तैलमथितस्य ततोऽस्य पानं
पश्चाच्छितस्य न शिलासु भवेद्विघातः ॥
चारे कदल्या मथितेन युक्ते
दिनीषिते पायितमायसं यत् ।
सम्यक् शितं शास्त्रमनि नेति भङ्गं
न चान्यलोहेष्वपि तस्य कौण्ठ्यम् ॥

Vṛhat Saṁhitā.

26. An instrument imbrued with a stale mixture of potash of plantains with butter milk, and properly whetted, will not get crooked on a stone, nor blunted on other iron instruments.

Good and Bad Qualities of Surgical Instruments.

Suśruta says[1]: "The good points in an instrument are the following: it should have a well-made handle, affording a firm grasp; it should be made of iron of good quality; it should have a fine edge, a pleasant shape and a well-finished point; and it should not be dentated (except the saw)." He gives preference to the Śastras which are of good make and with a fine edge—so fine as to divide the hairs on the skin and whose handles can easily be grasped by the surgeon's hand.

On the other hand, he points out eight defects[2] of sharp instruments: they must not be bent, or blunt, or broken, or jagged, or too thick, or too thin, or too long, or too short. Instruments free from these defects should be used. The Karapatra or saw is the only exception, for being used for sawing bones, it requires a jagged or dentated edge. Vāgbhaṭa also mentions these defects.[3]

---

[1] तानि सुग्रहाणि सुलीढानि सुधारानि सुरूपाणि सुसमाहितमुखायष्यकरालानि चेति शस्त्रसम्पत्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[2] तत्र वक्रं कुण्ठं खण्डं खरधारंमतिस्थूलमत्यल्पमतिदीर्घमतिह्रस्वमित्यष्टौ शस्त्रदोषाः। अतो विपरीतगुणमाददीतान्यत्र करपत्रात्तद्धि खरधारमस्थिच्छेदनार्थं।

Ibid.

[3] कुण्ठ-खण्ड-तनु-स्थूल-ह्रस्व-दीर्घत्व-वक्रताः।
शस्त्राणां खरधारत्वमष्टौ दोषाः प्रकीर्त्तिताः॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxvi.

Suśruta enumerates twelve defects[1] of blunt instruments, viz., it may be too thick, or made of impure metal, or too long, or too short, or incapble of being grasped, or capable of being grasped (unevenly) partially, or bent, or made of too soft material, or of elevated ends, or it may have bent, loose, elevated, and weak pins, or be of weak ends, or of thin sides. These faults refer principally to the *Swastika yantras* or the cruciform instruments.

The Uses of Instruments.

Twenty four different kinds of operations[2] are said to be performed by the blunt instruments (Suśruta), viz.:—

1.	Nirghātana	... Extraction by moving to and fro. *e. g.* śalyanirghātanī.
2.	Pūraṇa ...	... Filling the bladder or eyes with oil.
3.	Bandhana ...	... Bandaging and binding by rope.
4.	Vyūhana ...	... 1. Raising up and incising a part for removing a thorn or 2. bringing together the lips of the wound.
5.	Vartana ...	... Contracting or curling up.

---

[1] तचातिस्थूलमसारमतिदीर्घमतिह्रस्वमयाहिविषमयाहि वक्रं शिथिलमत्युन्नतं मृदुकीलं मृदुमुखं मृदुपाशमिति द्वादश यन्त्रदोषाः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

[2] यन्त्रकर्म्माणितु निर्घातनपूरणबन्धनव्यूहनवर्त्तनचालनविवर्त्तनविवरणपीड़नमार्ग-विश्रीधनविकर्षणाहरणाक्षनीव्रसनविनमनभञ्जनीम्मथनाचूषणैषणदारणसूकरणप्रचालनप्रधमन-प्रमार्ज्जनानि चतुस्त्रिंशतिः ।

Ibid.

6.	Cālana ...	... 1. transferring, i.e., removing from one part to another; 2. moving a foreign body.
7.	Vivartana	... Turning round.
8.	Vivaraṇa	... Exposing or opening out any part.
9.	Piḍana ...	... Pressing as by finger to let out pus from an abcess.
10.	Mārga Viśodhana	.. Clearing the canals such as the urethra, rectum &c.
11.	Vikarṣaṇa	... 1. Extraction by pulling; or 2. loosening a foreign body fixed in muscles &c.
12.	Āharaṇa ...	... Pulling out.
13.	Āñcana ...	... Pulling up.
14.	Unnamana	... Elevating or setting upright as the depressed cranial bones or ears.
15.	Vinamana	... Depression as of the elevated ends of the fractured bone.
16.	Bhañjana	... 1. Rubbing the head, ears &c.; 2. contusing a part all round before it is surgically operated on.
17.	Unmathana	... Probing or stirring the track formed by an impacted foreign body.
18.	Ācuṣaṇa	... Suction as of poisoned blood and milk by horns, or gourd, or mouth.

19.	Eṣaṇa ...	... Exploring as by an earth-worm shaped probe, the direction of a sinus or the existence of a foreign body in the wound.
20.	Dāraṇa ...	... Splitting or dividing as the head, ears &c.
21.	Ṛjukaraṇa	... Straightening anything which is bent.
22.	Prakṣālana	... Washing as a wound with water.
23.	Pradhamana	... Blowing as powders into the nose through tubes.
24.	Pramārjana	... Rubbing out as foreign bodies from the eyes &c.

Vāgbhaṭa recognises only fifteen different kinds[1] of operations performed by the blunt instruments: Nirghātana (moving to and fro), Unmathana (probing), Pūraṇa (filling up), Mārga Śuddhi (clearing passages), Saṁvyūhana (raising up and extracting a thorn by incision), Āharaṇa (pulling out), Bandhana (bandaging), Pīḍana (pressing), Ācūṣaṇa (suction), Unnamana (elevation), Nāmana (depression), Cāla (movement), Bhaṅga (breaking), Vyāvartana (turning round); and Ṛjukaraṇa (straightening).

---

[1] निर्घातनोन्मथन पूरण मार्गशुद्धि
संव्यूहनाहरण बन्धन पीड़नानि।
आचूषणोन्नमन नामन चाल भङ्ग
व्यावर्त्तनर्जुकरणानि च यन्त्रकर्म्म॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

The śastras or cutting instruments, on the other hand, are said to perform eight kinds of surgical operations (Suśruta).[1]

1. Chedana ... ... Excision or removal of a part of the body by operation as of piles.

   Instruments:—Vṛddhipatra, nakhaśastra, mudrikā, utpalapatra, and arddhadhāra.

2. Bhedana ... ... Incision of a part, as of an abscess.

   Instruments:—The same as above.

3. Lekhana ... ... Scarification or dissection of a skin-flap; or scraping, as of Rohini *i.e.*, surgical diseases of the throat.

   Instruments:—Maṇḍalāgra and karapatra.

4. Vedana or Vyādhana ... Puncturing as of veins to bleed patients by instruments having fine points.

   Instruments:—Kuṭhārikā, vrīhimukha, ārā, vetaspatra, and sūcī.

5. Eṣaṇa ... ... Probing, as of sinus and fistula by a probe.

   Instruments:—Eṣaṇī.

6. Āharaṇa. ... ... Extraction, as of stone by the spoon or hook.

   Instruments:—Vaḍiśa, and danta-śaṅku.

---

[1] तत्र शास्त्रकर्म्माऽष्टविधं। तद्यथा। छेद्यं भेद्यं लेख्यं वेध्यमेष्यमाहार्य्यं विस्राव्यं सीव्यमिति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. v.

7. Viśrāvaṇa ... To let out pus as from a deep-seated abscess.

Instruments :—Sūcī, kuśapatra, ātīmukha, śarārīmukha, antarmukha, trikurccaka, and eṣaṇī.

8. Sīvana ... ... Stitching, as of the lips of a wound by needles.

Instruments :—The different kinds of sūcī or needles.

Caraka mentions, however, six kinds[1] of operations :—

1. Pātana ... ... Incision, as in operation for sinus, abscess, intestinal injury, and deeply impacted foreign bodies.

2. Vyādhana ... Tapping or piercing, as in operations for ascites, suppurating tumour, ovarion tumour, boils &c.

---

[1] पाटनं व्यधनञ्चैव च्छेदनं लेपनं तथा ।
प्रीच्छनं सीवनञ्चैव षड्विधं शस्त्रकर्म्म तत् ॥
नाड़ीव्रणाः पक्वशोथास्तथा चतगुदोदरम् ।
अन्तःशल्याश्च ये देशाः पाट्यास्ते तद्विधाश्च ये ॥
दकोदराणि संपक्वा गुल्माः ये ये च रक्तजाः ।
व्यध्याः शोणितरोगाश्च वीसर्पपिड़कादयः ॥
उद्वृत्तान् स्थूलपर्य्यन्तानुत्सन्नान् कठिनान् व्रणान् ।
अर्शःप्रभृत्यधीमांसं छेदनेनोपपादयेत् ॥
किलासानि सुकुष्ठानि लिखेल्लेख्यानि बुद्धिमान् ॥
वातासृग्ग्रन्थिपिड़काः सकीला रक्तमण्डलाः ।
कुष्ठान्यभिहितञ्चाङ्गं शोथांश्च प्रच्छयेद्भिषक् ॥
सीव्यं कुक्ष्युदरान्त्रं गम्भीरं यद्विपाटितं ।
इति षड्विधमुद्दिष्टं शस्त्रकर्म्म मनीषिभिः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xiii.

3.	Chedana ...	...	Excision, as in the operation for tumours, raised and thickened *vraṇo* or corns, and piles.
4.	Lekhana ...	...	Scraping, as in operation for some varieties of skin diseases.
5.	Pracchana	...	Scarifying, as in the operations for glands, boils, leprous nodules, inflammatory swellings, &c.
6.	Sībana ...	...	Sewing, as in the operation of laparotomy for deep seated diseases in the abdomen.

Vāgbhaṭa describes thirteen kinds[1] of operations performed by the sharp instruments :—

1.	Utpātana	...	Raising up by incision, as by the Nakhaśastra.
2.	Pātana	...	Incision as by the Vṛddhipatra.
3.	Sīvana	...	Stitching as by the Sūcī.
4.	Eṣaṇa	...	Probing as by the Eṣaṇī.
5.	Lekhana	...	Scraping as by the Maṇdalāgra.
6.	Pracchana	...	Scarification as by the Maṇdalāgra.
7.	Kuṭṭana	...	Pricking as by the Sūcī in tattooing.
8.	Chedana	...	Excision as by the Vṛddhipatra.

[1] उत्पाट्य पाट्य सीव्येष्य-लेख्य-प्रच्छन्न कुट्टनम् ।
छेद्यं भेद्यं व्यधो मन्थो यद्दो दाह्य तत्क्रियाः ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxvi.

9.	Bhedana	...	Piercing as by the Sharp Eṣaṇī.
10.	Vyadhana	...	Tapping as by the Vetasapatra.
11.	Manthana	...	Churning as by the Khaja.
12.	Grahaṇa	...	Fixing as by the Sandaṁśa.
13.	Dahana	...	Burning as by the rods.

Whetstone.

In the Ṛgveda we find the use of stones mentioned for whetting the edges of the arms of war.[1] The Hindu surgeons used a stone slab for sharpening the śastras or edged instruments.[2] It was of the colour of māṣa (Phaseolus Roxb.). The whetstones used by the Greeks and Romans were either the marble ointment slabs, or made of clay slate or sandy schistaceous shale.

Instrument Cases.

To preserve the edges of the cutting instruments, a case made of the wood of śalmālī (Bombax Malabaricum) was used (Suśruta).[3] Such cases were also manufactured of canvas, or wool, or silk, or leather. These cases—twelve *aṅguli* (*i.e*, fingers' breadth) long and nine *aṅguli* broad—were well sewn and

---

[1] See Ṛgveda, Mandala. 2 Sūkta. 39 Verse 7.
,, 9 ,, 90 ,, 1.
,, 9 ,, 112 ,, 2.
,, 10 ,, 53 ,, 9.
,, 19 ,, 101 ,, 2.

[2] तेषां निशानार्थं श्वभ्रशिला माषवर्णा।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[3] धारसंस्थापनार्थं शाल्मली फलकमिति।

Ibid.

consisted of compartments, lined with wool and seperated by partitions for each instrument. They could be folded, closed with a rod and firmly tied by a knot.[1] The barbers of India still use similar cases for their instruments.

That the razor used to be kept in a case, we know from a passage in the Vṛhadāraṇyaka (800 to 500 B. C.) where the author says "It (the Atman) is here all-pervading down to the tips of the nail. One does not see it any more than a razor hidden in its case or fire in its receptacle".[2]

---

[1] स्याद्नवाङ्गुलि विस्तार: सुघनो द्वादशाङ्गुल:।
चौम पट्टीर्ण कौषेय दुकूल मृदु चर्म्मज:॥
विन्यस्त पाश: सुस्यूत: सान्त रौर्णास्य शस्त्रक:।
शलाका पिहितास्य च शस्त्रकोष: सुसञ्चय:॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxvi.

अथ शस्त्राणां सुरचनार्थं शस्त्रकोष माह स्यादित्यादि। नवाङ्गुलिविस्तार: नवाङ्गुल परिमानविस्तारविशिष्ट: शस्त्रकोष: स्यात्। शस्त्रस्य कोष: शस्त्रकोष:। कोष चाप् इति लोके। यथा असिकोष इत्यादि। तथा सुष्ठु, घनो, निविड़: सुघन: तथा द्वादशाङ्गुल: दैर्घ्येण द्वादशाङ्गुल परिमान:, तथा चौमादिज:। तथा विन्यस्त: यथा क्रमेण क्रत: पाशो यस्य स विन्यस्तपाश:। तथा सुष्ठु, स्यूत: क्रत सेवन:, सुस्यूत: तथा सान्तराणि सव्यवधानानि, ऊर्णास्थानि मेषादिलोममध्येस्थितानि, शस्त्रानि यस्मिन् स सान्तरौर्णास्थशस्त्रक:। तथा शलाकया: पिहितं स्थगितं आस्यं मुखं यस्य स शलाकापिहितास्य तथा सुष्ठु सञ्चयो, नापित भाण्डिकवद्ग्राहीकरणं यस्य स सुसञ्चय:। चौमं अतसीसूत्रभववस्त्रं कैन्विस् ख्यात:। दुकूलशब्द: पट्टादिभि: स्त्रिभि: सम्बध्यते। तेन पट्टदुकूलं पाट् इति ख्यातेन सूत्रेन निर्म्मितं वस्त्रं ऊर्ना, मेषादिलोम तद्भवं वस्त्रं और्ण दुकूलंवनात् इत्याख्य वस्त्रादि। कौषेयदुकूलं कीषकार-कीटभव सूत्रेण रेशम् इति ख्यातेन निर्म्मितं वस्त्रं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudi.

[2] Vṛhadāraṇyaka, I. iv.

Macdonell's Sanskrit Literature, p. 22.

To prove that portable cases for medicaments and instruments were in use in ancient India, we quote *in toto* from the Mohāvāgga some references to them.[1]

Boxes for Ointments, Ointment Pots, and Portable Cases.

Now at that time, the Bhikkhus used to put pulverised ointments into pots and saucers. They became sprinkled over with herb-powder and dust.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a box for ointment".

Now at that time the K*h*abbaggiya Bhikkhus used to carry about various kinds of boxes for ointments—gold ones and silver ones. People were annoyed, murmured and became angry, saying, "Like those who still live in the world."

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"Various kinds of boxes for ointments, gold ones, and silver ones, are not, O Bhikkhus, to be used. Whosoever does so, is guilty of a dukka*ta* offence. I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of such boxes made of bone, or ivory, or horn, or of the na*la* reed, or of bambu, or of wood, or of lac, or of the shells of fruit, or of bronze, or of the centre of the chank-shell (Sankhu-navi)."

2. Now at that time the boxes of ointment had no lid. (The ointment) was sprinkled over with herb-powder and dust.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

---

[1] Mohāvāgga vi. 12. (Sacred Books of the East).

"I allow you, O Bhikkhus, the use of a lid."

The lid used to fall off.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, to fasten the lid with thread and tie it on to the box."

The boxes used to fall.

"I allow you, O Bhikkhus, to sew the boxes on with thread".

3. Now at that time the Bhikkhus used to rub ointment on with their fingers, and the eyes were hurt.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a stick or holder to put the ointment on with".

Now at that time the *Kh*abbaggiya Bhikkhus used to keep various kinds of ointment-sticks—gold ones, and silver ones. People were annoyed, murmured, and became angry, saying, "Like those who still live in the world".

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"Various kinds of ointment-holders, O Bhikkhus, are not to be used. Whosoever does so, is guilty of a dukka*ṭa* offence. I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of ointment-holders of bone, or of ivory, or of horn, or of the na*ḷa* reed, or of bambu, or of wood, or of lac, or of fruit, or of bronze, or of the chank-shell."

4. Now at that time the ointment-sticks used to fall on the ground and become rough.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a case for the ointment-sticks".

Now at that time the Bhikkhus used to carry the ointment-boxes and ointment-sticks about in their hands.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a bag to put the ointment-box in."

They had no shoulder strap.

"I allow you, O Bhikkhus, the use of a shoulder strap (by which to carry the ointment-box), or of a thread (by which to sew or tie it on)."

13.

1. Now at that time the venerable Pilindava*kkha* had head-ache.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a little oil on the head".

(The disease) became no better.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the practice of taking up (medicine) through the nose". (See commentary on the Dhammapada, pp. 83.)

The nose ran.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a nose-spoon" (Natthu-kara*n*î).

Now at that time the *Kh*abbaggiya Bhikkhus had various kinds of nose-spoons—made of gold, and of silver. People were annoyed, murmured, and became angry, saying, "Like those who still live in the world."

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"Various kinds of nose-spoons, O Bhikkhus, are not to be used. Whosoever does so, is guilty of dukkaṭa offence. I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of such nose-spoons made of bone, (&c., as in chap. 12, 1, down to:) the chank-shell.

2. The nose took up the medicament in unequal proportions.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a double nose-spoon (yamaka-natthu-karaṇî)."

They used to spread the drugs on a wick before they sniffed up the aroma: and their throats got burnt.

'I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a pipe to conduct the aroma.'

Now at that time the Khabbaggiya Bhikkhus had various kinds of pipes (&c., as in the last clauses of § 1, down to the end).

Now at that time the aroma-pipes came open: and worms got in.

'I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a lid to the pipes.'

Now at that time the Bhikkhus carried the pipes about in their hands.

'I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a bag to carry the aroma-pipes in'.

The aroma-pipes rubbed against one another.

'I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a double bag.'

They had no shoulder strap.

'I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a shoulder strap (by which to carry the double bag), or of a thread (by which to sew it on).

Operation Table.

In the examination for piles, Suśruta directs the patient to lie down on his bed or on a board[1]; and in describing the operation, Vāgbhaṭa II mentions a board to be used as an operationtable.[2] A similar bed, as long as the distance from the top of the head to the knees of the patient, is also mentioned in the discription of the lithotomy operation.[3] The use of a board as a fracture bed is also advised.

For passing the tubes of the *vasti-yantra* or clysters into the urethra in the male, the patient is recommended to sit on a stool as high as his knees (*jānumātrāsana*).[4]

In phlebotomy, the patient is advised to sit on a stool, an aratni high[5] (*i.e.* the distance between the tip of the olecranon process of the ulna to the tip of the little finger).

---

[1] भुक्तवन्तमुपवेश्य सम्भृते शुचौ देशे साधारणे व्यभे काले समे फलके शय्यायां वा प्रत्यादित्य-मुदमन्यस्योत्सङ्गे निषण्णपूर्वकायमुत्तानं * * * *

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. vi.

[2] शुचिं कृतस्वस्त्ययनं भुक्तविण्मूत्रवमव्यथम्।
शयने फलके वान्यनरोत्सङ्गे व्यापश्रितम्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, VI. viii.

[3] ततो बलवन्तमविक्लवमाजानुसमे फलके प्रागुपवेश्य पुरुषञ्च तस्योत्सङ्गे निषण्णपूर्वकाय-मुत्तानमुन्नतकटीकं।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. vii.

[4] स्नातस्य भुक्तभक्तस्य रसेन पयसापि वा।
सृष्टविण्मूत्रवेगस्य पीठे जानुसमे सदा॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. ix.

[5] तत्र व्यधसिरं पुरुषं प्रत्यादित्यमुखमरत्निमात्रोच्छ्रिते उपवेश्यासने।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. viii.

अग्रितापातपखिन्नो जानूच्चासनसंस्थितः।
मृदुपट्टान्तकैशान्तो जानुस्थापितकर्परः॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxvii.

KAPĀTA-ŚAYANA OR FRACTURE-BED.

In the treatment of fractures of the lower extremities, mention is made of the *kapāta-śayana* (*lit.* door-bed) or fracture-bed, consisting of a plank of wood resembling the panel of a door.[1] The patient is to lie down on it. The board has five rods fixed to it, to which the fractured limb is tied to prevent any movement: two on each side of the joint and one on the plantar surface of the foot. Dallaṇa explains it thus[2]: In fractures of the bones of the leg, two rods are fixed on each side of the ankle and one supports the foot; in fracture of the thigh bone, two rods are fixed on each side of the knee or hip, and one under the foot. In a double fracture of the thigh bone and bones of the

---

[1] अथ जङ्घोरुभग्नानां कपाटशयनं हितं ।
कीलका बन्धनार्थञ्च पञ्च कार्य्या विजानता ।
यथा न चलनं तस्य भग्नस्य क्रियते तथा ।
सन्धेरुभयतो द्वौ द्वौ तले चैकञ्च कीलकः ।
श्रोण्यां वा पृष्ठवंशे वा वक्षस्यूरुकयोस्तथा ।
भग्नसन्धिविमोचेषु विधिमेनं समाचरेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

[2] जङ्घोरुभङ्गेषु पश्चात् कर्म्मविशेषं निर्द्दिशन्नाह । अथ जङ्घेत्यादि । जङ्घोरुभग्न-चिकित्सितमाह । भग्नानाम् काण्डभग्नानाम् । द्विविधानामपीत्यपरे । कपाटशयनमवश्यं कार्य्यम् । चलनम् कपाट शयनेनैव सह देशान्तरनयनार्थम् । आधारभूतशयनचालनार्थ-मित्यन्ये । आधेयभूतशरीरावयवचलन परिहारार्थं कीलाः । कीलानां पञ्चसङ्ख्यात्वम् । जङ्घोर्व्वोर्द्वयोरेकतरस्य भग्नमवेक्ष्य तत्र जङ्घाभग्ने तु गुल्फसन्धेरुभयतो द्वौ एकश्च तले एवं पञ्च । ऊरुभग्ने जानुसन्धेरुभयतो द्वौ द्वौ । वङ्क्षणसन्धेरुभयतस्तले चैक इत्यत्रापि पञ्च । उभयभङ्गा-पेक्षया तु सप्तभिरेव कीलैर्यन्त्रणम् । तथाह उभयतो बहिर्द्वौ गुल्फयोर्द्वौ च जानुनोः द्वौ च वङ्क्षणयोः तले चैक एवं सप्त । अत्र जङ्घोर्व्वोः पार्श्वयोर्व्वौ द्वौ तले चैकश्च कीलक इति केचित् पठन्ति । तन्निबन्धकारैर्न पठितम् । तस्मान्न पठनीयम् । गयदासस्त्वत्र पाठान्तरं किमपि पठति । तच्चाभावान्न लिखितम् ।

Dallaṇa's Commentary, IV. iii.

leg, seven rods are required,—two on the outer side of the ankle, knee, and groin, respectively, and one under the foot. The fracture-bed is recommended to be similarly availed of in fractures and dislocations of the loin, the spinal column, the chest, and the clavicle. And this mode of treatment, he adds, may advantageously be used for the other kinds of fractures and dislocations. Vāgbhaṭa II also mentions it in the treatment of fractures[1].

Hippocrates used a similar fracture-bed for the proper treatment of fractures and dislocations. It was called Scammum Hippocratic or bench of Hippocrates. As the figures of of this bench would elucidate the structure of the *kapāta-śayana*, we reproduce here three plates with their explanations given at the end of Vol. II, Genuine Works of Hippocrates (Syed. Soc.Ed.), and two plates—Scammum Hippocratis and Plinthium Nilcii from the Collection De chirurgiens Grecs.

Fig. 1. The Scammum Hippocratis *or* Bench of Hippocrates, as represented by Andreas a Cruce (*Officina chirrugica venetiis*, 1596).

Fig. 2. The same as represented by M. Littré.

A. A board, 6 cubits long, 2 broad and 12 inches thick ; not 13 as incorrectly stated by M. Littré.

B. The feet of the Axles, which are short.

---

[1] कटी जङ्घोरुभग्नानां कपाटशयनं हितम् ।
यन्त्रणार्थं तथा कीला: पञ्च कार्य्या विवन्धना: ॥
जङ्घोर्वो: पार्श्वयोर्द्वौ द्वौ तल एकश्च कीलक: ।
श्रोण्यां वा पृष्ठवंशे वा वक्षस्याचकयोस्तथा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛidya, VI. xxvii.

CC. Axle-trees.

DD. Grooves 3 inches deep, 3 broad, seperated from one another by 4 inches.

E. A small post *or* pillar, fastened in the middle of the machine in a quadrangular hole.

F. Pillars a foot long.

G. A cross-beam laid on the pillars FF, which can be placed at different heights by means of holes in the pillars.

Fig. 3. Representation of the mode of reducing dislocation of the thigh outwards, as given by M. Littré (Œuv. d'Hipp., tom. iv, p. 305).

A mistake in the figure given by M. Littré is here corrected.

A. A lever applied to the nates of the luxated side, and acting from without inwards, in order to bring the head of the bone into its cavity.

B. Another lever, held by an assistant, put into one of the grooves of the machine, and intended to act against lever A.

C. Grove in which the end of the lever A takes its point of support.

D. The luxated member.

EE. Extension and counter-extension.

Fig. 4. Banc d'Hippocrate, d'après Rufus, servant à réduire différentes luxations. (Collection De Chirurgiens Grecs, Bibliothèque Nationale).

Fig. 5. Plinthium, ou cadre de Nileus, d'après Héliodore. (Ibid).

CHAPTER IV.

The Number of Surgical Instruments.

The armamentarium of the Hindu surgeons consisted of a good number of surgical instruments. They are described to be of two kinds, the *yantras* and the *śastras*, *i.e.*, the blunt and the sharp instruments. Suśruta enumerates no less than one hundred and one varieties of the blunt instruments, and twenty different kinds of sharp instruments. Hārīta, on the other hand, enumerates twelve blunt instruments, twelve sharp instruments, and four prabandhas, as necessary for the operation of extraction of arrows and other foreign bodies.[1] Vāgbhaṭa II mentions one hundred and fifteen kinds of blunt and twenty-six kinds of sharp instruments. Pālakapya (Treatment of Elephants) mentions ten kinds of *śastras* or sharp instruments though he describes the uses of other instruments required for the surgical treatment of diseases.

Instruments and their Classification (Suśruta.)

Of the one hundred and one varieties of the blunt instruments, the surgeon's hand is rightly considered as the principal instrument, for without its help, no instrument can properly be used, and every surgical operation is under its control.[2] They are recommended to be used for the extraction

---

[1] द्वादशैव तु यन्त्राणि शस्त्राणि द्वादशैव तु ।
चत्वारि च प्रबन्धानां शल्योद्धारे विनिर्दिशेत् ॥

[2] यन्त्रशतमेकोत्तरमेव हस्तमेव प्रधानतमं यन्त्राणामवगच्छ । किं कारणं । यस्माद्धस्ताहते यन्त्राणामप्रवृत्तिरेव तदधीनत्वाद्यन्त्रकर्म्मणां ।

तच्च मनःशरीराबाधकराणि शस्त्राणि तेषामाहरणोपायी यन्त्राणि ।

of *śalya* or foreign bodies, *e.g.*, a dart, an arrow, a javelin, a spear, a peg, a pin, a bamboo rod, a stake &c. which cause pain to the body and mind.

A. Suśruta subdivides the blunt instruments into six classes,[1] viz.:

I.	Svastika or cruciform instruments	...	24 kinds.
II.	Sandaṁśa or pincher-like ...	...	2 „
III.	Tāla or picklock-like ...	...	2 „
IV.	Nāḍī or tubular or hollow ...	...	20 „
V.	Śalākā or rod or pricker-like ...	...	28 „
VI.	Upayantra or accessory ...	...	25 „
			101

These instruments are advised to be made generally of iron, or of other suitable materials, when iron is not available. Their ends often resemble the faces of some ferocious beasts, or of deers, or birds. Hence the instruments should be so constructed as to have the likeness of their faces, following at the same time the directions of scientific treatises, or the instructions of teachers, or in imitation of other instruments, or in adaptation to the exigencies of the time. They should be of reasonable

---

[1] तानि षट्प्रकाराणि। तद्यथा। स्वस्तिकयन्त्राणि। सन्दंशयन्त्राणि। तालयन्त्राणि। नाड़ीयन्त्राणि। शलाकायन्त्राणि। उपयन्त्राणिचेति। तत्र चतुर्विंशति स्वस्तिकयन्त्राणि। द्वे सन्दंशयन्त्रे। द्वे एव तालयन्त्रे। विंशतिर्नाड्यः। अष्टविंशतिः शलाकाः। पञ्चविंशति रूपयन्त्राणि।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

Hessler translates the terms as follows: *Uncinata* instrumenta, *forcipum* instrumenta, *palmiformia* instrumenta, *hamata* instrumenta, *secundaria* instrumenta.

Hessler's Suśruta, I. vii.

size, with their ends rough or smooth as required. They should be of strong make, good shape and capable of a firm grasp.[1]

I. The Svastika or Cruciform instruments are—

1. Siṁhamukha. 2. Vyāghramukha. 3. Vṛkamukha. 4. Tarakṣumukha. 5. Ṛkṣamukha. 6. Dvīpimukha. 7. Mārjāramukha. 8. Śṛgālamukha. 9. Airvvārukamukha 10. Kākamukha. 11. Kaṅkamukha. 12. Kuraramukha. 13. Cāsamukha. 14. Bhāsamukha. 15. Śaśaghātīmukha. 16. Ulūkamukha. 17. Cillimukha. 18. Gṛdhramukha. 19. Śyenamukha. 20. Krauñcamukha. 21. Bhṛṅgarājamukha. 22. Añjalikarṇamukha. 23. Avabhañjanamukha, and 24. Nandimukhamukha.

II. The Sandaṁśa or pincher-like instruments are—

1. Forceps with arms.
2. Forceps without arms.

---

[1] तानि प्रायशो लौहानि भवन्ति तत्प्रतिरूपकाणि वा तदलाभे। तत्र नानाप्रकाराणां व्यालानां मृगपक्षिणां मुखेर्मुखानि यन्त्राणां प्रायशः सदृशानि तस्मात्तत्सारूप्यादागमादुपदेशादन्ययन्त्रदर्शनाद्युक्तितश्च कारयेत्।

समाहितानि यन्त्राणि खरऋक्षमुखानि च।
सुदृढानि सुरूपाणि सुग्रहाणि च कारयेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

अनेकरूपकार्थाणि यन्त्राणि विविधान्यतः।
विकल्पा कल्पयेद् बुद्ध्या यथास्थूलन्तु वक्ष्यते॥

* * * * *

अलौहान्यनुशस्त्राणि तान्येवञ्च विकल्पयेत्।
अपराण्यापि यन्त्रादीन्युपयोगञ्च यौगिकम्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

III. The Tāla or picklock-like instruments are—

1. Ekatāla.
2. Dwitāla.

IV. The Nāḍī or tubular instruments are—

For fistula-in-ano ...	(1) with one slit; (2) with 2 slits ...	2
For piles ...	(1) with one slit; (2) with 2 slits ...	2
For wounds ...	... ...	1
For clysters (Rectal) ...	(Some authors describe 3 only) ...	4
For clysters (vaginal and urethral)...	(male and female) ...	3
For Hydrocele ...	... ...	1
For Ascites ...	... ...	1
For fumigation and inhalation	...	... 3
For Urethral Stricture ...	...	... 1
For Rectal ,, ...	...	... 1
For Cupping—gourd ...	...	... 1
		20

V. The Śalākā or rod-shaped instruments are—

Gaṇḍūpadamukha or earth-worm like	...	... 2
Śarapuṅkhamukha or arrow-stem like	...	... 2
Sarpafaṇamukha or snake's hood like	...	... 2
Vaḍiśamukha or fish-hook like	...	... 2
Masūradalamukha or masūra pulse like	...	... 2
Promārjana or swabs ...	...	... 6
Khallamukha or spoons ...	...	... 3
Jāmvavavadana or jambul seed like	...	... 3
Aṅkuśavadana or goad like ...	...	... 3
Kolāsthidalamukha or plum seed like	...	... 1
Mukulāgra or bud shaped ...	...	... 1
Mālatīpuṣpavṛntāgra or like the stem of mālatī flower		1
		28

VI. The Upayantra or accessory instruments are—

1. Rajju—thread. 2. Veṇikā—twine. 3. Paṭṭa—bandages. 4. Carma—leather. 5. Valkala—bark of trees. 6. Latā—creepers. 7. Vastra—cloth. 8. Aṣṭhīlāśma—stone or pebble. 9. Mudgara—hammer. 10. Pāṇipādatala—palm of the hand and sole of the foot. 11. Aṅguli—finger. 12. Jihvā—tongue. 13. Danta—tooth. 14. Nakha—nail. 15. Mukha—mouth. 16. Vāla—hair. 17. Aśvakaṭaka—the ring of a horse's bridle. 18. Śākhā—branch of a tree. 19. Sṭhīvana—spittle. 20. Pravāhaṇa—fluxing the patient. 21. Harṣa—objects exciting happiness. 22. Ayaṣkānta—a loadstone. 23. Kṣāra—caustic. 24. Agni—fire. 25. Bheṣaja—medicines.

B. The sharp instruments or śastras are—

1. Maṇḍalāgra or round headed knife.
2. Karapatra or saw (*lit.* like the human hand).
3. Vṛddhipatra (*lit.* like the leaf of vṛddhi—an unknown medicinal plant)—a razor.
4. Nakha-śastra or nail-parer.
5. Mudrikā or finger-knife (like the last phalanx of the index finger).
6. Utpalapatra, a knife, *i.e.*, resembling the petal of a blue lotus, (Nymphaea stellata., Willd).
7. Arddhadhāra or a single-edged knife.
8. Sūcī—needles.
9. Kuśapatra—a knife shaped like the kuśa grass (Eragostris Cynosuroides).

10. Ātīmukha—a knife shaped like the beak of the Ātī bird (Turdus Ginginianus).

11. Śararī-mukha—a pair of scissors like the beaks of Śararī bird.

12. Antarmukha (*lit.* having internal sharp edge)—a kind of scissors.

13. Trikurccaka—an instrument consisting of three needles.

14. Kuṭhārikā—a small axe shaped instrument.

15. Vrīhimukha—a trocar shaped like a grain of rice.

16. Arā or awl.

17. Vetasa-patraka—an instrument shaped like the leaf of a rattan (Calamus Rotang).

18. Vaḍiśa—an instrument shaped like the fish-hook.

19. Dantaśaṅku or tooth-pick.

20. Eṣani or sharp probe-like instrument.

According to Hārīta[1] the twelve blunt instruments are—

1. Godhāmukha or iguana-faced. 2. Vajramukha—gṛdhra-mukha? 3. Tribaktra or three faced. 4. Sandaṁśa or pincher.

---

[1] गोधामुखं वज्रमुखं त्रिवक्त्रं नाम सन्दंशचक्राकृतिकङ्कपादम्।
अथानकं मण्डककुण्डलञ्च श्रीवत्ससौवत्सिक पञ्चवक्त्रं।
द्वादशैतानि यन्त्राणि कथितानि भिषग्वरैः।
अथ शस्त्राणि प्रोक्तानि नामानि च पृथक् पृथक्।
अर्द्धचन्द्रं व्रीहिमुखम् कङ्कपत्रं कुठारिका।
करवीरकपत्रञ्च शलाकरपवक्त्रम्।
वड़िशं गृध्रपादञ्च शूली च सूचिमुद्गरम्।
शस्त्राण्येतानि प्रोक्तानि शल्योद्धारे पृथक् पृथक्॥

Hārīta Saṁhitā, III. lvi.

5. Cakrākṛti or circular shaped. 6. Anaka ? 7. Kaṅkapāda ? 8. Śṛṅga or horn. 9. Kundala ? 10. Śrībatsa ? 11. Saubatsika ? 12. Pañcabaktram, *i.e.*, five faced—siṁhamukham ?

The twelve sharp instruments of Hārīta are—

1. Arddhacandra or half-moon shaped. 2. Vrīhimukha. 3. Kaṅkapatra. 4. Kuṭhārikā. 5. Karavīrakapatraka. 6. Śalākā or sharp probe. 7. Karapatraka or saw. 8. Vaḍiśa or sharp hook. 9. Gṛdhrapāda ? 10. Śūlī 11. Sūcī or needle. 12. Mudgara or hammer ?

Vāgbhaṭa II classifies the instruments in the following way :-

A. Blunt instruments—

I. Svastika, as heron, lion, bear, crow, deer forceps &c.	...	...	24
II. Sandaṁśa : It consists of two iron blades soldered at one end, the other ends being free	...	...	2
(*a*) for extraction of eyelashes &c.	...	1	
(*b*) mucuṭī	...	1	
III. Tāla ...	...	...	2
(*a*) Ekatāla	...	1	
(*b*) Dwītāla	...	1	
IV. Nāḍī or tubular :	...	...	23
(*a*) Kaṇṭhaśalyāvalokinī or throat speculum having three and five holes	...	2	
(*b*) Śalyanirghātanī	...	1	
(*c*) For piles, different sizes for male and female	...	6	
For inspection : 2 holes—rectal speculum		2	
For medication : 1 hole	...	2	
For applying pressure : entire—śāmī	...	2	

(*d*) For fistula-in-ano: with one and two holes			2
(*e*) For nasal polypus &c.			1
(*f*) Aṅguli-trāṇaka or finger-guard ...			1
(*g*) Joni-vraṇekṣaṇa or vaginal speculum ...			1
(*h*) Vrāṇo vasti or wound syringe ...			1
(*i*) For dakodara or Paracentesis abdominis			1
(*j*) Vastiyantra or clysters: rectal, vaginal and urethral			3
(*k*) For fumigation...			1
(*l*) Cupping instruments: Alābu, Ghaṭīyantra and Horns			3
			23
V. Śalākā or rod-like instruments ...			34
(*a*) Gaṇḍūpadamukha or earth-worm shaped			2
(*b*) Masūradalabaktra			2
(*c*) Śaṅku			9
Faṇībaktra or snake's hood	...	2	
Śarapuṅkamukha ...	...	2	
Vaḍiśa or blunt hook ...	...	2	
Garvaśaṅku or delivery hook	...	1	
Aśmarī or lithotomy hook	...	1	
Śarapuṅkamukha or tooth extractor	...	1	
(*d*) For wiping out discharges	...		6
For rectum	...	2	
For nose	...	2	
For ears (karṇaśodhana) ...	...	2	
(*e*) For application of actual and potential cauteries			11
Jāmvobouṣṭha, three for each	...	6	

	Arddhendu or half-moon shaped, for hernia	1	
	Kolāsthidala for nasal polypus ...	1	
	Nail-shaped	3	
(*f*)	For cleansing		3
	Rectum	1	
	Vagina	1	
	Urethra	1	
(*g*)	Collyrium probe		1
			34

VI. Anuyantra or accessory instruments are nineteen in number. To the list of Suśruta he adds the following[1] :—

Goat's gut, silk, time, suppuration, and fear.

B. The sharp instruments of Vāgbhaṭa are twenty-six in number.[2]

1. Mandalāgra. 2. Vṛddhipatra. 3. Utpalapatra. 4. Adhyarddhadhāra. 5. Sarpāsya. 6. Eṣaṇī:—Gaṇḍūpadamukhā and Sūcīmukhā. 7. Vetasa. 8. Śarārī. 9. Trikurccaka. 10. Kuśapatra 11. Ātīvadana. 12. Antarmukha and Arddhacandrānan. 13. Vrīhibaktra. 14. Kuṭhārī. 15. Kuravakasalā. 16. Aṅgulisastra. 17. Vaḍiśa. 18. Karapatra. 19. Kartarī. 20. Nakhaśastra 21. Dantalekhana. 22. Sūcī. 23. Kurcca. 24. Khaja. 25. Ārā. 26. Karṇavedhanī.

---

[1] अनुयन्त्राण्ययस्कान्त रज्जु वस्त्राऽग्नि मुद्गराः ।
पट्टान्त जिह्वा वालाश्च शाखा नख मुख द्विजाः ॥
काल: पाक: कर: पादीभयं हर्षश्च तत् क्रियाः ।
उपायवित् प्रविभजेदालोच्य निपुणं धिया ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya. I. xxv.

[2] षड्विंशतिः सुकर्मारैर्घटितानि यथाविधि ।
शस्त्राणि रोमवाहीनि वाङ्मात्रेणाङ्गुलानि षट् ॥
सुरूपाणि सुधाराणि सुग्रहाणि च कारयेत् ।
अकरालानि सुभ्रात सुतीक्ष्णावार्त्ततेऽयसि ॥
Ibid. I. xxvi.

Bhāvamiśra mentions the following blunt and sharp instruments: Eṣanī, Jāmvoustha Śalā,[1] Sūcī[2] and knives generally in making incisions which should be shaped like Kharjjūrapatrika, (like the leaf of Kharjjūra tree, Phœnix Sylvestris, Roxb.) Arddhacandra, Candravarga, Sūcīmukha and Abāṅmukha.[3]

Pālakapya[4] mentions ten kinds of śastras :—1. Vṛddhipatra. 2. Kuśapatra. 3. Mandalāgra. 4. Vrīhimukha. 5. Kuṭhārī. 6. Vatsadanta. 7. Utpalapatra. 8. Śalākā. 9. Śūcī or needles. 10. Rampaka. Besides these he refers to Vaḍiśa.

Of the blunt instruments he mentions:—Jāmvobouṣṭha—(four in number, for application of actual cauteries), Siṁhadaṁṣṭrā, Godhāmukha, Kaṅkamukha, Kuliśamukha—(for extraction of foreign bodies), Eṣaṇī or probes (three), wound syringe, Vastiyantra, Śalākā or rods, yaṣṭhiyantra, Karkataka, Dyātūha, Makaraka (crocodile), Śārddūlamuṣṭhika (tiger's claws), Nandimukha (Turdus Ginginianus).

---

[1] एषणी गतिमन्विष्य चारसूत्रानुसारिनीम् ।
सूचीं निदध्यादत्यन्ते प्रीव्राम्याय विनिहरेत् ॥
Bhāva Prakāśa. II. iv., Nāḍī Vraṇādhikāra.

[2] आगन्तुजे भिषग्राड़ीं शस्त्रेणोत्कृत्य यवतः ।
जाम्बोष्ठोनाग्निवर्णेन तप्तया वा शलाकया ॥
Ibid. Bhagandarādhikāra.

[3] गतिमन्विष्य शस्त्रेण छिन्द्यात् खर्ज्जूरपत्रिकम् ।
चन्द्रार्द्धं चन्द्रवर्गञ्च सूचीमुखमवाङ्मुखम् ॥
Ibid.

[4] तत्र शस्त्राणि दशनामसंस्थानानि भवन्ति । तद्यथा ऋद्धिपत्रम्, कुशपत्रम्, मण्डलाग्रम्, व्रीहिमुखम्, कुठाराकृति, वत्सदन्तम्, उत्पलपत्रम्, शलाका, सूची, रम्पकचेति । फालजाम्बवतापिकादर्थाकृतयश्चेति । एतान्याग्निकर्म्मविधाने चत्वारि चान्यानि शल्यहरणानि यथायोगं सिंहदंष्ट्रं गोधामुखं कङ्कमुखं कुलिशमुखं चेति । तिस्र एषण्यः ।
Hastī Āyūrveda, III. xxx.

CHAPTER V.

Description of the Blunt Instruments.

Now we shall describe the instruments in detail. The Yantras or the blunt instruments will be considered first, and next the Śastras or the sharp instruments.

I. The Svastika yantra or Cruciform Instruments.

The word svastika is a technical term signifying one of the twenty-four signs of the Jinas; and it can be represented by two lines crossing each other, the arms of the cross being bent at their extremities towards the same direction. So these instruments may be described as cruciform. They have, as a rule, a length of eighteen aṅguli. Their ends should be shaped like the faces of the following ferocious beasts (1 to 8), dear (9), and birds (10 to 24), and the instruments are to be called after their names.[1] They are divided into two classes; the instruments of class I resemble the mouths of lion (siṁha) and tiger (vyāgra), while class II comprises the instruments which have the likeness of the faces of birds of prey. The fulcrums of these instruments which are at the middle, are of the size of a masūra (Ervum lens). The handles are either rounded off, or bent at an angle at their ends, like an elephant driver's goad—the object being to afford a good grasp of the instrument by the surgeon's hands. The svastika instruments are used for the extraction of

---

[1] तत्र स्वस्तिकयन्त्राण्याष्टदशाङ्गुलप्रमाणानि सिंहव्याघ्रदकतरक्षुऋक्षचर्मीपिमार्जारगृध्रगालॅमृगै र्व्वारुककाककङ्ककुररश्वासभासगृध्रघात्यलूकचिल्लिग्र्येनगृध्रक्रौञ्चभङ्गराजाञ्जलिकर्णावभञ्जननन्दि-मुखमुखानि मसूराकृतिभिः कीलैरवबद्धानि मूलेऽङ्कुशवदाहत्तवारङ्गाण्याश्रयविनष्टशल्योद्धार-णार्थमुपदिश्यन्ते ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

foreign bodies impacted in the bones.[1] If the foreign body is visible, extract it by the lion forceps or similar forceps of class I. If it is invisible, it should be extracted by the Heron forceps or similar forceps of class II. Of all the varieties of svastika instruments, the Heron forceps (kaṅka-mukha) is the best, for it can be easily introduced and turned in all directions, and also it grasps firmly and extracts a foreign body with ease and can be applied without any harm to all parts of the body.[2]

Class I :—

1. Siṁhamukha svastika or Lion-faced forceps :—this instrument is said to have its mouth shaped like that of a lion (Felis leo). It is the principle instrument of the class I. It is

---

[1] तुल्यानि कङ्कसिंहर्क्षकाकादिमुखपक्षिणां ।
मुखैर्मुखानि यन्त्राणां कुर्य्यात्तत् संज्ञकानि च ॥
अष्टादशाङ्गुलयामान्यायसानि च भूरिशः ।
मसूराकारपर्य्यन्तैः कण्ठेबद्धानि कीलकैः ॥
विद्यात् स्वस्तिक यन्त्राणि मूलेऽङ्कुशनतानि च ।
ते दृढैरश्मिसंलग्न शल्याहरणमिष्यते ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya. I. xxv.

[2] दृश्यं सिंहमुखाद्यैस्तु गूढं कङ्कमुखादिभिः ।
निर्हरेत्तु शनैः शल्यं शास्त्रयुक्तिव्यपेक्षया ॥
विवर्त्तते साध्ववगाहते च शल्यं निगृह्योद्धरते च यस्मात् ।
यन्त्रेष्वतः कङ्कमुखम् प्रधानं स्थानेषु सर्व्वेष्वधिकारि चैव ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā I. vii.

निवर्त्तते साध्ववगाहते च
शास्त्रं गृहीत्वोद्धरते च यस्मात् ।
यन्त्रेष्वतः कङ्कमुखं प्रधानं
स्थानेषु सर्वेष्वधिकारि यच्च ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya. I. xxv.

curious that in modern times, the European surgeons use a pair of forceps called the Lion foreceps for holding bones firmly during operations. So the Makaramukha of Pālakapya is the Crocodile forceps.

2. Vyāghramukha or Tiger forceps: the mouth of this instrument is like that of a tiger (Tigris regalis).

3. Vṛkamukha or Wolf forceps (Canis lupus).

4. Tarakṣumukha or Hyena forceps (Hyena striata).

5. Ṛkṣamukha or Bear forceps (Ursus Americanas).

6. Dwīpimukha or Panther forceps (Felis pardus).

7. Mārjāramukha or Cat forceps (Felis domestica).

8. Śṛgālamukha or Jackal forceps (Canis aureas).

9. Airbbāruka or Deer forceps (Cervus elephas).

Class II:—The birds, in imitation of whose faces the instruments of this class are made, can be identified from the following discription of their beaks :—

Birds: 1. Raptatories : they have curved beaks hooked at the extremity.

(*a*) Strigidæ...owls...strong hooked beaks bent down from base.

(*b*) Vulturidæ...vultures...long straight beaks bent down at tip.

(*c*) Accipetridæ...falcons, osprey and eagle...short, usually dentated beaks, hooked at the ends.

2. Pessaries...(*a*) Lanidæ...shrike...hooked and strongly serrated beak. (*b*) Cervidæ...crow and blue-jay...beaks strong, thick, somewhat curved anteriorly and slightly notched.

3. Grallatories...Heroidæ or Ardeidæ...herons and krauñca...they have long and powerful beaks with sharp hard

edges, somewhat curved at the point, rarely spoon-shaped, with long neck.

The instruments are—

10. Kākamukha or Crow forceps (Corvus corone).
11. Kaṅkamukha or Heron forceps (Ardea cenerea).
12. Kuraramukha or Osprey forceps (Pandion haliæctus).
13. Cāsamukha or Blue-jay forceps (Garrulous or Corvus cristatus).
14. Bhāsamukha or Eagle forceps.
15. Śaśaghātīmukha or Hawk forceps (Nanclerus furcatus).
16. Ulūkamukha or Owl forceps (Strix flammea).
17. Cillimukha or Kite forceps (Milivus ictimus).
18. Śyenamukha or Vulture forceps (Vulture cinereas).
19. Gṛdhramukha or Falcon forceps (Peregine falcon).
20. Krauñcamukha (Ardea jaculator); or Curlew (Numenius Arquatus).
21. Bhṛṅgarājamukha or Fork-tailed or Butcher-bird forceps (Lanius excubitor).
22. Añjalikarṇamukha—birds not identified.
23. Avabhañjanamukha „ „ „
24. Nandimukhamukha (Turdus Ginginianus).

II. The Sandaṁśa or Pincher-like Forceps.

The second class of instruments—the Sandaṁśa[1] or pincher-like forceps—comprises only two instruments: the forceps with and without handles. The first variety is likened

[1] सनियन्त्रोऽनियन्त्रश्च सन्दंशो षोड़शाङ्गुली भवतस्त्वग्मांससिरास्नायुगतशल्योद्धरणार्थ-मुपदिश्यते ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā I. vii.

to forceps with arms, used by the barbers for depilating the nasal cavities, while the second variety is like the armless forceps used by the goldsmiths. The former consists of two arms joined crosswise by a pin fixed at about their middle points, and so really is a cruciform instrument but is classed here for its different use in surgery. The forceps without handles consists of two blades soldered at one end. Some commentators like to subdivide the pinchers into two classes according as their ends are rough or smooth. And so Hessler translates :[1] "Duae forcipes denticulata et non denticulata".

The sandaṁśas are used for the purpose of extracting foreign substances from the soft structures of the human body, such as the skin, muscles, veins, nerves, and tendons[2]. Generally they have a length of sixteen aṅguli.

Vāgbhaṭa II mentions two other instruments as modifications of the type :—

(*a*) One variety has the length of six aṅguli. It is intended for the purpose of extracting minute foreign bodies such as thorn, hair &c. and of removing the superfluous eyelashes.[3]

Cakrapāṇi also advises us to use a sandaṁśa for epilation, which may be called the Epilation forceps.[4]

---

[1] Hessler's Suśruta. Caput vii. P. 14.

[2] कीलवद्व वियुक्तायौ सन्दंशौ षोड़शाङ्गुलौ ।
लकसिरास्नायुपिशित लग्न शल्यापकर्षणे ॥ ५ ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

अतिगूढञ्च शल्यञ्च सन्दंशेन समुद्धरेत् ।
Hārita Saṁhitā, III. lvi.

[3] षड़ङ्गुलोऽन्योऽरथे मूक्ष्म शल्यो पपक्ष्मणां ॥ ६ ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[4] See foot-note 2, p. 66.

Similarly in modern times, we remove superfluous eyelashes by the Epilation forceps. Mr. Berry writes[1]:—"When the trichiasis is only partial, a temporary improvement is obtained by epilation. In some cases where a few eyelashes only have been left altogether, the patient may procure for himself a pair of forceps, and have the eyelashes removed whenever they cause irritation." Surgical epilation was frequently necessary for trichiasis among the Romans and a similar forceps was in use there.[2]

In ancient times in India, the barbers used epilation forceps for pulling out grey hairs. In Makha-deva jātaka, we find the following conversations between the king and his barber[3]:—

'Barber. There is a grey hair to be seen on your head, O King.'

King. Pull it out, then, friend, and put it in my hand.

So he tore it out with golden pinchers, and placed it in the hand of the King."

(*b*) The second variety is known as the Mucuṭī instrument.[4] It is a pair of straight forceps, having no curve like that of the sandaṁśa. It is serrated finely at the open ends. The soldered end has a ring attached to it as ornamentation. It is recommended to be used for removing painful sloughs and proud granulations from a deep-seated abscess. It is also to be used to

---

[1] Practical Ophthalmology, 1904. By G. A. Berry, M.B. P. 52.

[2] Paulus Ægineta. VI. xiii. (Syd. Soc. Ed.)

[3] Rhys David's Buddhistic jātaka stories, Vol. I, pp. 187.

[4] मुचुटी सूत्र दन्तर्जुमूले रुचकभूषणा।
गम्भीर व्रणमांसार्त्तौ चार्म्मणः शोधितस्य च ॥ ७ ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

complete the operation for pterygium by removing the remnant, after it has been extirpated by the sharp instruments. Suśruta calls it Mucuṇḍī[1], and uses it to hold the pterygium after it has been raised by vaḍiśa or hook. It must be then a smaller variety of mucuṭī.

A similar pair of forceps, Dr. Erichsen mentions, and says[2] that "for the purpose of extracting needles, thorns, splinters of wood and other foreign bodies of small size and pointed shape lying in narrow wounds, forceps with very fine but strong, well-serrated points will be found useful."

Suśruta mentions baṁsabidala[3] or bamboo forceps. It is made of a piece of bamboo rod, split longitudinally into two halves nearly to its whole extent. This is like the bamboo tongs used by the smokers in Bengal to raise glowing charcoal to the earthen bowl. It should be used to remove worms from the surface of the human body.

The sandaṁśa instrument may be compared with the modern dressing forceps and with the forceps still used by the goldsmiths, known as a sonnā. Those with arms have their counterpart in the sāḍāsī or a pair of pinchers, still used by the blacksmiths.

III. Tāla Yantra or Picklock-like Instruments.

The third class of blunt instruments is called Tāla-

---

1 अपाङ्गं प्रेक्षमाणस्य वडिशेन समाहितः।
मुचुण्ढाग्रं च मेधावी सूचीमुखेन वा पुनः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, vi. xv.

2 Erichsen's Science and Art of Surgery, Tenth Ed. vol. I. p. 342.

3 तानतुलेनाभ्यङ्क्तस्य वंशविदलेनापहरेत्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxvii.

yantra[1]. The word tāla "has been differently intepreted by the commentators. Bhānumatī gives the alternative reading (tālu *i.e.*, palate) for tāla, so the instruments likely had their ends shaped like the palatine process of fish. Dallana,[2] however, maintains that tāla means picklock, the ordinary Indian key which resembles a hook. Two of these are joined at one end, the curved ends being kept free, facing one another. The instrument would then resemble the face of a bhetuli fish. Instruments with one tāla or hook resemble one lip of the fish, and those with two tālas represent its entire face. Both Cakrapāṇi and Dallana however prefer to mean by tāla, the scale of a fish."

They have a length of twelve aṅguli, and are shaped like the jaws of a fish. They may be made either with a single blade (ekatāla) or with double blades (dvitāla) soldered at one end, the hooked ends being free. They are intended for the purpose of extracting foreign bodies from the ear, nose and other outer canals of the body. The ear scoop now used by the barbers of India for extracting wax from the ear is a tālayantra.

---

[1] तालयन्त्रे द्वादशाङ्गुले मत्स्यतालुवदेकतालद्वितालके कर्णनासानाड़ीशल्यानामाहरणार्थे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

द्वे द्वादशाङ्गुले मत्स्यतालुवद्वेाक तालके ।
ताल यन्त्र स्मृते कर्णनाड़ी शल्यापहारिणी ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[2] अत्र ताल-शब्देन प्रदेश उच्यते । एतेन एकं तालं प्रदेशो यस्य तदेकतालं, द्वे ताले प्रदेशौ यस्य तत् द्वितालकमं ; एतेन मत्स्यस्य शल्कवत्प्रतनुमुखैरप्रदेशं एकतालं मत्स्यशल्कवत् प्रतनुमुखं द्विप्रदेशं द्वितालमित्युक्तम् । परिणाहस्तु कर्णादिप्रवेशी ज्ञेयः । अन्ये तु मत्स्यतालकवदेकतालकद्वितालके इति पठन्ति । व्याख्यानयन्ति च मत्स्यस्य भेटुनिमत्स्यः, तस्य लौहमयतालकाकारं मुखं भवति अतस्तन्मुखार्द्धाकारं यन्त्रमेकतालकं, सर्व्वमुखाकारं द्वितालकं, तालकीऽत्रअपवारकादिपाटसन्धिबन्धनं लौहमयमुच्यते ।

Dallana's Commentary, I. vii.

For removing substances that have fallen into the meatus auditorius, Paul says:[1] "They must therefore be extracted by an earpick, a hook, or tweezers, or by using powerful shaking of the head, while the ear is placed upon some circular board." Albucasis recommends us to use a slender forceps, which resembles the modern dissecting forceps. He also commends for the purpose a hook slightly bent, which is also mentioned by Celsus.[2]

IV. The Nāḍī Yantra or Tubular Instruments.

The Nāḍī or tubular instruments are described to be of various kinds and to serve many purposes[3]. They are open either at one or both ends. These are used for the extraction of foreign substances from the natural outlets of the body. They are also recommended to be used as a diagonostic apparatus for inspection of diseases in the canals. They are the means of sucking out fluid discharges, as pus *etc.*, from cavities and they facilitate the performances of other operations. They vary in length and diameter in proportion to the different sizes of the outer canals of the body, or according to the varieties of purposes to be served by them.

---

[1] Paulus Ægineta, Vol. II. VI. xxiv. (Syd. Soc. Ed.)

[2] Celsus, VI.

[3] नाड़ी यन्त्राण्यनेकप्रकाराण्यनेक प्रयोजनान्येकतोमुखान्युभयतोमुखानि च तानि स्रोतोगतशल्योद्धारणार्थं रोगदर्शनार्थमाचूषणार्थं क्रियासौकार्यार्थाश्चेति तानि स्रोतोद्वारपरिणाहानि यथायोग परिणाहदीर्घाणि च।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

नाड़ीयन्त्राणि शुषिराण्येकानेक मुखानि तु।
स्रोतोगतानां शल्यानामामयानाञ्च दर्शने।
क्रियाणां सुकरत्वाय कुर्यादाचूषणाय च।
तद्विस्तार परिणाह दैर्घ्यं स्रोतोऽनुरोधतः॥ ९॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

The tubular instruments are used for fistula-in-ano, haemorrhoids, tumours, abscesses, injections into the rectum, vagina and urethra, hydrocele, ascites, inhalations, stricture of urethra and rectum and cupping as by gourd and horns.[1]

As examples of the tubular instruments, Vāgbhaṭa II. mentions :—

1. KAṆṬHASALYĀVALOKINĪ[2] OR THROAT SPECULUM.

To examine foreign substances such as a fish-bone in the throat, the instrument should have a length of ten aṅguli and a circumference of five aṅguli.

Suśruta describes the extraction of a foreign body, made of lac from the throat of a patient by the following device. A heated iron probe or sound should be introduced into the throat of a patient through a tube of copper and made to touch the bit of shellac. The foreign substance would begin to dissolve or soften and so will adhere to the probe. The rod is then to be cooled by sprinkling water through the tube and the foreign body then should be drawn out steadily with it.[3] But other kinds of foreign bodies are to be extracted from the throat by means of a rod-like instrument, one end of which is smeared with melted wax or shellac.

The use of some adhesive substance for extraction of foreign bodies accidentally introduced into the outer passages of the

---

[1] भगन्दरार्शोऽर्बुदव्रणवस्त्यन्तरवस्तिमूत्रवृद्धिदकोदरधूमनिरूहप्रकाशसन्निरूहगुदयन्त्राण्यलाबूघटयन्त्राणि चोपरिष्टाद्व्याख्यास्यामः ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

[2] दशाङ्गुलाऽऽनाहान्तः कण्ठशल्यावलोकिनी ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[3] जातुषे कण्ठासक्ते कण्ठे नाड़ीं प्रवेश्याग्नितप्ताञ्च शलाकां तथावगृह्य शीताभिरद्भिः परिषिच्य स्थिरीभूतमुद्धरेत् । अजातुषं जतुमधूच्छिष्टलिप्तया शलाकया पूर्वकल्पेनेत्येके ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

human body was well known to the Greeks and Romans. Paul says:[1] "Stones and such like bodies we extract by wrapping wool round an earpick, and smearing it with turpentine-rosin, or some glutinous substance, and introducing it gently into the meatus auditorius."

2. Pañcamukha and Trimukha.

To take a good hold of a four-eared arrow, a speculum having five holes (Pañcamukha) should be had recourse to; and for a two-eared arrow, a speculum having three holes (Trimukha) would be necessary. The central hole is for the arrow, while the side holes are meant for the ears of the arrow.[2]

Celsus[3] says that when a weapon buried in the flesh has barbs too strong to be broken with forceps, they may be shielded with split writing-reeds (Calamus scriptorium), and the weapon thus withdrawn.

Paul says: "Some apply a tube round about the barbs[4] so that when they draw out the weapon, the flesh may not be torn by the barbs."

In modern times a snare is used instead of a tube. Dr. Erichsen[5] writes: "The extraction of an arrow is usually attended with little difficulty. But if barbed, special precautions have to be taken. With the view of safely effecting its removal, the snares.....have been devised."

---

[1] Paulus Ægineta. Vol. II. VI. xxiv. (Syd. Soc. Ed.)

[2] नाड़ीपञ्चमुखच्छिद्रा चतुष्कर्णस्य संग्रहे।
वारङ्गस्य द्विकर्णस्य च्छिद्रा तत् प्रमाणतः।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[3] Celsus, vii. v.

[4] The Works of Paulus Ægineta, vi. lxxxvii.

[5] The Science and Art of Surgery. Vol. I. pp. 343.

3. Tubular Instruments for Inspection of Arrows.

Again for the inspection of the arrows, various kinds of tubular instruments would be necessary, which will vary according to the shape, length, and circumference of the arrows and their ears.[1]

4. Śalyanirghātanī.

The top of this tubular instrument is shaped like the disc of a lotus and is closed. The other end is open and leads to a hollow extending to a fourth part of the tube. It has a length of twelve aṅguli. It is useful for removing an arrow fixed deeply into the body, in different directions and thus helpling its easy extraction.[2] For this purpose Suśruta directs us to use a stone hammer.

The Śalyanirghātanī had its counterpart in the female part of the Impellent, mentioned by Paul, for forcing an arrowhead forwards through a part so as to extract it at the side opposite to that of its entrance. It would thus be seen that the function of the Impellent was similar to that of the Śalyanirghātanī ; the former moved it forwards, while the latter moved the śalya side to side, the object of both being to extract the foreign substance. The Impellent would seem to have been a plain rod of metal pointed at one end (the male part) and hollowed at the other (the female part) ; the pointed end used to be introduced into the socket of an arrow when it possessed one, and the hollow

---

[1] वारङ्ग कर्णसंस्थान नाह दैर्घ्यानुरोधत: ।
नाड़ीरिवं विधायान्या द्रष्टुं शल्यानि कारयेत् ॥ १० ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[2] पद्मकर्णिकया मूर्ध्नि सद्दशी द्वादशाङ्गुला ।
चतुर्थं शुषिरानाड़ी शल्यनिर्घातनी मता ॥
Ibid.

end was meant to fit over the tail in case where the arrow was tanged.[1] The Greeks and Romans recognised the necessity of an arrow being moved about until loosened, if it remained fixed in the bone; and Celsus[2] directs us to strike it with some iron instrument until it be shaken from the place where it is lodged.

5. Tubular instruments for piles.

According to Suśruta[3] these should be made either of iron, or ivory, or horn or wood. They are hollow instruments tapering at the end which should be shaped like the teat of a cow. For males, the length is four aṅguli, while the circumference is five aṅguli. In the case of females, however, the tube should be made wider, the circumference being six aṅguli, and longer, the length being equal to the space covered by the palm of the hand. There are two slits on the sides—one for inspection of diseases and the other to allow application of caustic and cautery to the diseased part. The slit measures three aṅguli in length and the pulp of the thumb in breadth. At a distance of a half aṅguli from the margin of the slit, is raised a circular projection, also a half aṅguli high.

---

[1] Paulus Ægineta, VI. lxxxviii.

[2] Celsus, VII. 5.

[3] तत्र यन्त्रं लौहं दान्तं शार्ङ्गं वार्कं वा गोस्तनाकारं चतुराङ्गुलायतं पञ्चाङ्गुलपरिणाहं पुंसां षडङ्गुलपरिणाहं नारीणां तलायतं तदधिच्छिद्रं दर्शनार्थमेकं छिद्रमेकं छिद्रन्तु कर्म्मणि। एकद्वारे हि शस्त्रक्षाराग्नीनामतिक्रमो न भवति। छिद्रप्रमाणन्तु वाङ्गुलायतमङ्गुष्ठोदरपरिणाहं यदङ्गुलमवशिष्टं तस्याधोङ्गुलमधस्तादर्द्धाङ्गुलोच्छ्रितोपरिष्टत्कर्णिकमेषयन्त्राकृतिसमासः।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. vi.

Vāgbhaṭa[1] describes two different instruments, one for inspection and the other for medication. They both have the same length and circumference. The former has two slits on the side, while the latter has only one slit, three aṅguli long and the pulp of the thumb in width. The annular projection is turned upwards : the object being the prevention of sudden introduction of the instrument too far inwards.

A similar instrument without any slit on the side is called Śamī[2]. It is advised to be used for exerting pressure over the piles by its introduction into the rectum (Vāgbhaṭa.)

Rectal speculum is mentioned by Hippocrates in his treatise on fistula[3] and by Paul in the treatment of piles.[4] It is called Calopter in contradistinction to the vaginal speculum which is called Diopter. The rectal speculum in the Naples museum is a two bladed instrument working with a hinge in the middle. In modern times, both the varieties of the speculum, tubular and valved, are in use.

For inspection and medication of piles, a tubular speculum is recommended to be used by the veterinary surgeons. In the

---

[1] अर्शसां गोस्तनाकारं यन्त्रकं चतुरङ्गुलम् ।
नाहे पञ्चाङ्गुलम् पुंसां प्रमदानां षडङ्गुलं ।
द्विच्छिद्रं दर्शने व्याधेरेकच्छिद्रन्तु कर्म्मणि ।
मध्येऽस्य चाङ्गुलच्छिद्रमङ्गुष्ठोदर विस्तृतम् ।
अङ्गाङ्गुलोच्छ्रितोदृत्त कर्णिकञ्च तदूर्द्धतः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[2] ग्रन्थ्याख्यां तादृग्च्छिद्र यन्त्रमर्शः प्रपीड़नं ॥ १२ ॥

Ibid.,

[3] The Genuine Works of Hippocrates. (Syd. Soc. Ed.) Vol. II. P. 817.

[4] Paulus Ægineta, VI. lxxix.

Aśvavaidyaka, Jayadatta sūri[1] describes the instrument thus: "The surgeon should know the instrument to have the length of six aṅguli. On the two sides, the wise surgeon should make two slits, three aṅguli long and a half aṅguli broad. Through an instrument with two slits, the piles of the horses should be examined. Through a speculum with one slit, the surgical operations, such as incisions &c., should be performed, after having tied the horse and making him lie down".

6. Tubular Instruments for Fistula-in-ano.

These are similar to the instruments used for the inspection and medication of piles, the only difference being the omission of the circular rings in their construction, for otherwise, the projection may rub over the sore if the speculum be introduced deeply.[2]

---

[1] यन्त्रं षडङ्गुलं विद्यान् च्छिद्रं पञ्चाङ्गुलं भिषक्।
अधोऽर्द्धाङ्गुलाविस्तीर्णं दैर्घ्येणाप्यङ्गुलत्रयम्॥
उभयोः पार्श्वयोस्तस्य कुर्य्याच्छिद्रद्वयं बुधः।
अर्शस्तेन तु वाहस्य द्विच्छिद्रेण विलोकयेत्॥
एकच्छिद्रेण वै कर्म्म कुर्य्याच्छेदादि पूर्व्वकम्।
पातितस्य सुबद्धस्य तुरङ्गस्य विचक्षणः॥

Aśvavaidyaka (Bibliotheca Indica). Liii. vs. 4, 5 and 6.

[2] छिद्रादृर्ङ्ं हरेदीषदर्शंयन्त्रस्य यन्त्रवित्।
ततो भगन्दरे दद्यादेतदर्द्धेन्दु सन्निभं॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

सर्व्वथाऽपनयेदीषं छिद्रादृर्ङ्ं भगन्दरे।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

7. Tubular Instruments for the Nose.

Nasal-Speculum.

Similar tubular instrument without ring is to be used for examination of nasal diseases as tumours and polypus. It is however shorter and thinner than the rectal speculum. Vāgbhaṭa says: "It is two aṅguli long and admits the index finger in its lumen. The tube has a single slit on the side."[1]

He describes nasal tubes for introducing medicated powders into the nose as snuff.[2] After partially filling the tube with powders, one should blow through the empty end, the other end being put well inside the nasal cavity. Suśruta also uses a tube to blow powder into the nose.[3] Caraka[4] mentions nasal insufflation to cure diseases. Śārṅgadhara[5] and Cakradatta[6] describe the nasal tube for insufflation to be six aṅguli long and open at both ends.

---

[1] घ्राणार्ब्बुदार्शसामेकच्छिद्रा नाड्यऽङ्गुलद्वया ।
प्रदेशिनी परिणाहा स्याद्गन्दर यन्त्रवत् ॥ १५ ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[2] भ्रानं विरेचनचूर्णो युञ्जात् तं सुखवायुना ।
षड़ङ्गुलद्विमुखया नाड्या भेषजगर्भया ।
Ibid. I. xx.

[3] नासास्रावे घ्राणतचूर्णमुक्तं नाड्यादेयं योऽवपीड़श्चतीक्ष्णः ।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xxiii.

[4] सिद्धिं स्याद्भावनं चूर्णैश्चषां प्रधमणे हितं ।
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxvi.

[5] षड़ङ्गुला द्विवक्त्रा या नाड़ी चूर्णन्तयो धमेत् ।
तीक्ष्णं कीलमितस्वक्त्र वातः प्रधमनं हितं ॥
Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III viii.

[6] भापनं रेचनचूर्णो युञ्जात् तत् सुखवायुना ।
षड़ङ्गुल द्विमुखया नाड्या भेषजगर्भया ॥
Cakradatta, Nasyādhikāra.

Aretaeus says that a quill or reed or a wide long tube may be used for blowing powders into the pharynx. Alexander Trallianus[2] says that a calamus scriptorium, the joints of which have been removed, may be used as an insufflator. Oribasius[3] however gives the fullest description of the tube used as a nasal insufflator. "A reed slender and with a straight bore, 6 inches in length, and of such a size that it can be passed in the nares, is taken and its cavity entirely filled with medicament. The reed may be either natural or of bronze. This being placed in the nares, we propel the medicament by blowing into the other end."

In modern times, we advise our patients to do the same thing when powders are prescribed to be thrown into the nose or ears. The cylindrical shaft of the ordinary quill so cut as to be open at both ends will serve the purpose admirably. The nasal insufflator is used now for identical object.

Aretaeus[4] mentions a nasal syringe with a double tube. It consists of two pipes united together by an outlet so that liquid medicine may be injected into both the nasal cavities simultaneously, for injection into each nostril separately, he points out, can not be borne.

It is remarkable that in Mahāvāgga[5] mention is made of single and double nose-spoons. Nāthu-karaṇi (*i.e.*, an instrument to hold up the nose, so that the medicated oil

---

[1] Aretaeus, Vol. II., P. 408.

[2] Alexander Trallianus, IV. viii.

[3] Oribasius Collect, xii.

[4] Aretaeus, Ed. Adams, Vol. II., P. 459.

[5] Mahāvāgga, VI. 13. 1 & 2. Sacred Books of the East.

does not run out...Ed.) and Yamaka-nāthu-karaṇi (*i.e.*, one that would go up both nostrils...Ed.). They are recommended to be made of gold, or silver, or bone, or ivory, or horn, or of the *nala* reed, or of bambu, or of wood, or of lac, or of the shells of fruit, or of chank-shell". (Sacred Books of the East).

To apply oily medicines inside the nasal cavity a cotton wick is first soaked in the oil and then it is pushed well inside the nose. It is recommended also to pour oil into the cavity through a tube, while the other cavity is pressed by a finger (Vāgbhaṭa[1]).

To treat a case of fracture of the nasal bones, Suśruta recommends[2] two straight tubes open at both ends to be introduced into the nasal cavities, after putting the fractured ends in position, either lowering or elevating the raised or depressed end by a rod as required. Then bandages are to be applied. The tubes serve as splints to support the broken ends in position, while through their orifices the patient may breathe without inconvenience.

Similarly Celsus, after replacing the fractured ends in position uses oblong tents sewed round with a thin soft skin as splints into the nostrils; or a large quill smeared with gum, or artificer's glue may be applied in the same way. Paul also

---

[1] नासापुटं पिधायेकं पर्य्यायेण निषेचयेत्।
उष्णास्तु भेषज्यं प्रनाड्या पिचुनाऽथवा॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xx.

[2] नासां सन्नां विवृत्तां वा कर्ज्जूं कृत्वा शलाकया।
पृथग् नासिकयोनाड्यौ द्विमुखौ संप्रवेशयेत्॥
ततः पट्टेन संवेष्ट्य घृतसेकं प्रदापयेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. iii.

says: "And some sew the quills of the feathers of a goose into the rags, and thus introduce them into the nose, in order that they may preserve the parts in position without obstructing the respiration; but this is unnecessary as respiration is carried on by the mouth."[1]

Suśruta also advises us to introduce these tubes into the nasal cavities during the performance of the Rhinoplastic operations.[2]

8. The Aṅguli-trāṇaka or Finger-guard.

Vāgbhaṭa says:[3] "It is generally made either of ivory or wood. The instrument is shaped like the teat of a cow, and is four aṅguli long. Two slits occur on the sides like those in the speculum for piles."

It protects the finger of the surgeon from being injured by the teeth of the patient and so helps the surgeon in opening the mouth of the patient with ease.[4]

In modern times, finger-guards are used for the same purposes.

---

[1] Paulus Ægineta, Vol. II. vi, xci. Syd. Soc. Ed.

[2] सुसंहितं सम्यगथो यथावन्नाड़ीद्वयेनाभिसमीक्ष्य वह्वा।
प्रोन्नम्य चैनामवचूर्णयेच्च पत्तङ्गयष्टीमधुकाञ्जनैश्च ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xvi.

[3] अङ्गुलित्राणकं दान्तं वार्द्धं वा चतुरङ्गुलम्।
द्विच्छिद्रं गोस्तनाकारं तद्वक्त्रविवृतौमुखं ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

[4] तच्च वक्त्र विवृतौ, सम्वृत मुखस्यातुरस्य मुखव्यादान निमित्तं सुखं सुखकरं स्यात्। यत इदं दन्तघातात् रक्षति अत उक्तं सुखमिति।
Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

अङ्गुलिर्दन्तेभ्यो रक्षणार्थत्वादङ्गुलित्राणमिति नाम।
Sarvāṅga Sundarī, I. xxv.

9. JONI-VRAṆEKṢAṆA OR VAGINAL SPECULUM.

Vāgbhaṭa[1] describes it to be a tubular instrument, sixteen aṅguli long, and six aṅguli in circumference. It consists of four blades, attached at their bases to a ring. The tube tapers gradually, the end is free and looks like the bud of a lotus. To the four blades are soldered four rods in such a way that on pressing their free ends, which pass out of the ring, by the surgeon's hands, the tapering end of the tube would gape widely. The surgeon by regulating the pressure of his hand, may open or close the speculum to any desired extent.

Another kind of vaginal speculum used to be manufactured out of the two horns of a buffalo by dividing each into two longitudinal halves. They should be so paired that their concave surfaces would look towards one another, their ends diverging outwards. So we get a pair of bivalve speculum out of a pair of horns.

The bivalve speculum of horn mentioned above, has its modern counterpart in the pair of speculum known as Barne's or Neugebauer's speculum.

---

[1] योनिव्रणेक्षणं मध्ये शुषिरं पीड़याङ्गुलम्।
मुद्रावद्धं चतुर्भित्तमम्भोज मुकुलाननं।
चतुःशलाकमाक्रान्तं मूले तदिकसेन्मुखे ॥ १७।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, I. xxv.

अस्य यन्त्रस्य कल्पनायां चत्वारिखण्डानि तथा काष्ठानि यथा मुद्रिकया बद्धानि मिलितानि च पद्मसुकुलाकार मुखा, अन्तर शुषिरा षड़ङ्गुल परिणाहवती नाड़ी स्यात्। ततस्तन्मध्ये प्रत्येक खण्डसंलग्नं चतस्रः शलाकाः आमुखात् सन्निवेश्य शलाकानामध्यभागे तथा बध्नीयात् यथा शलाकामूल पीड़नेन यन्त्रस्य मुखं विकसेत्।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudi, I. xxv.

The vaginal speculum or Diopter is mentioned by Soranus, Paul[1] and other Greek surgeons. Paul describes its method of working as follows:— "The person using the speculum should measure with a probe the depth of the woman's vagina, lest the stalk (fistula) of the speculum being too long, it should happen that the uterus should be pressed upon. If it be ascertained that the stalk is larger than the vagina, folded compresses are to be laid on the alæ pudendi, in order that the speculum may be placed upon them. The stalk is to be introduced, having a screw at the upper part, and the speculum is to be held by the operator, but the screw is to be turned by the assistant, so that the laminæ of the stalk being separated, the vagina may be distended." The accounts given by Albucasis[2] and Haly Abbas[3] are similar. These instruments are described to be bivalve, trivalve or quadrivalve. A quadrivalve speculum of the Greeks is identical with the Joni-vraṇekṣaṇa of the Hindus; the only difference being that the former is acted by screw mechanism, while the latter is worked on the principle of the lever. Drawings of several shorts of the Greek instruments are given in the surgery of Albucasis and by Schultet.[4] There are three specimens of vaginal, speculum in the Naples museum, drawings of which are given by Milne. In modern times, we use similar valvular speculum for identical purposes.

---

[1] Paulus Ægineta, Vol. II. vi. lxxiii. Syd. Soc. Ed.

[2] Albucasis, Chirrug, II. 71.

[3] Haly Abbas, Pract. ix. 57.

[4] Arsenal de chirrug. tab. 18.

10. Tubular Instruments for wounds.

Vraṇa-vasti or Wound-syringe.

If the wound be caused by deranged air and be very tender, especially if it forms on the lower half of the body, the vasti should be used. In diseases of the urinary organs, such as, obstruction of urine, faulty conditions of urine, impure semen, stone in the bladder and disorders of menstruation, uttara-vasti is necessary.[1]

There are two instruments mentioned—one for application of oleaginous medicines to a sore and the other for washing a sinus with medicated lotions. Each consists of a tube and a leather bag. The tube is smooth and rounded and is shaped like a cow's tail.[2] It is six aṅguli long. The base is broad and admits a thumb, while the end is narrow and admits a pea. There is a circular projection or ring at a short distance from the end.[3] The base is fitted tightly into a bag of thin leather.[3]

---

[1] वातदुष्टो व्रणोयस्तु रुक्षायत्यर्थवेदन: ।
अध:काये विशेषेण तत्र वस्तिर्विधीयते ।
मूत्राघाते मूत्रदोषे शुक्रदोषेऽश्मरीव्रणे ।
तथैवार्त्तवदोषे च वस्तिरुत्तरो हित: ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[2] नाड़ी व्रणानां स्नेहप्रयोगार्थं प्रक्षालनार्थञ्च ते यन्त्रे आह यन्त्रे इत्यादि नाड़ीव्रणाभ्यङ्ग क्षालनाय नाड़ीव्रणानामभ्यङ्गार्थं प्रक्षालनार्थञ्च षड़ङ्गुले षड़ङ्गुल दीर्घे, वस्तियन्त्राकृति वस्ति-नेत्राकारे वस्ते गोपुच्छाकारे * * * *

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[3] यन्त्रे नाड़ी व्रणाभ्यङ्ग क्षालनाय षड़ङ्गुले ।
वस्तियन्त्राकृती मूलेऽङ्गुष्ठ कलायखे ।
अग्रत: कर्णिके मूले निबद्धस्नदुचर्म्मणी ॥ १८ ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv

To prevent the tube slipping out of the bag, an additional precaution is taken by tying a knot of thread over the leather covering the tube. For description of the bag, *vide infra*.

Śārṅgadhara[1] however says that the tube should have the thickness of the shaft of a vulture's feather and should admit a moong (Phaseelus Moong). It is eight aṅguli long.

Pālakāpya describes the tube for washing wounds of elephants to be made of copper, and shaped like the karontaka flower. It is sixteen aṅguli long.

In modern times, wound syringes are similarly used to wash the sore with medicated lotions.

For description of the tubes for vraṇa-dhupana or wound-fumigation, *vide infra*.

11. Tubular Instruments for Ascites.

Dākodara yantra or Canula.

It may be either metallic or manufactured from the cylindrical hollow calamus of a peacock's feather.[2] The tube is open at both ends and is of the same calibre throughout. Suśruta advises us to use a pipe of tin, or lead or a feather to drain the fluid, after the abdomen has been tapped.[3]

---

[1] व्रणवस्तेस्तु नेत्रं स्यात् वृक्षमष्टाङ्गुलोन्मितम् ।
मुद्गच्छिद्रग्रथपचनलिकापरिणाहि च ।

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. vi.

[2] द्विदारा नलिका पिच्छनलिका वा दाकोदरे । १९ ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[3] तत व्रणादीनामन्यतमस्य नाड़ीद्विदारां पचनाड़ीं वा संयोज्या दोषोदक-मवसिञ्चन्ती नाड़ीमपहृत्य तैललवणेनाभ्यज्य व्रणवस्तेनोपचरेत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xiv

Celsus describes a lead or copper canula for draining ascites.[1] Paul writes that the tip used to be bevelled off like a writing pen.[2] It was also employed in empyema.[3] Albucasis[4] mentions a tube of silver or copper or brass having a small hole at the bottom and three on its sides.

In modern times we use a metallic canula of similar shape for draining fluid in ascites.

12. Tubular Instruments for Hydrocele.

This is practically the same instrument described above. Suśruta[5] mentions a tube or canula to drain the fluid after tapping the hydrocele with the vrīhimukha śastra or trocar. The Greek surgeons did not describe the operation. They preferred the open incision to puncture.[6] Rhases, however, describes the operation of puncturing the scrotum for hydrocele.[7]

13. Tubular Instruments for Urethral Stricture.

Suśruta recommends gradual mechanical dilatation of the urethra by means of tubes made of iron, or wood, or lac, well-smeared

---

[1] Celsus, vii. 15 &. ii. 10.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, Vol. II. VI. L. Syd. Soc. Ed.

[3] Hippocrates, ii. 259.

[4] Albucasis, Chirrug, ii. 54.

[5] मूत्रजां स्वेदयित्वातु वस्त्रपट्टेन वेष्टयेत् ॥
सेवन्याः पार्श्वतोऽधस्ता द्विध्येद्वीद्विमुखेन च ।
यथाव द्विमुखां नाड़ीं दत्वा विस्रावयेद् भिषक् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xix.

[6] Paulus Ægineta, VI. lxii.

[7] Rhases, Cont. xxiv.

with ghee.[1] He advises us to use the same tube for three consecutive days, then another of larger calibre for three days more, and so on, till the canal be fully dilated. He reserves External Urethrotomy as a last resource.[2]

14. Tubular Instruments for Rectal Stricture.

Suśruta similarly describes gradual dilatation of stricture of the rectum, using a higher number of diliators after the lapse of three days until the desired effect is attained.[3]

---

[1] (a) निरुद्धप्रकाशे नाड़ीं लौहीमुभयतोमुखीं ॥
दारवी वा जतुकृतां घृताभ्यक्तां प्रवेशयेत् ।
परिषेक वसामज्ज शिशुमारवराहयोः ॥
चक्रतैलं तथायोज्यं वातघ्नप्रव्यसंयुतं ।
वाहात्त्राहात् स्थूलतरां सम्यङ्नाड़ीं प्रवेशयेत् ॥
स्रोतोविवर्द्धयेदेवं स्निग्धमन्नञ्च भोजयेत् ।
भित्वावा सेवनीं मुक्तां सद्यःक्षतवदाचरेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xx.

(b) निरुद्ध प्रकाशे नाड़ीं द्विमुखीम् कनकादिजम् ।
चिक्षाभक्तां चुल्लुकादिस्नेहेन परिषेचयेत् ।
तैलेन वा वचदारुकल्कैः सिद्धेन च वाहात् ॥
पुनः स्थूलतरा नाड़ीदेया स्रोतोविवृद्धये ।
... ...
... ... रुद्धगुदेऽप्येष क्रियाक्रमः ॥

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga Cikitsā.
See also Yogaratnākara, P. 368, where these verses are quoted.

[2] See 1 (a). अस्यार्थः :—सेवनीं त्यक्त्वा शस्त्रेण वा मूत्रस्रोतः संकोचकारणं चर्म विदारयेत् । तस्यापि द्वारस्याविपाटे मणिबन्धमात्रं दारयेदिति ।

Commentary of Srī Kaṇṭha in Vyākhyā Kusumāvalī (Anandāsram Series), P. 406.

[3] सन्निरुद्ध गुदे योज्या निरुद्धप्रकाशक्रिया ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xx.

There is no mention of solid bladder sounds in the Sanskrit medical books. But from the above descriptions, it seems beyond doubt that they had a set of dilators for stricture of the urethra and another set of dilators for stricture of the rectum. These dilators were tubes—either metallic or wooden—and had a regular gradation in the increse of their diameters. Cakrapāṇī mentions stricture dilators of gold.[1]

In modern times we have also two sets of these instruments —urethral and rectal dilators, numbered in an ascending series according to the increased diameters of these instruments.

15. Tubular Instruments for Injections into the Rectum.

Vasti yantra or Rectal Clyster.

Injections into the rectum are to be thrown by means of a tube with a membranous bag tied to its end. The tube is advised to be made either of gold, or silver, or lead, or copper, or brass, or bell-metal, or ivory, or horns, or glass, or precious stones, or wood or bamboo. It should be clean, smooth, strong, and tapering like a cow's tail, and should terminate in a smooth rounded bulb. The tube varies in length and circumference according to the age of the patient as follows :—

I. Caraka.[2]

Age.	Length of tube.	Opening at the end admits.
6 years ...	6 anguli ...	A moong
12 ,, ...	8 ,, ...	A pea
20 ,, and over ...	12 ,, ...	A small plum seed

[1] See foot note I (b), Page 124.

[2] सुवर्णरूप्यत्रपुतामरीति
कांस्यायसास्थिद्रुमवेणुदन्तैः ।
नलैर्विषाणैर्मणिभिश्च तेषैः
कार्याणि नेत्राणि सुकर्णिकानि ॥

II. Suśruta.[1]

Age.	Length of tube.	Part of tube in bag.	Circumference of tube.	Circumference at end.	Measure of injection.
1 year	6 aṅguli	1½ anguli	Little finger	Shaft of heron's feather.	2 añjali
8 ,,	8 ,,	2 ,,	4th ,,	Shaft of falcon's feather.	4 ,,
16 ,,	16 ,,	3½ ,,	3rd ,,	Shaft of peacock's feather.	8 ,,
50 ,,	12 ,,	3 ,,	Pulp of thumb	Admits a plum stone.	12 ,,
70 ,,	Same as that of the 16th year.				

षड्द्वादशाष्टाङ्गुल सम्मितानि षड्विंशतिद्वादशवर्षजानाम् ।
सुसूक्ष्मकर्कन्धु सतीनवाहिच्छिद्राणि वर्त्म्यापिहितानि चापि ॥
यथावयोऽङ्गुष्ठ कनिष्ठकाभ्यां मूलाग्रयोः स्युः परिणाहवन्ति ।
ऋजूनि गोपुच्छसमाकृतीनि श्लक्ष्णानि च सुगुडिकामुखानि ॥
स्यात् कर्णिकैकाग्र चतुर्थभागे मूलाश्रिते वस्ति निबन्धने द्वे ।
जारद्गवोमाहिषहारिणी वा स्याच्छौकरी वस्तिरजस्य वापि ॥
दृढ़सनुर्नष्टशिरो विगन्धः कषायरक्तः मुसृदुः सुगुह्यः ।
नृणां वयोवीक्ष्य यथानुरूपं नेत्रेषु योज्यस्तु सुवङ्क्षणत्रः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. iii.

Also quoted in Cakradatta, Anuvaṣanādhikāra.

[1] तत्र संवत्सरिकाष्टहिरष्ट वर्षाणां षड्दशाङ्गुल प्रमाणानि कनिष्ठिकानामिका मध्यमाङ्गुलि परिणाहान्यग्रेऽध्यर्द्धाङ्गुलाई तृतीयाङ्गुल सन्निविष्ट कर्णिकानि कङ्कग्रीवेन वर्हिपत्र नाड़ीतुल्य प्रवेशानि मुद्गमाषकलायमात्र स्रोतांसि विदध्यात्रेचाणि तेषु त्वास्थापनाद्रव्य प्रमाणमातुर हस्तसम्मितेन प्रसृतेन सम्मिती प्रसृती द्वौचत्वारोऽष्टौ विधेयाः ।

भवति चात्र ।

वर्षोत्तरेषु नेत्राणां वस्तिमानसा चैव हि ।
वयोबलशरीराणि समीक्ष्य वईयेद्विधिं ॥

पञ्चविंशतेरूर्द्ध द्वादशाङ्गुलं मूले द्वयष्टोदर परिणाहमग्रे कनिष्ठिकोदर परिणाहमग्रे वाङ्गुलसन्निविष्ट कर्णिकं गृध्रपत्रनाड़ीतुल्य प्रवेशं कोलास्थिमात्रं च्छिद्रं क्लिन्नकलायमात्रं छिद्रमित्येके । सर्व्वाणिमूले वस्तिनिबन्धनार्थं द्विकर्णिकानि । आस्थापन द्रव्य प्रमाणं तु विहिता द्वादश प्रसृताः । सप्तनेत्रमूर्द्ध नेत्र प्रमाणमेतदेवद्रव्य प्रमाणन्तु द्विरष्टवर्षवत् ।

तत्र नेत्राणि सुवर्णरजतताम्रयोरीति दन्तगजमणितरुसारमयानि श्लक्ष्णानि दृढ़ानि गोपुच्छाकृतीन्यञ्जनि गुटिका मुखानि । वस्तयाश्चाङ्गुष्ठानां मूदवो नाति बहला दृढ़ाः प्रमाणवन्तो गोमहिषवराहाजोरभ्राणां ।

III. Vāgbhaṭa II.[1]

Age. (years).	Length of tube.	Opening at base admits.	Opening at end admits.
Under 1	5 aṅguli	1 finger	A moong (phaseolus moong).
1 to 6	6 ,,	1½ ,,	A masha (phaseolous Rox).
7 to 11	8 ,,	2 ,,	A kalāya (pea) (pinus sativum).
12 to 15	9 ,,	2½ ,,	Boiled pea.
16 to 20	12 ,,	3 ,,	A śṛgalakoli (zizyphis cenoplia).
over 20	varies according to the age, strength and size of the patient; but the orifice at the base of the tube need not be wider.		

नेवलाभे हितनाडी नलवंशास्थि सम्भवा।
वस्त्रालाभे हितं चर्म्म सूत्रं वा तान्तवं घनम्॥
वस्तिं निरुपदिग्धन्तु गुदं सुपरिमार्जितं।
सहनुदत हीनच्च सुदःखे हविमर्द्दितं।
नेवमूले प्रतिष्ठाप्य न्युब्जन्तु विहताननम्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxxv.

[1] तयोस्तु नेवं हैमादि धातु दार्व्वऽस्थि वेनुजं।
गोपुच्छाकारमच्छिद्रं ऋजुं गुडिका मुखं॥
ऊनेऽब्दे पञ्चपूर्णेऽस्मिन्नासप्तभ्योऽङ्गुलानि षट्।
सप्तमे सप्त तान्यष्टौ द्वादशे षोड़शे नव।
द्वादशैव परं विंशाद वीचा वर्षान्तरेषु च।
वयो बल शरीराणि प्रमाणमभिवर्द्धयेत्॥
साङ्गुष्टेन समंमूले स्थौल्येनाग्रे कनिष्ठया॥
पूर्णेऽब्दे ऽङ्गुल मादाय तदर्द्धार्द्धं प्रवर्द्धितं।
चाङ्गुलं परमं छिद्रं मूलेऽग्रे वहते तु यत्।
मुद्गं माषं कलायन्तु स्विन्नं कर्कन्धुकं क्रमात्॥
मूल च्छिद्र प्रमाणेन प्रान्ते घटित कर्णिकं।
वर्त्याग्र पिहितं मूले यथास्वं द्वाङ्गुलान्तरं।
कर्णिका द्वितयं नेवे कुर्य्यात् तच्च च योजयेत्॥
अजावि महिषादीनां वस्तिं सुस्नदितं दृढं।
कषाय रक्तं निच्छिद्र ग्रन्थि ग्रन्थ शिरं तनुं।
ग्रथितं साधुसूत्रेण मुखं संस्थाप्य भेषजं।
वस्त्राऽभावेऽङ्गपादं वा न्यसेद्वासोऽथवा घनं॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xix.

Cakradatta[1], Śārṅgadhara and Bhāva Miśra[2] follow Caraka as regards measurement. Kharaṇāda[3] also gives a similar description.

[1] See foot note 2, Page 125.

[2] नेत्रं कार्य्यं सुवर्णादिधातुभिर्वृत्तवेणुभिः ।
नलैर्वृन्तैर्विषाणाद्यैर्मणिभिर्वा विधीयते ॥
एकवर्षात्तु षड्वर्षं यावन्मानं षडङ्गुलम् ।
ततो द्वादशकं यावन्मानं स्याद्दृष्टसंमितम् ॥
ततः परं द्वादशभिरङ्गुलैर्नेत्रदीर्घता ।
मुद्राछिद्रं कलायाभं छिद्रं कोलास्थिसन्निभम् ॥
गोपुच्छसन्निभं मूले स्थूलं तस्मात् क्रमात् कृशं ।
यथासंख्यं भवेन्नेत्रं शस्तं गोपुच्छसन्निभम् ॥
आतुराङ्गुष्ठमानेन मूले स्थूलं विधीयते ।
कनीष्ठिकापरीणाहमग्रे च गुटिका मुखे ॥
तन्मूले कर्णिके द्वे च कार्य्ये भागाच्चतुर्थकात् ।
योजयेत् तत्र वस्तिञ्च बन्धद्वयविधानतः ॥
सृगाजयूकरगवां महिषस्यापि वा भवेत् ।
भूचकोशस्य वस्तिस्तु तदलाभे च चर्म्मणः ॥
कषायरक्तः सुस्निग्धो दृढोचितः ।
व्रणवस्तेस्तु नेत्रं स्यात् शस्तमष्टाङ्गुलोन्मितम् ॥
सुवृच्छिद्रश्चपचनलिकापरिणाहि च ।

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. v.
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. ii.

[3] वस्तिनेत्रमजु शुक्लं सद्वृत्तङ्गुलिकामुखम् ।
भवेद्गोपुच्छसंस्थानं सुप्रवाहं त्रिकर्णिकम् ।
द्वा त्रिभागप्रणयने मर्यादा कर्णिका भवेत् ।
द्वे कर्णिके चोपरिष्टादस्त्राधारेऽथवान्तरे ।
साङ्गुष्टकपरीणाहं मूलं नेत्रस्य शस्यते ।
मध्यं त्वनामिकातुल्यमग्रं तुल्यकनिष्ठिकं ।
स्वे नाङ्गुलि प्रमाणेन दैर्घ्यं स्याद् द्वादशाङ्गुलम् ।
कर्कन्धुप्रवहच्छिद्रं श्रेष्ठमन्यद्यथावयः ।

Hārīta[1] advises us to use a bamboo tube four aṅguli long, which is to be introduced into the rectum up to two aṅguli.

As a general rule, Caraka writes that the broad and the narrow ends of the tube are to be equal to the patient's thumb and little finger respectively, in circumference. The orifice at the end of the tube is to be kept closed by a wick, so that no foreign body may enter the lumen of the tube to occlude it. The plug may be easily removed when the tube is required for use, and then replaced.

Towards the narrow end of the tube is a projection or ring at a distance of about two aṅguli from the extremity. The height of the projection varies with the size of the tube at the base. It acts as a bar to the further introduction of the tube inside the rectum than required. Towards the base are two similar projections, two aṅguli apart from each other. To the one near the base is firmly tied the leather bag, so that the tube may not slip away suddenly during forcible compression of the bag. The other is meant to afford a firm grasp by the surgeon, so that the tube may not move during its introduction into the rectum. These projections are to be made of thread or a piece of cloth and are to be so shaped as to resemble the end of the proboscis of an elephant.

As regards the leather bags, they are recommended to be

विंशद्वादशषड्वर्षं द्वादशाष्टषडङ्गुलम्।
कर्कन्धूक सतीनाग्रमुखं विद्रवघ्नम्॥

Kharaṇāda quoted in Sarvāṅga Sundarī, I. xix.

[1] चतुरङ्गुलां वेणुमयीं नाड़ीं प्रतिलक्षणां कृत्वा त्वया वस्तिप्रतिकर्म्म कुर्य्यात्। * * * गुदाभ्यन्तरे द्व्याङ्गुलमात्रं नाड़ी सञ्चारयेत् सुधीः।

Hārīta Saṁhitā, V. iii.

made of the bladder of cows, or buffaloes, or hogs, or goats, or lambs. The bladder is to be well cleaned first with lime and water, so that no unpleasant smell may be emitted by the decomposition of its muscular tissue, then dyed red with Mañjiṣṭhā (Rubia Cordifoliatum) or with Harītakī (Terminalia Chebula, Retz.) and thoroughly dried. The bags are recommended to be soft, durable, entire and capacious. If the bladders of these animals are not available, the bags are to be manufactured from a frog's skin, or the peritoneum (one-fourth part would suffice) of any beast, or a piece of leather or a piece of very thick cloth. The size of the bag varies according to the age of the patient. It is to be firmly tied over the first projection at the base of the tube.

In the Siddhisthāna Chapter XI of the Caraka Saṁhitā,[1] there is a passage showing that veterniary medicine was well-known to the ancient Hindus at a very early period. This portion was edited by Dṛḍhavala and it is impossible to decide whether the passage refers to Agniveśatantra or not. It runs as follows:— "Then the disciples asked: 'How are clysters to be made in cases of animals such as elephants, camels, cows, horses, lambs and goats?' To this, the sage Ātreya explained the clysters for

---

[1] अपृच्छदेनं सचवस्तिमब्रवीत् विधिश्चतस्याह पुनः प्रचोदितः ।
अजाविकेसीम्य गजोष्ट्रयोर्वा गवाश्वयोर्वस्तिमुशान्तिमाहिषम् ॥
अजाविकादन्तमुवस्तिमुत्तरं वदन्ति वस्तिं विपरीतरूपम् ।
सुवस्तिमष्टादशशोऽशाङ्गुलं तथैवनेत्रच दशाङ्गुलं क्रमात् ॥
गजोष्ट्रगोऽश्वाव्यजवस्ति सन्धौ चतुर्थभागे च सकर्णिकं वदेत् ।
प्रस्थस्त्वजाव्योर्हि निरूहमात्रा गवादिष् द्विगुणो यथा बलम् ।
निरूह उक्तस्य तथाऽर्कदयं गजस्य हस्तिन्यनुवासनेऽष्टमः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. xi.

animals in the following manner. The leather bag of the vasti-yantra should be made of a buffalo's bladder for goats, lambs, elephants, cows, camels and horses. The vasti for these animals is known as suvasti and uttara-vasti as uttara-suvasti. The tube of the suvasti should be eighteen aṅguli long for elephants and camels, sixteen aṅguli for cows and horses, and ten aṅguli for goats and lambs. Like the vasti yantra used for men, it should have a projection at the junction (of the tube with the bladder) and another at the fourth division of the tube from the end."

In the Aśvavaidyaka[1] the tube for the horse is thus described: "The tube should be made either of wood, or metals, or horn, or bamboo, or reeds. Its length should be twelve aṅguli and circumference six aṅguli. The wise surgeon should make the tube of such a calibre as to allow a plum seed to pass through it easily. It should be straight, polished and tapering from the base. At a distance of four aṅguli from the end of the tube, a projection should be raised, while for tying the leather bag firmly to the tube, two projections ought to be constructed at the base".

Pālakāpya[2] describes the rectal clysters for elephants. He advises that these are to be made either of wood or bamboo. The end is bulbous and the surface smooth. The length

---

[1] काष्टैर्धातुरयोभिश्च शृङ्गवंशनलादिभिः ।
द्वादशाङ्गुलदीर्घन्तु परिणाहे षडङ्गुलम् ॥
कोलास्थिमात्रच्छिद्रन्तु कुर्य्यान्नेत्रं विचक्षणः ।
मूलादनुक्रमं शस्तमसृणन्तु विशेषतः ॥
त्यक्ताङ्गुलानि चत्वारि कर्णिकान्तस्य कारयेत् ।
पुटकस्यप्रबन्धाय मूले द्वे चापि कर्णिके ॥

Aśvavaidyaka, XVI. vs. 2—4.

[2] Pālakāpya's Hasti-Āyurveda, Sec. IV. Ch. V.

length of the tube varies, the most convenient being sixteen aṅguli for men and sixty-eight aṅguli for elephants. The projections at the base of the tube should be twelve aṅguli high. He describes in detail the method of introduction, position of the elephant, etc.

Dṛḍhavala advises us to reject the following eight kinds of tubes and eight kinds of bags[1] :—

I. Tubes—

1. Hrasva or too short : For the injection does not reach the proper place.
2. Dīrgha or too long : For the injection passes beyond the proper place.
3. Tanu or too thin : The injection can not pass through the tube easily and so the bag may burst.
4. Sthūla or too thick : The tube pulls the mucous membrane of the rectum and anus backwards and forwards during its entrance and exit.
5. Jīrṇa or old, weak and delicate : The tube may break inside the rectum during its introduction and so cause injury to the gut or anus.

---

[1] ह्रस्वं दीर्घं तनुस्थूलं जीर्णं शिथिलबन्धनम् ।
पार्श्वच्छिद्रं तथा वक्रमष्टौ नेवाणि वर्ज्जयेत् ॥
अप्राप्तातिगतिश्चोभकर्षणक्षणनस्रवाः ।
गुदपीड़ा गतिर्जिह्मा तेषां दोषा यथाक्रमम् ॥
मांसलच्छिद्रविषमस्थूलजालकवातलाः ।
क्लिन्नः क्लिन्नश्च तानष्टौ वस्तीन् कर्म्मसु वर्ज्जयेत् ॥
गतिवैषम्यविस्रत्वस्राव्यदीर्याच्यनिस्रवाः ।
फेलिलच्युतधार्य्यत्वं वस्तेः स्याद वस्तिदोषतः ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. v.

6. Śithilabandhana: The tubes do not fit the bags well, so during compression of the bags, the injected fluid runs out by the side of the tube.
7. Pārśvacchidra or leaky: Having slit on the side, the tube may injure the soft parts by rubbing against them.
8. Bakra or curved: The motion of the injected fluid would be curvilinear. It will strike a side of the rectum and so would not go inside the gut.

II. Bags—

1. Maṁsala or fleshy: The bag emits bad smell.
2. Chidra or leaky: The injection escapes outside.
3. Viṣama or uneven: Parts are unequally compressed and so the injection does not issue in a forcible jet.
4. Sthūla or thick: It is dfficult to grasp the bag and so it can not be forcribly compressed.
5. Jālaka or having a network: The injection comes out.
6. Vātala or hollow, airy and incompressible: If air can not be expelled out, froth forms in the injection; and so air is pumped into the rectum.
7. Chinna or torn: The injection flows down.
8. Klinna or moist: The injection can not be forced out.

Suśruta mentions eleven defects of tubes and five defects of bags of the Vasti yantra.[1]

---

[1] अतिस्थुलं कर्कशमवनतमणुभिन्नं सन्निकृष्ट विप्रकृष्ट कर्णिकं सूक्ष्मातिच्छिद्रमतिदीर्घमतिह्रस्वमित्येकादश नेवदोषाः। बहलताल्पता सच्छिद्रता प्रस्रीर्णता दुर्ब्बिद्धतेति पञ्चबस्ति दोषाः।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxxv.

ऋजुनेवं विधेयं स्यात्तत सम्यग्विजानता।
अतिस्थुले कर्कशे च नेवे चावनते तथा॥

I. Tubes—

1.	Atisthūla :	Too thick.	Such tubes injure the rectum and so cause pain.
2.	Karkaśa :	Rough.	
3.	Avanata :	Curved.	
4.	Anu :	Too thin.	It becomes useless to inject fluids into the rectum.
5.	Bhinna :	Broken.	
6.	Sannikṛ ṭa Karṇika :	Projection near ?	
7.	Viprakṛṣṭa Karṇika :	Projection distant ?	Injure the rectum which bleeds.
8.	Sūkṣma :	Small orifice.	It becomes difficult to inject as the fluid comes out.
9.	Atihrasva :	Too short.	
10.	Atichidra :	Large orifice.	Too much fluid passes into the rectum and so pain is complained of.
11.	Atidīrgha :	Too long.	

II. Bags—

1.	Vahalatā :	Fleshy.	It is difficult to tie the bags over the tubes properly.
2.	Prastīrṇatā :	Large.	
3.	Sacchidratā :	Perforated.	No fluid can be forced into the rectum and so the instrument is useless.
4.	Durvviddhatā :	Difficult to tie.	
5.	Alpatā :	Small.	Small quantity of fluid passes into the rectum.

गुदे भवेत् चतं रुक् च साधनं पूर्ववत् स्मृतं ।
आसन्न कर्णिके नेत्रे भिन्नेऽणौ वाप्यपार्थकः ॥
अवसेको भवेद्वस्तेस्तस्मादोषान्विवर्ज्जयेत् ।
प्रकृष्ट कर्णिके रक्तं गुदमर्म्म प्रपीड़नात् ॥
चरत्यवापि पित्तघ्नो विधिर्वस्तिष्य पिच्छिलः ।
ह्रस्वेत्वणस्रोतसि च क्लेशो वस्तिष्य पूर्ववत् ॥
प्रत्यागच्छंस्ततः कुर्य्याद्रोगान्वस्ति विघातजान् ।
दीर्घे महास्रोतसि च ज्ञेयमत्यवपीड़वत् ॥
प्रस्तीर्णे वहले चापि वस्तौ दुर्व्वद्ध दोषवत् ।
वस्तावल्पेऽल्पता वापि द्रव्यस्याल्पगुना मताः ॥
दुर्व्वद्धे चाण भिन्ने च विज्ञेयः भिन्न नेववत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxxvi.

16. Uttara-vasti.

Urethral, Vaginal and Uterine Tubes.

Injections into the urethra and vagina are also recommended to be thrown in by similar contrivances: the tubes being adopted in length and circumference to the length and breadth of the passages for which they are intended.

1. Tubular Instruments for the Urethra.

The tubes intended for applying medicines into the male urethra is recommended to be twelve aṅguli long. Suśruta[1] advises us to use tubes fourteen aṅguli long. It is to be made of gold and is called Puṣpanetra. Its circumference is equal to that of a stalk of flower of Jātī (Jasmimum Grandiflorum) or Mālatī (Echites Crayophyllata, Rox.), and the lumen of the tube allows a mustard seed to pass through it. It is provided with an annular projection just at the central part. Caraka[2] says that

---

[1] वस्तेरुत्तरसङ्ग्रस्यविधिं वक्ष्याम्यतःपरं ॥
चतुर्दशाङ्गुलं नेत्रमातुराङ्गुल सम्मितम् ।
मालतीपुष्पदण्डाग्रं छिद्रं सर्षप निर्गमम् ॥
मेढ्रायामसमं केचिदिच्छन्ति खलु तद्विदः ।
स्नेह प्रमाणं परमं कुक्षयाव प्रकीर्त्तितः ॥
पञ्चविंशादधोमात्रां विदध्याद् वृद्धिकल्पिताम् ।
निविष्टकर्णिकं मध्ये नारीणां चतुरङ्गुले ॥
मूत्रस्रोतः परीणाहं मुद्ग वा हि दशाङ्गुलं ।
तासामपत्यमार्गे तु निदध्याच्चतुरङ्गुलम् ॥
द्व्यङ्गुलं मूत्रमार्गेतु कन्यानाम्त्वेकमङ्गुलम् ।
विधेयं चाङ्गुलं तासां विधिवद्दक्षते यथा ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxxvii.

[2] पुष्पनेत्रञ्च हैमं स्यात् मूत्रमौत्तरवस्तिकम् ।

it has two projections while Vāgbhaṭa[1] describes three. The bag is to be made of goat's bladder. A probe is first passed into the urethra to examine its condition and then the tube is introduced up to the length of six aṅguli. The bladder which contains the injection and which is tied tightly round the tube, is then compressed to force the fluid into the urethra. The tube of course, varies in size according to the dimensions of the organs of generation.

For the female, the puṣpanetra is described to have the length of ten aṅguli. The projection is at a distance of four aṅguli from the base. The circumference of the tube varies according to the width of the urethral canal. The calibre of the tube allows a moong to pass through it.[2]

जातीपुष्पस्य वृन्तेन समं गोपुच्छसंस्थितम् ।
रौप्यं वा सर्षपच्छिद्रं द्विकर्णं द्वादशाङ्गुलम् ॥ ४९ ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. ix.

[1] आतुराङ्गुलमानेन तन्त्रेवं द्वादशाङ्गुलं ।
वृत्तं गोपुच्छवत् मूल मध्ययोः कृत कर्णिकं ।
सिद्धार्थक प्रवेशार्थं श्लक्ष्णं हेमादि सम्भवं ।
कुन्दाश्वमार सुमनः पुष्पवृन्तोपमं दृढं ।
तस्य वस्तिर्मृदुलघुर्मांसा शुक्तिर्विकल्पा वा ॥
* * * *
नेत्रं दशाङ्गुलं सूक्ष्मप्रवेशश्चतुरङ्गुलं ।
अपत्यमार्गे योज्यं स्याद्द्व्याङ्गुलं मूत्रवर्त्मनि ॥
मूत्रकृच्छ्रविकारेषु बालाना सेकमङ्गुलम् ।
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xix.

[2] पुष्पनेत्र प्रमाणन्तु प्रमदानां दशाङ्गुलम् ।
मूत्रस्रोतः परीणाहं मूत्रस्रोतोऽनुवाहि च ॥
गर्भमार्गे तु नारीणां विधेयं चतुरङ्गुलम् ।
द्व्याङ्गुलं मूत्रमार्गे तु बालाया स्त्वेकमङ्गुलम् ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII, ix

Catheters.

It is curious to find no description of so important an instrument as the catheter. Injections were thrown into the urethra but the tube used was always a straight one, having the length of six aṅguli; so it could not possibly have reached the bladder in the male, and nowhere has the claim been put forward for it to have done so. The tube might have served well for the females. The female catheter of the Greeks, as preserved in the Naples museum, is 0·98 mm. long and is straight throughout (Milne).

In the Atharvaveda Saṁhitā,[1] however, we find a hymn, unmistakably alluding to the use of catheter in ancient times.

Against obstruction of urine with a rod.

"This hymn is intended to be 'used in a rite for regulating the flow of urine'. The reed implies some primitive form of a fistual urinaria, the vastiyantra (one of the nāḍīyantrāni) of the late physicians—who however do not appear to have made frequent uses of it".

* * * * * *

6. What in thine entrails, thy (two) groins, what in thy bladder has flowed together—so be thy urine released, out of thee with a splash! all of it. (In the groin are two vessels located in the two sides affording access to the receptacle of urine).

7. I split up thy urinator, like the weir of a tank—so be thy urine released, out of thee, with a splash! all of it.

8. Unfastened (be) thy bladder orific, like that of a water-

[1] Book 1. 3. Whitney's translations and annotations.

holding sea—so be thy urine released, out of thee, with a splash! all of it.

9. As the arrow flew forth, let loose from the bow,—so be thy urine released, out of thee, with a splash! all of it".

2. Tubular Instruments for the Vagina.

Similarly injections were thrown into the vagina. The vaginal tube should be thicker than the urethral tube and in circumference should be equal to that of the little finger. It should be introduced into the vaginal canal up to a distance of four aṅguli, whereas into the urethra, the tube was allowed to enter up to a distance of two aṅguli only in the adults and of one aṅguli only in the girls.[1]

3. The Uterine Tubes.

The uttara-vasti comprises the urethral syringe—male and female—and the vaginal and uterine clysters. No distinct uterine tube is described in the text books. But Suśruta[2] says

---

[1] द्वादशाङ्गुलकं नेत्रं मध्ये च कृतकर्णिकम्।
मालतिपुष्पदत्ताभच्छिद्रं सर्षपनिर्गमम्॥
* * * *
स्त्रीणां कनिष्टिकास्थूलं नेत्रं कुर्याद्द्वयाङ्गुलम्।
सुखप्रवेश्यं योज्यच्च योन्यन्तश्चतुरङ्गुलम्॥
द्व्यङ्गुलं मूत्रमार्गे च सूक्ष्मं नेत्रं नियोजयेत्।
मूत्रकृच्छ्रविकारेषु बालानामेकमङ्गुलम्॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, III. vii.
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. ii.

[2] उर्द्ध्वजान्वे स्त्रिये दद्यदुत्तानायै विचक्षणः।
कल्पतरस्य कण्ठाये दद्यात् सुखद पीड़ितं।
विकर्णिकेन नेत्रेन दद्याद्योनिमुखं प्रति।
गर्भोद्धव विघट्टार्थं स्नेहेन द्विगुणेन तु।
अप्रत्यागच्छति भिषक् वस्तावुत्तरसंश्रिते।

that to apply uttara-vasti to a female, she is advised to lie supine, keeping her knees flexed and well raised. For a girl the quantity of injection is one prasṛta.

To purify the uterine cavity, apply a clyster of twice the quantity of oleaginous medicines, inside the vagina by means of a tube having three rings. If after the application, the oily medicine does not flow out, then apply a second clyster containing medicines of the group called śodhana or purifiers, into the rectum; or let the clever surgeon introduce a probe into the space of the clyster; or press under her navel deeply by his closed fist. As the object of the injection is to clean the cavity of the uterus, there can be no doubt that a uterine tube is referred to in the passage. Again the precautions recommended if the injections do not come back easily, point to a uterine tube to have been used, for injections into the vagina can not be delayed in coming out. The Hindu writers often confounded the intra-uterine and urethral injections with the vaginal clyster. Caraka[1] says: "The uttra-vasti is to be used for the females during the period of menstruation, for then the uterus, being in a condition fit for impregnation, has its mouth open and so can easily be reached by the injection." This shows that uterine medication to be the object aimed at by the clyster.

भूयो वस्तिं विदध्यातु संयुक्तं शोधनैर्गणैः।
गुदे वस्तिं निदध्याद्वा शोधनद्रव्य संभृतं।
प्रवेशाद्वा मतिमान्वस्तिद्वारमथैषणीम्।
पीड़येद्वाप्यधोनाभेर्बलेनोत्तरमुष्टिना।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxxvii.

[1] स्त्रीणाञ्चार्त्तवकाले तु प्रतिकर्म्म तदाचरेत्।
गर्भासना सुखं स्नेहं तदादत्ते ह्यपाहता॥
गर्भं योनिस्तदा शीघ्रं जिते रुद्धाति मारुते॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. ix.

The Greeks were no better, for Milne also complains: "It is difficult to separate ancient descriptions of injections into the vagina from those into the uterus, for the terms for the two parts are frequently interchangeable." Again he says: "It is probable that at other times under the heading of 'injections of the bladder', only irrigation of the urethra is meant".[1]

18. Tubular Instruments for Inhalations and Fumigations.

The tubes for smoking were made, like the vasti tubes, of various metals, or glass or wood. Caraka[2] describes it as a straight tube having three pouches. The end of the tube is equal in diameter to that of a plum seed. Śārṅgadhara[3] adds that a reed or bamboo pipe will also serve the purpose. It is described as a straight tube, the broad base of which admits the patient's thumb while the narrow end, a plum seed. Suśruta[4] describes the base

---

[1] Graeco-Roman Surgical Instruments, P. 107-8.

[2] चतुर्विंशतिकं नेत्रं स्वङ्गुलीभिर्विरेचने ।
द्वाविंशदङ्गुलं स्नेहे प्रयोगे चार्द्धमिष्यते ॥
ऋजुर्विकोषफलितं कोलास्थ्यग्रप्रमाणितम् ।
वस्तिनेत्र समद्रव्यं धूमनेत्रं प्रशस्यते ॥ १६

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

[3] धूमनाड़ी भवेत्तत्र त्रिखण्डा च त्रिपर्विका ॥ १०
कनीष्ठिका परीणाह्या राजमाषागमान्तरा ।
धूमनाड़ी भवेद्दीर्घा शमने रोगिणोऽङ्गुलैः ॥ ११
चत्वारिंशन्मितैस्तद्वद्वाविंशद्भिर्मृदौ मृता ।
तीक्ष्णे चतुर्विंशतिभिः कासघ्ने षोड़शोन्मितैः ॥ १२
दशाङ्गुलिर्वामनीये तथास्यादव्रणनाड़िका ।
कलायमण्डलस्थूला कुलत्थागमरन्ध्रका ॥ १३

Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā, III. ix.

[4] तत्र वस्तिनेत्रद्रव्यैर्धूमनेत्रद्रव्याणि व्याख्यातानि भवन्ति । धूमनेत्रस्तु कनिष्ठिका परिणाहसमेन कलायमात्रं स्रोतोमुखेऽङ्गुष्ठपरिणाहं धूमवर्त्तिं प्रवेश्य स्रोतोऽङ्गुलान्यष्ट चत्वारिंशत् प्रायोगिके । द्वाविंशत् स्नेहने । चतुर्विंशतिर्विरेचने । षोड़शाङ्गुलं कासघ्ने वामनीये च ।

and end of the tube to be equal in circumference to that of the thumb and little finger respectively. The orifice should allow a common pea to pass easily through the tube. Vāgbhaṭa[1] says that there are three pouches or dilatations of the tube, shaped like the half-open buds at equal distances from each other. The tube is supposed to consist of four equal parts. The first pouch is located at the end of the first part, the second and third pouches at the ends of the second and third parts respectively. Cakradatta[2] also describes it similarly.

Dṛḍhabala[3] mentions another method of inhalation. He makes a paste of the medicines prescribed and smears it on a piece of silk cloth. This is then to be rolled round like a wick. This wick is to be dipped in ghee before use, and fire lit at one end, while the patient is to smoke it through the other end.

एते अपि कोलास्थिमात्र च्छिद्रे भवतः। व्रणनेत्रमष्टाङ्गुलं व्रणधूपनार्थं कलायपरिमण्डलं कुलत्थवाह्नि स्रोत इति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xl.

[1] वस्ति नेत्र सम द्रव्यं विकोषं कारयेद्भिषक्।
मूलाग्रेष्वङ्गुष्ट कोलास्थि प्रवेशं धूमनेत्रकं।
तीक्ष्ण स्नेहन मध्येषु त्रीणि चत्वारि पञ्च च।
अङ्गुलीनां क्रमात् पातुः प्रमाणे नाटकानि तत् ॥ ६ ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxi.

[2] ऋजुचिकोषफलितं कोलास्थ्यग्रप्रमाणितम्।
वस्तिनेत्रसमद्रव्यं धूमनेत्रं प्रशस्यते।
साङ्गुलांशयुतः पूर्णोऽस्य प्रायोगिकादिषु।
नेत्रे कासहरे तंशहीनः श्रेष्ठे दशाङ्गुलः॥

Cakradatta, Dhūmapānādhikāra.

[3] प्रपुण्डरीकं मधुकं शार्ङ्गेष्टां समनःशिलाम्।
सरिचं पिप्पलीं द्राक्षामेलां सुरसमञ्जरीम्॥
कृत्वा वर्तिं पिबेद्धूमं घौतचेलानुवर्तिताम्।
घृताक्तामनु च क्षीरं गुडोदकमथापिबा॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxii.

Both Caraka[1] and Śārṅgadhara[2] advise us to make tubes of medicines, the fumes of which are advised to be smoked in the following manner:—Powder the medicaments and make a paste; measure one karsa; take a smooth reed (Saccharum sara, Rox.) twelve aṅguli long. Apply the paste round the reed, for a length of eight aṅguli. Dry it in shade. Remove the reed, leaving a dried tube of the paste. When required for smoking, light one end of the tube with a burning wick and smoke through the other end.

Caraka[3] describes another inhaler, which consists of two earthen basins (soraba) placed upon each other, their edges being pasted with flour. The upper one is perforated at the centre for the reception of one end of the tube, the patient puts the other

---

[1] पिष्ट्वा लिम्पेच्छरेषीकां तां वर्त्तिं यवसन्निभां ।
अङ्गुष्ठसम्मितां कुर्य्यादष्टाङ्गुलसमां भिषक् ॥
शुष्कां निगर्भां तां वर्त्तिं धूमनेत्रार्पितां नरः ।
स्नेहाक्तमग्निसंयुष्टां पिबेत् प्रायोगिकीं सुखाम् ॥ ६ ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

[2] अथेषिकां प्रक्षिपेच्च सुश्लक्ष्णां द्वादशाङ्गुलाम् ।
धूमद्रव्यस्य कल्केन लेपयाष्टाङ्गुलः स्मृतः ॥
कल्कं कर्षमितं लिप्त्वा क्वाथ्य शुष्कञ्च कारयेत् ।
इषिकामपनीयाथ स्नेहाक्तां वर्त्तिमादरात् ॥
अङ्गारैर्दीपितां कृत्वा धृत्वा नेत्रस्य रन्ध्रके ।
वदनेन पिबेद्धूमं वदनेनैव संत्यजेत् ॥
नासिकाभ्यां ततः पीत्वा मुखेनैव वमेत् सुधीः ।

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. ix.

[3] मधूच्छिष्टं सर्ज्जरसं घृतं मञ्जकसंपुटे ।
कृत्वा धूमं पिबेच्छृङ्गं बालं वा स्नायु वा गवाम् ॥
श्लेष्णाकवर्द्धमानानां नाडीं शुष्कां कुशस्य वा ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxi.

end into his mouth for inhalation. The lower pot contains glowing charcoal of catechu (Accacia catechu. Linn.) wood, over which are put pills of necessary medicines. The tube is from eight to ten aṅguli long.[1] This inhaler is intended for phthisical subjects. It is useful for allaying cough and exciting emesis. This instrument is called *mallaka samputa* or *sorāba samputa* or a pair of earthen basins. In such an apparatus Caraka recommends us to put powders of cow's horn, hairs, nerves and ligaments, besides other medicines. Suśruta[2], Vāgbhaṭa[3] and Cakradatta[4] also describe it. Śārṅgadhara[5] however reserves this instrument for fumigating wounds only.

The length of the pipe will vary according to the different kinds of smoking prescribed by the physician. There are five kinds of smoking narrated :—

1. Śamana, madhya, proyogika—medium.
2. Briṁhana, snehana, mṛdu —mild.

---

[1] दशाङ्गुलोन्मितां नाड़ीं अथवाष्टाङ्गुलोन्मिताम् ।
शरावसंपुटच्छिद्रे कृत्वा जिह्मां विचक्षणः ॥
वैरेचनं सुखेनैव कासवान् धूममापिबेत् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxii.

[2] इतरयोर्व्यपेत धूमोद्गार स्थिरे समाहिते शरावे प्रक्षिप्य वर्त्तिं मूलच्छिद्रेणान्येन शरावेण पिधाय तस्मिन्छिद्रे नेवमूलं संयोज्य धूममासेवेत ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xl.

[3] शराव सम्पुटच्छिद्रे नाड़ी न्यस्य दशाङ्गुलां ।
अष्टाङ्गुलां वा वक्त्रेण कासवान् धूममापिबेत् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxi.

[4] अथवा सघृतान् शक्तून् कृत्वा मल्लिकासम्पुटे ।
नवप्रतिश्यायवतां धूमं वैद्यः प्रयोजयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Nāsāroga Cikitsā.

[5] See foot-note 2. P. 145.

3. Recana, śodhana, tīkṣna — strong.
4. Kāsaghna — anti-cough.
5. Vāmana — emetic.

So the length of the tube would vary thus—

1. Caraka.[1]

	Aṅguli.
In strong smoking	24
„ medium „	32
„ mild „	96

2. Suśruta.[2]

In medium smoking	48
„ oleaginous „	32
„ brain-sedative „	24
„ anti-cough or emetic „	16

3. Vāgbhaṭa.[3]

In strong smoking	24
„ medium „	32
„ mild „	40

4. Śārṅgadhara.[4]

In medium smoking	40
„ mild „	32
„ strong „	24
„ anti-cough „	16
„ emetic or wound-fumigation	10

FUMIGATION.

Similarly wounds are said to be purified by suitable medicinal fumigation. In the purification of wounds by fumigation, we get a glimpse of the antiseptic method of treatment in its

[1] See foot-note 2. P. 140.
[2] See foot-note 4. P. 140.
[3] See foot-note 1. P. 141.
[4] See foot-note 3. P. 140.

embroyonic form. Suśruta[1] recommeds the tube to be eight aṅguli long and to have the circumference of a common pea; and its orific should be of the size of a kulattha (Dolichos biflorus, Linn.). The fumes of medicated substances from the inside of any closed pot containing fire, pass out through the tube and are allowed to play on any sore to purify it. For this purpose two earthen pots—sorāba samputa—may conveniently be used as before. Śārṅgadhara[2] uses a tube ten anguli long and recommends us to use Nimba leaves (Azadirachta Indica) for wound-fumigation. As another instance of the application of the principles of antiseptic methods to practical therapeutics, we may mention the use of medicinal injections into the cavity of the uterus to rectify its morbid conditions.[3]

A similar instrument was used to fumigate the uterus and vagina in various diseases of these parts. "Fumigation", says Suśruta,[4] "is to be applied to the vagina by burning the

---

[1] व्रणनेत्रमष्टाङ्गुलं व्रणधूपनार्थमकलायपरिमण्डलं कुलत्थवाह्निस्रोतश्चेति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xl.

स चौषधसर्पिर्भिर्धूपनाद्वैद्यधूपयेत् ।

Ibid. IV. i.

[2] दशाङ्गुलिर्वामनीये तथास्याद् व्रणनाड़िका ।
कलाय मण्डलस्थूला कुलत्थागमरन्ध्रका ॥१३

* * *

शरावसम्पुटे क्षिप्त्वा कल्कमङ्गारदीपितम् ॥१७
छिद्रे नेत्रं निवेश्याथ व्रणस्थेनैव धूपयेत् ।

* * *

व्रणे निम्बवचाद्यैश्च धूपनं संप्रशस्यते ।

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. ix.

[3] See foot note 2, P. 1318.

[4] सर्भसङ्गे तु योनिं धूपयेत् व्रणसर्पनिर्मोकेण पिण्डीतकेनवा ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. x.

slough of a snake (Bungarus) or pinditaka (?) wood, in cases of obstructed delivery of the fætus. Caraka[1] mentions fumigation of the vagina by burning Bhurjapatra (Betula Bhojpatra), glass, precious stones and the slough of a snake as one of the means for removing the placenta. To remove the after pains and difficulty in micturition and defæcation, Suśruta[2] advises us to fumigate the vagina. He recommends fumigation of the uterus with purifying medicines. In fumigating these parts, the Hindu surgeons desired a local action, and did not share in the belief, held by some of the Greek gynæcologists[3] that "the uterus was an animal within the body which could wander about, being attracted by pleasant smells and repelled by disagreeable smells".[4] The Arabs also did not believe uterus to be an animal. This method of treatment was well known to the Greeks; for Hippocrates[5] writes that "fumigation with aromatics promotes menstruation and would be useful in many other cases, if it did not occasion heaviness of the head". He "directs us to take a vessel which holds about four gallons and fit a lid to it so that no vapour can escape from it. Pierce a hole in the lid, and into this aperture force a reed about a cubit in length so that the vapour connot escape along the outside of

---

[1] भूर्ज्जपचकाचमणि सर्पनिर्म्मोकैर्यासा योणिं धूपयेत्।

Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

[2] कटुकालाबुकृतवेधन सर्षप सर्पनिर्म्मोकैर्व्वा कटुतैलविमिश्रैर्योनिमुखं धूपयेत्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. x.

[3] Aretæus. Morb. Acut. ii. 11.
Plato's Timeas.

[4] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments. P. 158.
Adan's Commentary on Paulus Æginета, Vol. I. Bk. ii. P. 636-37.

[5] See also in the Hippocratic treatises, as Nat. Mul. vii, 9; 1 Morb. Mul. ovii. 1; II Morb. Mul. xl. 20, 21; Steril. vi. 3; Superfœt. ix. 3, x. 9, II.

the reed. The cover is then fixed on the vessel with clay."[1] Oribasius[2] and Soranus[3] used similar instruments for the purpose.

Disinfection of Rooms, Clothes, etc.

Caraka[4] says that if peacock's feather, bones of vaka bird, white mustard and red sandal wood, well powdered and mixed with ghee, be used in fumigation, the poison of a room, beddings, seats and clothes, is got rid of. Śārṅgadhara[5] advises us to disinfect a sick room by the fumes caused by burning the following substances with ghee : peacock's feather, Nim leaves (Melia Azadirachta), Vrihati, pepper, asafœtida, Jotāmāṁsī (Nardostachys jotamansi), seeds of Sālmalī (Bombax malabaricum), goat's hair, slough of a serpent, cat's fæces and ivory. Suśruta[6] advises fumigation of a sick room for a surgical patient for

---

[1] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments P. 159.

[2] Coll. x.xix.

[3] Soranus. xxiii.

[4] शिखिवर्हबलाकास्थीनि सर्षपाश्चन्दने च घृतयुक्तः।
धूमो गृहशयनासनवस्त्रादिषु शस्यते विषनुत् ॥५८॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxv.

[5] मयूरपिच्छं निम्बस्य पत्राणि हृहतीफलम्।
मरिचं हिङ्गु मांसी च बीजं कार्पाससम्भवम्॥
छागरोमाहिनिर्म्मोकं विष्ठा बैड़ालिकी तथा।
गजदन्तस्य तच्चूर्णं किञ्चिद्घृत विमिश्रितम्।
गेहेषु धूपनं दत्तं सर्व्वन्बालग्रहान्नयेत्।
पिशाचान् राक्षसञ्जित्वा सर्व्वज्वरहरो भवेत्॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. ix.

[6] सर्षपारिष्टपत्राभ्यां सर्पिषा लवणेन च।
हिरण्ड कारयेद्धूपं दशरात्रमतन्द्रितः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xix.

ten days, morning and evening, after the operation has been performed.

15. Tubular Instrument for Cupping.

Generally cow's horn is recommended for the purpose. It is eighteen aṅguli long, its base, forming the mouth of the instrument, is three aṅguli wide (Vāgbhaṭa).[1] It is conical in shape and the cone is said to be either curved or straight. The other end is pointed and perforated to the extent of allowing a mustard seed to pass through it. The narrow end, however, is made to assume the shape of a woman's nipple by winding thread round it. This facilitates the operation of suction by the mouth of a surgeon when the broad end is placed against any diseased area of the patient's body. Suśruta[2] mentions its use in blood-extraction. For extracting bood, the part must be scarified before its application ; and to facilitate the operation, the part should be fomented (Yogaratnākara).[3] After suction, the horn is to be covered by a piece of cloth or a small bladder of animals.

Vāllūki[4] describes the śṛṅga thus :—"It is the horn of a white cow, half-moon shaped and seven aṅguli broad. The orifice

---

[1] वाङ्गुलास्यं भवेच्छृङ्गं चूषणेऽष्टादशाङ्गुलं।
अग्रेसिद्धार्थकच्छिद्रं सुनम्बचुचुकाकृति॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhita, I. xxv.

[2] तवप्रच्छिते तनुवस्त्रपटलावनद्धेन शृङ्गेन शोणितमवसेचयेदाचूषणात्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xiii.

[3] स्वेदं विदध्यात्कुशलस्य नाड्या शृङ्गेन रक्तं बहुशः हरेच्च।

Yogaratnākara Arbuda cikitsā.

[4] विषाणः श्वेतगोरिन्दूचक्रं सप्ताङ्गुलायतम्।
छिन्नान्तः पिचुपेशिकं योज्य वातयुतेऽस्रजि।
अङ्गुष्टे मूलवन्मूले छिद्रमग्रेऽस्य मुद्गवत्।

Vāllūki quoted in Nibandha Saṁgraha, I. xiii.

at the base is equal in circumference to that of the base of the thumb, while the end which is perforated admits a moong. This orifice at the end is closed by a wick of cotton". Cakrapāṇidatta says that the horn should be three aṅguli long, and its orifice should be of the size of the stalk of an oleander flower.

Suśruta mentions a peculiar use of the horn[1]: the extraction of an insect, cerumen, etc. from the middle ear by means of a horn or a probe. The horn was evidently used as an apparatus for suction, and Suśruta describes suction as one of the methods of extracting śalya from the body[2]. Caraka[3] uses horns and leeches to extract venom from a snake-bite; and Suśruta also refers to it. Besides the horns and cupping glasses, suction used to be accomplished by the surgeon's mouth.

Similarly Paul[4] says that foreign bodies may be sucked out from the ears with a reed.

On the method of suction as a mode of treatment, Erichsen[5] says:— "In former days, when duels with the small swords were of frequent occurrence, persons called "suckers" who were often the drummers of a regiment, were employed to attend the wounded combatants. This treatment which was conducted with a certain degree of mystery, consisted in sucking the wound till all blood ceased be flow, and then applying a pellet of chewed

---

[1] कर्णच्छिद्रे वर्त्तमानं कीटं क्लेदमलादि वा।
शृङ्गेणापहरेद्वीमानथवापि शलाकया।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xxi.

[2] See foot-note 3. P. 108.

[3] दंशं वा चुषेन्मुखेन यवचूर्णं पांशुपूर्णेन।
प्रच्छन् वैधजलौकः शृङ्गैः स्राव्यं ततो रक्तम्॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxv.

[4] Paul. VI, xxiv. and III, xxiii.

[5] Erichsen's Surgery, Vol. 1. p. 341.

paper or a piece of wet linen to the orifice; in this way it would appear that many sword thursts traversing the limbs were healed in a few days. The process of suction cleared the wound thoroughly of all blood, and drawing the sides into close apposition, placed the parts in the most favourable condition possible for union by primary adhesion. This practice might, perhaps, in many cases advantageously imitated in the present day by means of a cupping glass and syringe".

We also find Suśruta[1] describing a vasti yantra in the treatment of snake-bite. The tube is open at both ends, one end is applied to the part bitten by the snake, while to the other end the surgeon puts his mouth to suck out the poison. So this vasti yantra may be compared to the modern aspiration syringe.

Cupping instrumunts of metal or horn are still used by the Arabs in Kordofan and Sir R. Pasha[2] suggests that cupping is possibly borrowed by the west from the "most perfect physicians" the Arab. But now we are confident that the credit is due to the Hindus.

ALĀBU YANTRA.

Alābu or gourd is described to be made of the bark of the succulent fruit called alābu (Lagenarea Vulgaris). The pulp is scraped away and the bark is allowed to dry. Such a bark should be selected which is twelve and eighteen aṅguli in length and circumference respectively. Its mouth should be circular and should have a diameter of three or four aṅguli. A fire is to be lit inside it by burning a strip of dry cloth to produce a vacuum, and the

---

[1] प्रतिपूर्य्य मुखं वस्तेर्हितमाचूषणं भवेत्।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, V. v.

[2] *Vide* Third Report, Wellcome research laboratory at Gordon. P. 316.

instrument to be applied instantly to the intended part of the patient's body. It should be thus used to drain blood and phlegm from the body (Vāgbhaṭa[1]). In modern times cupping glasses are used for like purposes in a similar manner.

Vāllūki[2] describes the alābu yantra thus :—"The mouth of the instrument is well formed and has the diameter of four aṅguli. The body has the circumference of eight aṅguli and is well smeared with a paste of black mud. It is used for drawing out blood". In yogaratnākara[3], śṛṅga and alābu are directed to be used for extraction of blood from accidental wounds. Caraka mentions the use of alābu for blood-extraction[4].

Another instrument known as the ghaṭī yantra was used exactly in the same way[5]. It is said to consist of a brass pot

---

[1] सार्द्धादशाङ्गुलोऽलाबुर्नाहे त्वष्टा दशाङ्गुलः।
चतुरङ्गुल इत्तासो दीर्घोऽन्तः श्लेष्मरक्तहृत्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[2] अष्टाङ्गुलपरीणाहा चतुरङ्गुलनालसम्मिता सुमुखी कृष्णमृदालिप्ता तनुः श्रेष्ठा रक्तावसेचनेऽलाबुरिति।

Vāllūki quoted in Nibandha Saṁgraha I. xiii.

सान्तर्दीपयाऽलाब्वा।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xiii.

[3] छिन्ने भिन्ने तथा विद्धे क्षते सद्यो भिषग्वरः।
पट्टसूत्रेण संस्वेद्यं व्रणं व्रणविशारदः॥
सुहृसुहुर्यथा दुःखं ना प्राप्नोति व्रणी नरः।
अथवा दीप्यलवणपोटल्या स्वेदयेत्सुहुः॥
सन्तप्तया तप्तलोहपात्रसंयोगतः क्रमात्।
दुष्टं रक्तं स्थितं चापि शृङ्गालाब्वादिभिर्हरेत्॥

Quoted in Yogaratnākara.

[4] रुधिरागमार्थमथवा शृङ्गालाबुभिराहरेत् रक्तम्—

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. vii.

[5] तद्वदघटीछिद्रा गुदे विलयोन्नमने च सा।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

which is still used commonly in India by all classes of people for drinking purposes. A fire should be lit inside as before and the ghaṭī applied to the surface of the body covered by a piece of cloth. It soon becomes firmly fixed and is thus used to raise abdominal tumours by means of it for purposes of correct diagonosis and also to effect its cure by subsidence. It is still used by the common people for the same ends.

Caraka[1] says:—"After the abdominal tumour has been relaxed or softened a little by fomentation and oleaginous application, it is to be covered by a piece of cloth. Then inside a small ghaṭī, a fire is to be lit by burning kuśa and other forms of grasses; the pot is then to be inverted and pressed over the part covered by the cloth. By this way, the tumour would be drawn upwards *i,e.* be made prominent. The ghaṭī is then to be taken away and after removing the cloth, and examining the extent of the tumour, it is to be incised. The different shapes of the incisions are called vimārga, ajapada and ādarśa. After incision, the tumour is to be pressed and rubbed with fingers. But the intestines and the heart must not be touched."

The extraction of blood by means of cups, has been practised from remote antiquity. It is interesting to note that both the Latin and Greek terms—*cucurbitula* and σικυα signify a gourd;

---

[1] स्निग्धस्विन्नशरीराय गुल्मे शैथिल्यमागते ॥
परिवेष्य प्रदीप्तांस्तु वल्वजानथवा कुशान्।
भिषक् कुम्भे समावाप्य गुल्मं घटमुखं क्षिपेत् ॥
स गृहीतो यदा गुल्मस्तदा घटमथोद्धरेत्।
वस्त्रान्तं ततः कृत्वा भिन्दादगुल्मप्रमाणवित् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. v.

and we know that Alābu also means a gourd. It is curious that the instrument should have been known to the ancient Hindus and Greeks by the same name.

Prosper Alpinus[1] (16th century) who wrote a book on the state of medicine in Egypt in his time, gives drawings of cupping horns he saw there. The horns were those of young bulls, highly polished, with a small hole at the top, by which the air was extracted by suction. To close the orifice a small tab of parchment was taken into the mouth and affixed by the tongue. The Egyptians also used cupping glasses, by suction and not by fire, a method evidently unknown to them.

Hero of Alexandria (B. C. 285—222) describes an interesting form of cup. Milne summarises his account thus:[2]—"The figure shows a cup of ordinary flattened form, divided into two by a diaphragm. Two tubes pass through the fundus, one passing through the diaphragm, the other not. Each of the tube is fitted with another which is open at its inner end but closed at its outer end and provided with a small cross bar to rotate it. Each of these sets of tubes is perforated by small openings. In the case of the short tubes, these are outside the cup, in the case of the long tube they are inside the cup, in the chamber shut off by the diaphragm. By rotating the piston these openings can be placed in apposition or not at will, thus forming valves. Open valve A by placing the hole in apposition. Close valve B by turning the holes away from each other. The inner chamber of the cup is now shut off except for the small hole A. Apply the mouth to the valve A, and suck the air out of the chamber. Close valve A. Apply the cup to the affected part. The advantage

[1] De Med. Aegyptiorum. Ed. 1541 lib. ii. ch. xii. p. 139.

[2] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments. P. 104.

of this arrangement is that the affected part is not directly sucked upon by the mouth ; and the instrument is therefore more pleasant for the operator to use".

Celsus[1] thus describes the different kinds of cups :—"There are two kinds of cups, bronze and horn. The bronze is open at one end and closed at the other; the horn, open at one end, as in the previous case, has at the other end, a small foramen. Into the bronze kind, burning lint is placed, and then the mouth is fitted on and pressed until it sticks. The horn is placed empty on the body, and then by that part where the small foramen is, the air is exhausted by the mouth, and the cavity is closed off above with wax and it adheres in the same way as before. Either may advantageously be constructed, not only of these varieties of materials but of another substance. If other things are not to be had, a small cup or a narrow mouthed jar will answer the purpose. When it has fastened on, if the skin has previously been cut with a scalpel, it extracts blood ; but if it be entire, air".

Paul[2] remarks that "those which are made with longer necks and broader bellies are possessed of a strong power of attraction." Both Oribasius[3] and Aretaeus[4] allude to them. Antyllus says that there are three materials of which cups are made—glass, horns, and bronze. A good number of such cups occur in the Naples, British and Scottish National Museums.

---

[1] Celsus. II. xi.
[2] Paulus Ægineta. VI. xii.
[3] Med. Coll. VII. xvi.
[4] De Morb. Acut. I. 10.

Albucasis[1] gives a full account of dry cupping. In applying the instrument he advises us either to create a flame in it, or to fill it with hot water. He gives drawings of various instruments of cupping. Rhases speaks of applying a glass or a cupping instrument to draw off blood after leeching. The other Arabians give little additional information.

In modern times, cupping glasses are used in the same way as before.

V. Śalākā or Rods.

The rods, or pricker-like instruments, or probes are described to be of various kinds and are recommended to be used for various purposes[2]; so their length and circumference would vary according to some special uses required of them. Suśruta[3] says: "There are two kinds of śalākā with their ends shaped like the head of the earthworm. They are used for probing abscesses and sinuses.

Two śalākā have their ends shaped like the wing of an arrow. These are to be used for raising any part for the purpose,

---

[1] Albucasis, Chirrug. ii. 98.

[2] नाड़ीव्रणान् शल्यगर्भानुष्माग्र्युत्सङ्गिनः शनैः।
करीरबालाङ्गुलिभिरिवस्था वैषयेद्भिषक्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[3] शलाकायन्त्राण्यपि नाना प्रकाराणि नाना प्रयोजनानि यथायोगपरिणाहदीर्घाणि च तेषां गण्डूपदशरपुङ्खसर्पफण वड़ीशमुखे द्वे द्वे एषण व्यूहनचालनाहरणार्थमुपदिश्येते। मसूरदलमात्रमुखे द्वे किञ्चिदानताग्रे स्रोतोगतशल्योद्धरणार्थे। षट्कार्पासकृतोष्णीषाणि प्रमार्जन क्रियासु। त्रीणि दर्व्याकृतीनि खड्गमुखानि चौषधप्रणिधानार्थे। तीक्ष्णन्यानि जाम्बवदनानि तीक्ष्णतुण्डवदनानि षड़वाग्निकर्म्मस्वभिप्रेतानि। नासार्बुदहरणार्थमेकं कोलास्थिदलमात्रमुखं खड्गतीक्ष्णोष्ठं। अर्शनार्थमेकं कलायपरिमण्डलमुभयतो मुकुलाग्रं। मूत्रमार्गविशोधनार्थमेकं मालतीपुष्पदलाग्रप्रमाणपरिमण्डलमिति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

after incision, of extracting any foreign body from it. Others assign to them the function of bringing together the lips of the wound caused by an abscess being opened and emptied.

Two śalākā have their ends shaped like the hood of a snake. They are useful for transferring any material from one part to another. Some of the simple probes used by the ancient Greek and Roman surgeons carried a single or double snake of Æsculapius at one end. But evidently it was meant as an ornamentation and served no useful purpose.

Two śalākā have their ends shaped like a fish-hook but are blunt. They are used for extracting any extraneous material from the muscles or bones".

The last six kinds of Suśruta are practically the same as the six śaṅku of Vāgbhaṭa,[1] which are the following :—

The śaṅku are six in number. Amongst these, two are twelve and sixteen aṅguli long respectively. They are used for the purpose of raising a foreign body upwards from the wound.

Two varieties have their ends shaped like the hood of a snake. They are ten and twelve aṅguli long ; and they are used for the purpose of moving a foreign body in the wound in all directions.

Two varieties have the shape of a fish-hook—the ends resembling the stem of an arrow. These are used for the extraction of foreign bodies from the wound.

---

[1] शङ्कव: षड्भी तेषां षोड़शद्वादशाङ्गुली ।
व्यूहने ऽहि फणावक्त्रौ दीर्घौ द्वादश दशाङ्गुली ॥
चालने शरपुङ्खाग्रौ बाहार्थे वड़िशाकृति: ॥२५

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxv.

Suśruta[1] mentions another pair of śalākā which have their ends shaped like a masūra pulse, and slightly curved ; these are used for the purpose of extracting a foreign body from the external outlets of the body such as mouth, nose, etc. They are eight and nine aṅguli long respectively.

Swab Probes.

Six śalākā are used for the purpose of wiping out the principal excretory canals of the body *viz.*, rectum, nose and ears.[2] Their ends are covered with cotton like a head-dress (pāgḍī). The two śalākā intended for the rectum, have the lengths of ten and twelve aṅguli respectively for short and long distances. So the two varieties of probes for the ears are eight and nine aṅguli long, while the other two kinds of probes for the nose are six and seven aṅguli long respectively. Some commentators are of opinion that these six śalākā are meant for clearing abscesses.

For similar purposes the Greek and Roman surgeons used the spathomele or spatula probe. Priscianus[3] writes: "First of all we must frequently wipe away the clots of blood from the nose

---

[1] See foot note 2, P. 155.

उभेगण्डपदमुखे स्रोतस्यः शल्यहारिणी।
मसूरदलवक्त्रे द्वे सप्ताता मष्टनवाङ्गुले ॥२४

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxv.

[2] कार्पास विहितोष्णीषाः शलाकाः षट्प्रमार्जने।
पायावासान्न दूरार्थे द्वे दश द्वादशाङ्गुले।
द्वे षट् सप्ताङ्गुले घ्राणे द्वे कर्णेऽष्टनवाङ्गुले ॥२८॥

Ibid.

[3] Priscianus, xiv.

with the end of a spathomele wrapped on the 'berry' with soft wool, and then occlude it by plugging with wool in the same way."

The use of probes, having the ends wrapped with wool, for wiping out discharge of pus from the ears of horse, is mentioned by Jayadatta Suri[1] in his Treatment of Horses.

Spoon-shaped Probes.

Three probes are described to have their ends shaped like a khala or mortar with a conical cavity, and so they resemble a spoon. They are to be used for the purpose of applying caustic solutions, etc.[2]

Similarly cyathiscomele, which is a variety of spathomele in which the spatula is replaced by a spoon, is said to have been used by the Greek surgeons to mix, measure and apply medicaments. The specimens of these instruments occur in the Naples Museum. Sometimes the edge of the spoon is sharp and is recommended to be used as a curette. Serivonius Largus directs us to use the spoon of an ear specillum for the application of caustics to hæmorrhoids.

---

[1] पूयस्रावेण जानीयात् शोथमभ्यन्तरोद्भवम् ।
पिचुना वेष्टयित्वा तु शलाकायं समाहितः ॥
तेन कर्णान्तरे पूयं कर्षयित्वा विचक्षणः ।
पातितस्य सुवक्त्रस्य पूरयेन्मधुसर्पिषा ॥

Aśvavaidyaka, Ch. 34, v. 2. and 3.

[2] See foot-note 2, P. 155.

Nail-shaped Probes.

Vāgbhaṭa[1] describes three other probes for the same purpose. They are eight aṅguli long; their ends are bent and resemble in size and shape the nails of the third, fourth, and fifth fingers respectively.

Paul[2] mentions a nail-shaped probe in the treatment of bubonecele. But this was applied as a cautery and not for the application of medicaments. Nail-shaped cauteries are also referred to by Hippocrates[3] in the treatment of recurrent dislocation of the shoulder-joint.

Jāmvovauṣṭha Probes.

Three probes are called Jāmvovou-ṣṭha for their ends are shaped like the fruit of Jambul tree (Eugenia jambolanum).[4] Three other śalākā have their ends shaped like aṅkuśa or elephant driver's goad.[5] They may be made of any length required

---

[1] अष्टाङ्गुला निम्नमुखा लिख: चारौषध क्रमे ।
कनीनी-मध्यमाऽनामी-नखमान-समैर्मुखै: ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, VI. lxv.

[3] Hippocrates iii. 15.

[4] See foot-note 2, P. 155.

शलाका जाम्बवीष्टानं चारेऽग्री च पृथक् त्रयं ।
युञ्जात् स्थूलानु द्रीर्घानां,

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[5] See foot-note 2, P. 155.

For the diagram of the aṅkuśa see Fergusson's Tree and Serpent Worship; Plate xxxiii. Sanchi. xxxvii. fig. I. and xxxviii. fig. 1 & 2.

by the surgeon. These six varieties are recommended for the purpose of applying caustic medicaments and the actual cautery.

Paul[1] mentions a gamma-shaped cautery in the radical cure of hernia. This cautery is shaped like the Greek letter Γ; so it resembles the aṅkuśa cautery of the Hindus. The aṅkuśa is similar in appearance to the Greek letter.

One variety, which is used for the purpose of removing a tumour from the interior of the nasal cavity, has its end shaped like a khala or mortar, with sharp edges, and of the size of half the stone of the fruit of the jujube tree (Ziziphus jujuba)[2]. Vāgbhaṭa[3] mentions a similar probe for the purpose of applying actual cautery to a nasal tumour. Its end resembles in shape and size, a half of the stone of the fruit of the jujube tree.

This spoon-shaped probe of the Hindus is comparable to the curette like sharp cyathiscomele of the Greeks, noted before.

Collyrium Probes.

For the purpose of applying collyria to the eyes, a rod is mentioned having the length of eight aṅguli and the thickness of a pea. Its both ends are shaped like buds[4].

The probes for applying collyria to the eyelids, should be six aṅguli long, with a rounded bulbous end. They may be made of gold, or silver, or copper, or iron, or stone. For the habitual use of collyria, a lead probe is prescribed. When medicines are directed

---

[1] Paul, VI. lxii.

[2] See foot-note 2, P. 155.

[3] कोलास्थि दल तुल्या स्या नासार्शोऽर्बुद दाहकृत् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[4] See foot-note 2, P. 155.

to be applied not only to the lids but also to the conjunctiva, the finger is recommended as it is a softer and safer instrument. Again the probes would vary according to the nature of the collyria to be used. As for the application of lekhana collyrium, the probe should be made of copper and should be ten aṅguli long. The probe is advised to be made thinner at its middle to afford a firm grasp by the surgeon. The ends are shaped like buds. For applying ropaṇa collyrium, a similar probe is to be used, but it should be made of steel; while for the application of a collyrium for the improvement of the visual strength, a probe made of gold or silver, and having the size and shape of a finger is recommended by Cakradatta.[1]

Suśruta[2] likes a probe of steel, or bell-metal, or copper for lekhana collyrium; and of gold, or silver, or horn, for ropaṇa and snehana collyria. The probe should be eight aṅguli long, and the eye is to be kept open and fixed by the left hand, while the right hand is to hold the probe, and so the collyrium is to be applied to the eye.

---

[1] दशाङ्गुला तनुर्मध्ये शलाका सुकुलानना ॥
प्रशस्ता लेखने तासी रोपणे काललोहजा ।
अङ्गुलीव सुवर्णोत्था रूप्यजा च प्रसादने ॥

Cakradatta. Āschyotana Cikitsā.

[2] तेषां तुल्यगुणान्येव विदध्याद् भाजनान्यपि ।
सौवर्णं राजतं शाङ्खलोहं वैदूर्यकांस्यजं ॥
आयसानि च योज्यानि शलाकाश्च यथाक्रमं ।
वक्त्रयोर्मुकुलाकारा कलाय परिमण्डला ॥
अष्टाङ्गुला तनुर्मध्ये सुकृता साधुनिग्रहा ।
शीड्यर्थ्यश्मजातानि शारीरी वा हिता भवेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā. VI. xviii.

Śārṅgadhara[1] says: "The collyrium probe should be made of stone or metal. It should be eight aṅguli long and its ends must be made smooth and rounded like a common pea. For lekhana collyrium, a copper, or iron, or stone probe is to be used, while for ropaṇa collyrium the tip of the finger is recommended for its softness."

Of the probes used by the Hindus for applying collyrium to the eyes, fortunately we possess a few specimens. Among the objects of interest found in the excavations at Bijnor, we find, "fourthly, one copper salai or instrument for applying antimony to the eye, similar to those found in the Bihat excavations."[2]

---

[1] मुखयोः कुण्ठिता रूक्षा शलाकाष्ठाङ्गुलोन्मिता।
अश्मजा धातुजा वा स्यात् कलायपरिमण्डला॥
ताम्रलोहाश्मसंजाता शलाका लेखने मता।
सुवर्णरजतोद्भूता शलाका स्नेहने मता।
अङ्गुलीच स्वदुत्वेन कथिता रोपणे बुधैः॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha. III. xiii.
Yogaratnākara. Eye Diseases. P. 823.

त्रिफल सलिलयोगे भृङ्गराजद्रवे च
हविषि च विषकल्के क्षीर आज्ये मधूके।
प्रतिदिनमथ तप्तं सप्तधा सीससैकं
प्रणिहितमथ पथ्यात् कारयेत् तच्छलाकाम्॥
सवितुरुदयकाले साञ्जना व्यञ्जना वा
करकरिकसमेतानर्म्मपैच्छिल्यरोगान्।
असितसित समुत्थान सन्धिवर्त्माभिजातान्
हरति नयनरोगान् सेव्यमाना शलाका।

Cakradatta, Netraroga Cikitsā.

[2] "Vide Princep's (Thomas') Indian Antiquities, fig. 18. pl. iv" J.A.S.B. IX. 1. 7.

Specillum with two olivary ends formed a variety of probe of the Greek and Roman surgeons. It was used as an ordinary probe in dealing with crooked fistulæ, and as a cautery to destroy the roots of hairs after epilation. Sometimes it carried an eye in one of its olives and was used in the treatment of nasal polypus. The eye was threaded with a cord having many knots along it. The other end of the probe was pushed through the nose and withdrawn by the mouth, and then by a sawing movement of the cord with both hands of the surgeon, the polypus was removed.[1] A single probe for the application of semi-solid medicaments, occurs in the outfit of the oculist of Rheims, in the museum at St. Germain-en-Laye and is figured by Milne.[2]

KARṆA-ŚODHANA OR EAR-CLEANER.

This śalākā is said to have its end shaped like the end of a leaf of Aśvattha (Ficus religiosa). The instrument looked like a sruva—one of the famous spoons used in sacrificial ceremony.[3] It was used for the purpose of extracting wax from the ears.

The different kinds of spoons used in the ancient Hindu ceremonies were as follows: "Three different sruk or offering-spoons are used *viz.*, the guhu, upabhrit and drubha. They are made each of a different kind of wood, of an arm's length (or according to others, a cubit long) with a bowl of the shape and size of the hand, and a hole cut through the bark and front

---

[1] Paul VI. lxxxvii, VI. xiv, VI. xxv.

[2] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments, pl. xi. fig. 5.

[3] कर्णशोधनं मत्वत्थ पत्र प्रान्तं सुवाननं ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxv.

side of the bowl and fitted with a spout, some eight or nine inches long and shaped like a goose's bill. The sruva or dipping-spoon, on the other hand, chiefly used for ladling the clarified butter (or milk) from the butter vessel into the offering-spoons, is of the khadira wood (Accacia catechu), a cubit long, with a round bowl measuring a thumb's joint across and without a spout".[1]

So we see that the bowl of the karṇa-śodhana was round in shape.

Suśruta also mentions a śalākā for the extraction of cerumen or minute insects from the ears.[2] Cakrapāṇi[3] alludes to it. In modern times, the ear-cleaner, as used commonly in India, is a tāla yantra. Ear specillum is frequently mentioned by the Greeks and Romans. It consisted of a small narrow scoop at one end and a simple probe at the other. The use of the scoop is thus described by Archigenes[4]: "If a bean, stone, etc. fall into the ear, remove it with the small narrow scoop of the ear specillum". Celsus[5] directs us to extract a scab or cerumen by means of the ear specillum.

The ear scoop used by the modern surgeons is a narrow scoop, more like the Hindu pujā vessel known as kuśi. The ear scoop is often made in combination with a director.

---

[1] Śatapatha Brâhmaṇa, Sacred Books of the East. 1. 3. 1. 1. foot-note.

[2] See foot note 1, P. 149

[3] क्लेदयित्वा तु तैलेन स्वेदेन प्रविलाय्य च।
शोधयेत् कर्णगूथस्तु भिषक् सम्यक् शलाकया॥
Cakradatta, Karṇaroga.

[4] Galen. XII, 652

[5] Celsus. VI. viii.

GARBHA-ŚAṄKU. FŒTUS OR TRACTION HOOK.

The end of this instrument is said to have been bent like aṅkuśa or elephant driver's goad. It is described to have the same length as the other śaṅku have *i. e.* ten to sixteen aṅguli, and it is eight aṅguli in width.[1] It is recommended for extracting a dead fœtus from the mother's womb, after perforating its head by the maṇḍalāgra or mudrikā knife. Suśruta recommends us to perforate the head and then to extract the bones by the śaṅku or hook, and lastly to apply traction by fixing it about the chest or axilla. If the head can not be perforated, it is to be applied to the eyes or cheeks.[2]

Traction hook for extraction of a dead fœtus was well known to the ancients. Hippocrates[3] bids us break up the head of the fœtus with a cephalotribe and remove the bones with bone forceps, or deliver it by a traction hook inserted near the clavicle. Celsus[4] advises us to insert a smooth hook with a short point and to fix it in the eye, or the ear, or the mouth, or the forehead, and so the fœtus is to be dragged down. Soranus points out the best places for the insertion of the hook to be the eyes, the occiput, the mouth, the clavicles, and the

---

[1] नतोऽग्रे शङ्कुना तुल्यो गर्भे शङ्कुरितिस्मृतः।
अष्टाङ्गुलो यतस्तेन मूढगर्भं हरेत् स्त्रियाः॥ १६।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā I. xxv.

[2] तत्र स्त्रियमाश्वास्य मण्डलाग्रेणाङ्गुलीशस्त्रेण वा शिरोविदार्य्य शिरःकपालान्याहृत्य शङ्कुना गृहीत्वोरसि कक्षायां वापहरेदभिन्ने शिरसि चाक्षिकूटे गण्डे वा।

Suśruta Saṁhitā. IV. xv.

[3] Hippocrates. II. 70.

[4] Celsus. VII. xxix.

ribs in head presentations; and the pubes, ribs, and clavicles in footling cases.[1] Soranus, Aetius[2] and Paul[3] direct us to extract the fœtus in the same way but they recommend us to use two hooks instead of one, in order that the pulling may be straight down and not to one side.

Albucasis,[4] Rhases,[5] Haly Abbas,[6] and Avicenna[7] give similar directions for opening the child's head and for delivering the fœtus with hooks.

This purpose in modern times is served by the blunt hook and crotchet.

Yujña-śaṅku of Midwifery Forceps.

An instrument is thus named and figured by modern writers on Hindu surgery, bearing some resemblance to the modern forceps, for extracting the child alive. We have, however, no mention of any such instrument in the works of Caraka, Suśruta Vāgbhaṭa and other ancient authorities. The Greeks and, Romans were also ignorant of it; and the Arabians fared no better, though Adams, in his commentary on Paul[8] asserts that Avicenna refers to forceps for the delivery of living childern. Mulder, in his valuable work,[9] gives an extract from a translation from the works of Avicenna supporting

---

[1] Soranus. II. xix.
[2] Aetius. IV. iv. 23.
[3] Paul. VI. lxxix.
[4] Albucasis. Chirrug. II. 76 and 77.
[5] Rhases. Cont. xxii.
[6] Haly Abbas. Pract. ix. 57.
[7] Avicenna. iii. 21, i, 24.
[8] Paulus. Æginita. III. lxxvi.
[9] Historia Forcipum et Vecticum. p, 6.

the same conclusion. Smellie[1] says: "With regard to the fillets and forceps, they have been alleged to be late inventions; yet we find Avicenna recommending the use of both. The forceps recommended by Avicenna is plainly intended to save the fœtus". "He recommends all the old methods for assisting in natural labours; and if the woman can not be delivered by these, he orders a fillet to be fixed over the head: if that can not be done, to extract with the *forceps*; and should these fail, to open the skull; by which means the contents will be evacuated, the head diminished, and the fœtus easily delivered."[2] Playfair[3] also holds the same view. The point is however by no means settled. For Milne[4] says: "A full consideration of Avicenna's words seems to me to lead to the conclusion that he is describing no more than extraction with a craniotomy forceps. If the forceps fail, the child is to be extracted by incision, as in the case of a fœtus already dead (and decomposed so that the forceps would not hold)."

Thus we may be sure that there is no availale evidence of the use of delivery forceps by the Hindus, Greeks, Romans and Arabs; and the Chamberlens are still the undisputed claimants to the glory of the invention.

But there is no doubt that the Hindu surgeons tried extraction of the living fœtus by manual traction. The hands are recommended to be well oiled and introduced into the uterus. If the child be dead, sharp intruments are advised to be intro-

---

[1] Smellie. Treatise on Midwifery, p. 40.

[2] Ibid, Edited by McClintock. New Syd, Soc, vol. I. Introduction p. 50.

[3] Researches on Operative Midwifery, p. 10.

[4] ræco-Roman Surgical Instruments, p. 156.

duced into the vagina for cutting upon the fœtus. But on no account such instruments are to be used so long as the child is alive.[1]

Sarpa-faṇā or Snake's Hood.

It is also called agra-bakra *i. e.* the end bent. It is a śaṅku or hook similar to the above, the end being bent like the hood of a snake.[2] It is to be used for the purpose of extracting stone after operation.

Suśruta, in the operation for extraction of stone through the perineal incision, directs us to use the agra-bakra to bring the entire stone out of the wound. But in the case of females, he recommends us to use a knife having a spoon like a scoop, to prevent the formation of a vescico-vaginal fistula.[3] Is it a spoon-shaped knife, or is it a double instrument on a handle—a knife at one end and a scoop at the other? The Greeks used a knife having a scoop at the end.

---

[1] गर्भे जीवति मूढे तु गर्भं यत्नेन निर्हरेत् ।
हस्तेन सर्पिषाक्तेन योनेरन्तर्गतेन सा ॥
मृते तु गर्भे गर्भिण्या योनौ शस्त्रं प्रवेशयेत् ।
शस्त्रशास्त्रार्थविदुषी लघुहस्ता भयोज्झिता ।
सचेतनं तु शस्त्रेण न कथञ्चन दारयेत् ॥

Yogaratnākara, Muddhagarva Cikitsā.

[2] अशक्यौद्धरणं सर्पफणावद्वक्र अयतः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxv.

[3] यथा च न भिद्यते न चूर्ण्यते वा तथा प्रयतेत चूर्णमल्पमप्यवस्थितं हि पुनः परिवृद्धिमेति तस्मात् समन्तामयवक्त्रेणादर्शेत । स्त्रीणान्तु वस्तिपार्श्वगतौ गर्भाशयः सन्निकृष्टः तस्मान्नासामुत्सङ्गवच्छस्त्रं पातयेदतोऽन्यथा खल्वासां मूत्रस्रावी व्रणो भवेत् ।

Suśruta. Saṁhitā. IV. vii.

Celsus[1] describes the extraction of stone through a perineal section by means of the lithotomy scoop. "The scoop is slender at the end and flattened out in the shape of a semi-circle, smooth externally where it comes in contact with the tissue, rough internally where it meets the calculus". It was a long hook-like instrument.

Aetius[2] mentions a special stone extractor, under the treatment of calculus in the female. Some understand by it the lithotomy forceps.

In modern times we use the lithotomy forceps and scoop for the same purpose.

I take this opportunity of referring to the celebrated passage in the famous Hippocratic oath, which runs as follows: "I will not cut persons labouring under the stone, but will have this to be done by men who are practitioners of this art". This sentence has given a good deal of trouble to the commentators and they have failed to understand the true reasons as to why Hippocrates specially forbade the practice of this operation. "M. Littré finds some difficulty in accounting for the circumstance that the noviciate in surgery is interdicted from the operation of lithotomy." Adams,[3] commenting on the sentence, says: "Why this operation was proscribed, can not indeed be satisfactorily ascertained," and he quotes the Arab Physician, Avenzoar[4], who "pronounces the operation to be one, which no respectable physician would witness, and far less to perform."

---

[1] Celsus. vii. xxvii.

[2] Aetius. IV. iv. 94.

[3] The Genuine Works of Hipprocrates. Vol. II. P. 757—8.

[4] Avenzoar. II. 2, 7.

The explanation that this was proscribed because there were men who devoted themselves exclusively to this kind of treatment, and that if the qualified surgeons be allowed to practise the operation, they would interfere in the sphere of action of the lay lithotomists, cannot be considered satisfactory. For the question still remains the open one, why should Hippocrates proscribe this operation from the domains of scientific surgery, simply because a few laymen happened to practise it.

The real explanation is that in Hippocrates' time success in the operation was very difficult to achieve, consequently he interdicted the operation much in the same way as abdominal operations were considered sacred before the days of antiseptic surgery. It is curious to find that Sušruta calls this operation the worst of all surgical operations, for he says[1] : "Even experienced and able surgeons fail to attain success by operation for the stone. So the surgical treatment is the worst of all treatment here. But if you do not operate, the patient will die ; and it is doubtful whether he will live after the operation ; so give him the chance of operation in God's name." I do not know whether this passage of Sušruta has any causal relation to the remarks of Hippocrates, but there is no doubt that the former serves as a better commentary on the latter, than anything hitherto suggested.

Adams[2] says that this operation was practised by a class of men,

---

[1] कुशलास्यापि वैद्यस्य यतः सिद्धिरिहाध्रुवा ।
उपक्रमो जघन्योऽयमतः स परिकीर्तितः ॥
अक्रियायां ध्रुवो मृत्युः क्रियायां संशयो भवेत् ।
तस्मादापृच्छ्य कर्तव्यमीश्वरं साधुकारिणा ॥

Sušruta Saṁhitā. IV. vii.

[2] Commentary on Paulus Ægineta. Vol. II. P. 363.

separate from the surgeons, in all countries in ancient times, and points out that the ancient operation of lithotomy is still practised with great success by the native doctors of Hindusthan. No conclusion is, however, to be drawn from the modern practices in India, as we find separate classes of men not only for stone, but also for bone-setting, cataract, etc. And whatever may be the practice in modern times, we find that during Suśruta's time, the operation was not the privilege of the laymen.

Śarapuṅkha-mukha Probe.

This instrument is also described to have its end bent like the hood of a snake. It is four aṅguli long and is recommended to be used for the purpose of extracting a tooth from its socket.[1]

Tooth elevator or instrument for levering teeth is mentioned by Galen.[2] It is of the same size as the bone lever which, according to Paul,[3] is seven or eight aṅguli long.

This instrument resembles in shape and action the tooth elevator of the modern surgeons.

Ardhacandra-mukha Śalā. Half-moon Probe.

The first half of this variety of śalā is curved like a half-moon, to which is attached the second half as a rounded handle.[4] Suśruta advises us to use it for the purpose of applying actual

---

[1] शरपुङ्खमुखं दन्तपातनं चतुरङ्गुलम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdrya Saṁhitā. I. xxv.

[2] Galen. xviii. 593.

[3] Paulus Ægineta. VI. cvi.

[4] शलाकामन्यवर्त्मनि ।

मध्योर्द्ध वृत्तदण्डाच्च मूले चार्द्धेन्दुसन्निभां ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā I. xxv.

cautery to the groin in bubonecele, to prevent the hernia from entering into the scrotum.[1]

A crescent-shaped cautery was also used by the Greek and Roman surgeons. So Paul[2] says that in cases of sloughing of the prepuce we must cut it off and use lunated cauteries to stop hæmorrhage and prevent the spreading of the wound. Again he mentions a cautery shaped like the Greek letter Γ, in the radical cure of hernia.[3]

Bone lever.

Instruments for levering fractured bones into their proper positions are mentioned several times by Suśruta. In the treatment of fracture of the nasal bones, a śalākā is recommended to be used as a bone lever for raising and depressing the fractured ends.[4] Sometime a muṣala or pestle is advised to be used.[5] It is a thick wooden pestle the end of which is plaited with iron. It is still used to strike upon paddy to seperate the husk from the rice. Suśruta mentions its use to reduce dislocations of the joints of the shoulder and neck.[6]

---

[1] तव या बङ्क्षणस्था ता: दहेदर्द्धेन्दुवक्त्रया।
सम्यग्मार्गावरोधार्थं कोशप्राप्तां तु वर्ज्जयेत्॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xix.

[2] Paulus Ægineta. VI. lvii.

[3] Ibid. VI. lxii.

[4] नासां सन्नां विछत्तां वा कृत्वां कृत्वा शलाकया।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

[5] सन्नमुन्नमयेत् खिन्नमचकम् मूषलेण तु।
तथोन्नतं पीड़येच्च वध्नीयाद्वाटमेव च॥
Ibid.

[6] तैलपूर्ण कटाहे वा द्रोण्यां वा शाययेन्नरं॥
मूषलेनोत्क्षिपेत् कक्षामांससन्धी विसंहते।
स्थानास्थितच्च वध्नीत स्वस्तिकेन विचक्षण:॥
Ibid.

The pestle was also used by Hippocrates[1] to reduce dislocation of the shoulder joint. He says: "Those who accomplish the reduction forcibly bending it round a pestle, operate in a manner which is natural. But the pestle should be wrapped in a soft shawl (for thus it will be less slippery), and it should be forced between the ribs and the head of the humerus. And if the pestle be short, the patient should be seated upon something, so that his arm can with difficulty pass above the pestle. But for the most part the pestle should be longer, so that the patient when standing may be almost suspended upon the piece of wood. And then the arm and forearm should be stretched along the pestle, whilst some person secures the opposite side of the body by throwing his arms round the neck, near the clavicle"

The bone lever used by the Greeks is thus described by Paul:[2] "It is an instrument of steel about seven or eight fingers' breadth in length, of moderate thickness that it may not bend during the operation, with its extremity sharp, broad and somewhat curved."

Director.

Suśruta[3] mentions the use of eṣaṇī or metallic probes not only to ascertain the course of the fistulous track but also to raise the bridge of skin covering the sinuses, so that the surgeon may operate on it as a guide. Cakradatta[4] also uses a probe to

---

[1] The Genuine Works of Hippocrates. Adams' Trans. p. 372.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, VI. cvi.

[3] पक्वेषु चोपस्निग्धमवगाहस्विन्नं शय्यायां सन्निवेश्यार्शसमिव यन्त्रयित्वा भगन्दरं समीक्ष्य पराचीनमवाचीनं वा बहिर्मुखमन्तर्मुखं वा ततः प्रणिधायैषणीमुन्नम्य साश्मयसुदरेक्षस्त्रेण

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

[4] नाड़ीनां गतिमन्विष्य शस्त्रेनापाद्य कर्म्मवित्।

Cakradatta, Nāḍivraṇa Cikitsā.

learn the direction of the wound before operation. It is also mentioned in the Yogaratnākara.[1]

In the treatment of fistulæ, Celsus[2] also says: "A director being inserted into them down to their termination, the skin ought to be incised." It is not mentioned that the eṣaṇī or probe was grooved, but there is no doubt of its use like a grooved director, so common nowadays. The discovery of such a director, along with several other surgical instruments, which are preserved in the Muśee de Cinquantenaire, Brussels, proves that it was known to the Romans.

Urethral Probe.

A variety of śalākā is described by Suśruta[3] to have its end rounded like the stalk of a mālatī flower (Echites caryophyllata, Rox.) It is to be used for cleaning the urethral canal.

Caraka[4] mentions a probe for examining the direction of the urethral canal and its pathological condition, before introducing the tube of the urethral or bladder clysters into it.

---

[1] नाड़ीनां गतिमन्वीत्य शस्त्रं णोत्पाद्य कर्म्मवित्।
Yogaratnākara, p. 346.

[2] Celsus, VII. iv.
Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments. p. 73.

[3] मूत्रमार्गविशोधनार्थं एकं मालतीपुष्पवृन्ताग्रप्रमाणं परिमण्डलमिति।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. vii.

[4] वृजोः सुखोपविष्टस्य वृष्टे मेढ्रे घृतान्विते।
शलाकयान्विष्य गतिं यद्यप्रतिहता व्रजेत्॥
ततः शेफैःप्रमाणेन पुष्पनेत्रं प्रवेशयेत्॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VIII. ix.

Class VI. The Upayantra or Accessory Instruments.

The sixth class of the blunt instruments comprises the upayantra or accessory instruments. By surgical instruments, the Hindus consider not only the instruments proper, but also any mechanical aid by which the object of the surgical treatment is attained. Thus even medicinal agents are considered under this head for they help the inflammatory swellings to subside, or suppurate, or burst open as by various external applications. The accessory instruments are :

1. Rajju or Thread.

As an example of thread being used as an instrument of surgery, we know that the thread smeared with caustics are recommended by Suśruta[1]—kṣāra sūtra or caustic thread—for the operation of fistula-in-ano. For further informations on the subject see "Eṣaṇī or sharp probes" under the Śastra.

Thread as a material of phalavarti or tent is mentioned by Śārṅgadhara.[2] If after a vaginal or intra-uterine douche, the injection does not flow out, he advises us to introduce a strong tent made of thread, dipped in oleaginous medicines of the

---

[1] क्षुरदुर्व्वलभीरूणां नाड़ीमर्म्मश्रिताच या।
चारसूत्रेन छिन्द्यात्तु शस्त्रेण बुद्धिमान्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV, xvii.
Cakradatta, Nāḍīvraṇa Cikitsā

[2] फलवर्त्तिं निदध्याद्वा योनिमार्गे दृढ़ं भिषक्।
सूत्रैर्द्विनग्निंतां सिग्धां शोधनद्रव्यसंयुताम्॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. vii

śodhana (Purifier) group. Cakradatta[1] uses caustic threads in the treatment of piles by ligature.

2. Veṇikā or Twine.

The use of twine as a ligature to be applied above the part bitten by a snake to arrest the circulation of blood towards the heart is mentioned by Suśruta.[2] Caraka[3] also advises us to tie ligatures above and below the bitten part, then to squeeze out the poison towards the wound, whence it is to be drawn out through incisions made by a knife.

3. Paṭṭa or Bandages.

For the proper application of bandages, Suśruta mentions the following materials to be necessary :[4] *viz.*, cloth manufactured

---

[1] भावितं रज्वनीचूर्णैः स्नुहीचीरे पुनःपुनः।
बन्धनात् सुदृढं सूत्रं भिनत्त्यर्शो भगन्दरं॥
Cakradatta, Arśaroga Cikitsā.

[2] सा तु रज्वादिभिर्बद्धा विषप्रतिकरीमता।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, V. v.

[3] दंशात् तु विषं दष्टस्य विसृतं वेणिकां भिषक् बद्धा।
निष्पीड़येदभृशं दंशमुद्धरेन्मर्म्म वर्ज्जम्॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxv.

[4] अत ऊर्द्धं व्रणबन्धन द्रव्याण्युपदेक्ष्यामः। तद्यथा क्षौमकार्पासबिकटकुल कौशेय पत्तोर्ण चीनपट्टचर्म्मान्तर्व्वल्कलालाबूशकललता विदलरज्जुतूलफलसन्तानिका लोहानीति तेषां व्याधि कालं चावेक्ष्योपयोगः प्रकरणतश्चैषामादेशः। तत्र कोशदामस्वस्तिकानुवेल्लितप्रतोली-मण्डलस्थगिकायमकखट्टाचीनविबन्धवितानगोफणाः पञ्चाङ्गी चेति चतुर्दशबन्धविशेषाः।

तेषां नामभिरेवाकृतयः प्रायेणव्याख्याताः। तत्रकोशमङ्गुष्ठाङ्गुलिपर्व्वसु विदध्यात्। दाम सन्धिषूरुजङ्घे। सन्धिकूर्पकभ्रूललाटान्तरतलकर्णेषु स्वस्तिकं। अनुवेल्लितन्तु शाखासु। ग्रीवामेढ्रयोः प्रतोलीं। हस्तेऽङ्गे मण्डलं। अङ्गुष्ठाङ्गुलिमेढ्रांगेषु स्थगिकां। यमलव्रणयो र्यमकं। हनुशङ्खगण्डेषु खट्टां। अपाङ्ग्योश्चीनं। पृष्ठदरोरःसु विबन्धं। मूर्द्धनि वितानं। चिबुकनासौष्ठां सवस्तिषु गोफणां। जत्रूर्ध्वे पञ्चाङ्गीमिति। यो वा यस्मिन् शरीर प्रदेशे सुविविष्टो भवति तं तस्मिन् विदध्यात्।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xviii.

from the fibres of plants, flax, cotton, wool, blankets, silk, leather, Chinese cloth, inner barks of trees, bark of bottle gourd (Cucurbita lagenaria), tendrils of twining plants, cane or pieces of split bamboo, rope, fruits as those of Bombax Malabaricum, blades of knives, and plates of metals as gold, or lead, or iron. These articles should be used with due consideration as regards the nature of the disease, the time of their use and the purpose in hand. He describes fourteen varieties of bandages as follows :—

1. Kośa :— a hollow cylinder or sheath to be applied to the joints of the thumb and fingers. This form of bandage is to be applied over the stumps after amputation of the limbs.

2. Dāma (*i.e.* tail of a quadruped ?) :— it is a large bandage to be tied round a part for the relief of pain or cramps.

3. Svastica or a circular cross-bandage:— it is to be applied round the joints, the space between the tendons of the great and second toes, the intermammary region, the glabella (space between the eyebrows), the plantar surfaces of the feet, the palmer surfaces of the hands, and the ears. It is also the form of bandage recommended in dislocations of the shoulder joint.

4. Anuvellita or an encircling bandage :—it is to be applied to the limbs. This form of bandage is recommended to be applied to the limbs in cases of oblique, deep, and large cuts inflicted by a knife. A leather bandage applied in the form of gophaṇā would also serve the purpose. The encircling bandage is also advised in cases of fracture of the ribs.

5. Protolī :— a broad bandage for the neck and penis.

6. Maṇḍala or a circular bandage:— it is to be applied to

the round parts of the body such as the arms, sides, abdomen, thighs, and back.

7. Sthagikā or a supporter :— a bandage enclosing a splint and pastes of medicaments to keep the parts firm. It is to be applied over the ends of the thumb, fingers, and penis. Suśruta directs us to use this bandage round the scrotum after tapping the hydrocele.

8. Yamaka or a double-bandage:— a pair of circular bandages applied to a couple of ulcers on a part.

9. Khatvā or a four-tailed bandage :— it is recommended for the temples, cheeks and lower jaw.

10. Chīna or a banner bandage :— a bandage for the inner angles of the eyes.

11. Vivandhana or a circular chest-bandage:— it is the bandage for the back, abdomen and chest.

12. Vitāna or a canopy bandage :— a large bandage for the head.

13. Gophaṇā[1] (*lit.* a sling for throwing stones) :— a concave bandage for the chin, nose, lips, shoulders and pelvis.

---

[1] शाखास् प्रतितां सिर्यक् प्रहारान्विहतान् भृशं ।
सीव्येत् सम्यग्विवेश्याश्च सन्यस्थीन्यनुपूर्व्वशः ॥
बद्धा वेल्लितकेनाश्च ततस्तैलेन सेचयेत् ।
चर्म्मना गोफणावन्धः कार्य्यो यो वा हितो भवेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. ii.

पादौ निरस्तसुप्तस्य जलेन प्रोक्ष्य चाक्षिणी ।
प्रवेश्य तन्त्रसेवन्या सुप्तौ सीवेत्ततः परं ॥
कार्य्यो गोफणिकावन्धः कक्ष्यामावेश्य यन्त्रकं ॥

Ibid, IV. ii.

14. Pañcāṅgī or a five-tailed bandage[1] :— it is intended for the parts above the clavicle, as in the dislocations of the lower jaw. Caraka[2] mentions a bandage called kavalikā, to be tied tightly after setting a fracture or reducing a dislocation. It is so-called from the medicinal paste which is applied to the affected parts, underneath the splints.

Dunglison mentions a bandage called Accipitar to be applied over the nose. It is so called from its likeness to the claws of a hawk. It resembles the pañcāṅgī bandage of the Hindus.

So the bandages are recommended to vary according to the different parts of the body ; and the surgeon, using his discretion, is to select the form of bandage suitable to the part. The bandages are recommended to be firmly secured to their place by three strings, applied upwards, downwards and obliquely. The knot is avoided over the seat of ulcer and tied on a side.

Suśruta says : "Bandages are applied with three degrees of tightness according to the seat of the abscess :— 1. A tight bandage causes uneasiness but not actual pain ; 2. A loose bandage is loose and relaxed ; 3. An even bandage is properly applied—neither tight nor loose. The tight bandage is to be applied to the buttocks, sides of the abdomen, axilla, groin, chest and head. The eyes and joints

---

[1] हन्वस्थिनी समानीय हनुसन्धी विसंहते ।
स्वेदयित्वा स्थिते सम्यक् पञ्चाङ्गी वितरेद्भिषक् ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

[2] अस्थिभग्नं च्युतं सन्धिं संदधीत समं पुनः ।
समेन सममङ्गेन क्रमज्ञेन विचक्षणः ॥
स्थिरैः कवलिकाबन्धैः कृशिकाभिश्च संस्थितम् ।
पट्टैः प्रभूत सर्पिष्कैर्वेष्टयीतादवलं सुखं ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xiii.

are loosely bandaged. The even bandage is for the extremities, face, ears, neck, penis, scrotum, back, sides, and abdomen."[1]

Suśruta next deals with the alterations in the mode of applying bandages according to the rules laid down. He also advises the surgeon to be guided by the dictates of his common sense. He directs us to practise bandaging on the various large and small limbs of a human figure made of cloth or clay.[2]

With regard to the mode of application of bandages, Hippocrates says:[3] "It should be done quickly, without pain, with ease and with elegance, ... it should fit well and neatly. The forms of it are the simple, the slightly winding (called ascia), the sloping (sima), the monoculus, the rhombus, and semi-rhombus".

The whole chapter of Suśruta is very interesting and will repay perusal. If bodily transferred, it will adorn any modern text book on surgery.

As it is very difficult to covey a correct idea of these bandages in words, I have given figures of them from modern works on surgery, from which their construction and uses will be readily understood at a glance.

---

[1] तव व्रणायतनविशेषाद्बन्ध विशेषस्त्रिविधो भवति गाढ: सम: शिथिल इति।

पीड़यन्नरुजो गाढ: सोच्छास: शिथिल: स्मृत:।

नैव गाढ़ो न शिथिल: समोबन्ध: प्रकीर्त्तित:।

तत्र स्फिक् कुचि कक्षावङ्क्षणोर: शिर: सुगाढ:। शाखावदन कर्णकण्ठमेढ्रसुक्कपृष्ठपार्श्वोदरस्तु सम:। अक्षो: सन्धिषु च शिथिल इति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xviii.

[2] पुत्तमय पुरुषाङ्ग प्रत्यङ्गविशेषेषु बन्धयोग्यं।

Ibid, I. ix.

[3] The Genuine Works of Hippocrates, Vol. II, P. 477. Syd. Soc. Ed.

Abdominal Binder.

Caraka[1] mentions the use of abdominal binder for the recently delivered woman to prevent derangement of air by its expansion in her abdomen.

Dr. Barnes says:[2] "The sudden expulsion of one-tenth of the body-weight from the abdominal cavity is attended by a sudden removal of a force hitherto pressing upon the vessels and organs of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis. This entails in some cases a tendency to vacuum. Hence disturbance of the circulation. Now the binder, by supporting the abdominal walls, restores the equilibrium of pressure. The pressure exerted upon the uterus works as a gentle continuous stimulus to contraction. The woman is conscious of the support and is greateful for it. . . . . The figure, so precious, and rightly so, to women, is better preserved . . . . So applied, the binder becomes one of the most efficient agents in antiseptic midwifery; it keeps the walls of the uterus and vagina in contact, thus preventing the collection of fluids or clots, and shutting out air".

The use of cloth for other surgical purposes is also mentioned:—

Field hospital.

The cloth is to be used for the manufacture of tents for the doctors to live in. The wounded in war are to be treated in such tents. The tent of the surgeon-general should be close to that of the king in the battle-field.[3]

---

[1] वेष्टयेदुदरं महता वाससा तथा तस्या न वायुरुदरे विकृतिमुत्पादयत्यनवकाशत्वात्।
Caraka Samhitā, IV. viii.

[2] Obstetirc Medicine and Surgery, Vol. II. p. 87.

[3] स्कन्धावारे च महति राजगेहादनन्तरं।
भवेत् सन्निहितो वैद्यः सर्वोपकरणान्वितः॥

Small tents are also recommended for applying vapour bath to patients.

Dressings.

Dṛḍhavala[1] mentions the use of medicated gauzes to be used as sponge by the females and says : "In discharges from the vagina, pieces of cloth soaked in decoction of barks of Vata (Ficus Bengalensis) and Lodha (Symplocos racemosa) and dried, should be put inside the canal."

In the Mohāvāgga[2] we find the use of itch-cloth :— "I allow, O Bhikkhus, to whomsoever has the itch, or boils, or a discharge, or scabs, the use of an itch-cloth".

"According to the 90th Pakittiya such cloth must not be more than four spans in length and two in breadth."

I can not help quoting from Mohāvāgga,[3] another discourse of Buddha as it shows clearly the surgical treatment of boils in ancient times :—

Now at that time a certain Bhikkhu had boils.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of the lancet".

Decoctions of astringent herbs were required.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, decoctions of astringent herbs".

Sesamum salve was required.

तत्रस्थमेनं ध्वजवद्यशः ख्याति समुच्छ्रितं ।
उपसर्पन्त्यमोहेन विषशल्यामयर्द्धिताः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxxiv.

[1] न्यग्रोधत्वक् कषायेण लोध्रकल्कं तथा पिबेत् ।
स्रावि क्षौमपट्टं वा भावितं तेऽनुधारयेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxx.

[2] Mahāvagga. VIII. 17, 2.

[3] Ibid. VI. 14, 4 & 5.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of sesamum salve".

5. Compresses were required.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of compresses."

It was necessary to tie up the sore with cloth.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of bandages for tieing up wounds".

The sore itched.

"I allow you, O Bhikkhus, the sprinkling of a sore with mustard-powder".

The sore became moist.

"I allow you, Bhikkhus, to fumigate (the sore)."

Proud flesh formed on the wound.

"I allow you, O Bhikkhus, to cut off (proud flesh) with a lancet".

The wound would not close up.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of oil for wounds".

The oil ran over.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of fine rags, and of all kinds of ways of treating wounds".

If the object of fumigating the sore was to sterilize it, as it certainly was, we may take this dialogue as the best sketch of the scientific treatment of boils,— remembering that it represents the knowledge of surgery more than 2500 years ago.

Cakrapāṇi advises us to tie the ends of the hairs of a patient, by a piece of cloth,[1] before performing phlebotomy on the vessels of the head and neck.

---

[1] मृदुपट्टान्तकेशान्तो जानुस्थापितकर्परः ।

Cakradatta, Śirobyadhādhikāra.

4. Carma or Leather.

The use of leather in ancient medical practice in India was manifold.

Leather bandage.

Straps or belts of leather were used as bandages. Suśruta[1] advises us to apply the leather bandage in cases where more than half the thickness of the upper or lower extremities are cut by some sharp instruments in a slanting direction. Then the parts of the wound should be well adjusted, the bone and the soft parts kept in apposition, and the wound closed by sutures and well covered by dressings, over which the leather bandage is to be applied in the form of a gophaṇā or sling.

Leather bandage in the form of gophaṇā is mentioned by Suśruta[2] to be applied over the anus to prevent recurrence of procidentia of the rectum. The prolapsed bowl should be well bathed with ghee and fomented; and then reduced by gentle pressure. There should be a hole in the bandage just in front of the anus to allow flatus to pass out. Vṛnda[3] alludes to it. Similarly the modern surgeons use a pad supported by a bandage as an aid in

---

[1] See foot-note 1, P. 178.

[2] गुदभंशे गुदं स्विन्नं स्नेहाभ्यक्तं प्रवेशयेत् ।
कारयेद्गोफणावन्धं मध्यच्छिद्रेण चर्म्मणा ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xx.

[3] गुदभंशे गुदं स्नेहैरभ्यज्याऽग्नु प्रवेशयेत् ।
प्रविष्टं स्वेदयेच्चापि वस्त्रं गोःफणया भृशम् ॥

गोःफणयेति । गोःफणा बन्धविशेषः ।
तक्रं हि:—उच्चारनिर्गमाय सच्छिद्रेण चर्मणा चास्य गोःफणाबन्धः कार्य्य इति ॥

Vṛndamādhava or Sidhhayoga, Ch. 57.

preventing descent of the gut. It is mentioned also in the Cakradatta[1] and the Yogaratnākara.[2]

Dṛḍhavala mentions the use of a piece of untanned leather to be applied over a layer of ointment during the day, while during the night the leaf of Eraṇḍa (Ricinus communis) is directed to be used.[3]

Leather ligatures.

In the treatment of snake-bite, a ligature is advised to be used above the seat of injury to stop the circulation of poisoned blood. This ligature is advised to be made of leather, or braided fibres of trees, or soft cord of jute, etc.[4]

Yantra-śāṭaka. Lithotomy Strap or Binding Apparatus.

This is the name of the leather shackle, which is recommended to be used during the operation for stone in the bladder. The patient should flex his knees and elbows; and the parts are to be

---

[1] गुदभंशे गुदं स्नेहैरभ्यज्याऽथ प्रवेशयेत् ।
प्रविष्टे स्वेदयेच्चापि बद्धं गोःफणया दृढम् ॥
Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga Cikitsā.

[2] गुदभंशे गुदं स्विन्नं स्नेहेनाक्त प्रवेशयेत् ।
प्रविष्टं रोधयेदयवाद्रव्यसच्छिद्र चर्म्मना ॥
Yogaratnākara, P. 343.

[3] एरण्डपत्रैः प्रच्छाद्य रात्रौ कल्यं विमोचयेत् ॥
क्षीराम्बुणा ततः सिक्तं पुनर्वैवोपनाहितम् ।
सुखेद्रात्रौ दिवाबद्धं चर्म्मभिश्च सुलोमभिः ॥ ९४ ।
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxviii.

[4] सर्व्वरैवादितः सर्पः शाखादष्टस्य देहिनः ।
दंशस्योपरि बध्नीयादरिष्टायतुराङ्गुले ॥
स्रोतचर्म्मान्त-वल्कानां सदृनान्यतमेन च ।
न गच्छति विषं देहमरिष्टाभिर्निवारितं ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, V. v

tied together by this instrument.[1] Similarly, it is to be used during the operation for piles; but then, according to Suśruta,[2] the neck and thighs are to be tied by the instrument which is to be held firmly by the assistants. Vāgbhaṭa[3] uses cloth instead of leather.

Yantra-śāṭaka is also to be used during the operation of phlebotomy. Suśruta says[4]: "If venesection is required to be done, the patient is to be seated on a stool, an aratni high (from the elbow to the end of the little finger), facing towards the sun. The thighs are to be flexed, the two elbows to be placed over the knees, and the hands (the fingers being clenched into fists) to be fixed on the two sides of the neck. The two ends of the shackle which pass over the fists, are held up at his back by the left hand of an assistant, who with his right hand steadily (neither forcibly nor loosely) presses above the part selected, to make the veins prominent, and at the same time rubs on the back to

---

[1] सङ्कुचितजानुकपुरमितरेण सङ्गाववद्धं सूत्रेण शाटकैर्व्वा।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. vii.

[2] वस्त्रकम्बलकोपविष्टं यन्त्रशाटकेन परिक्षिप्त ग्रीवासक्थंपरिकर्म्मिभिः सुपरिग्रहीतमस्पन्दनशरीरं कृत्वा।

Ibid, IV. vi.

[3] अथ यन्त्रेण वाससा।

सक्थ्नो शिरोधरायाश्च परिक्षिप्त सजुस्थितम्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

[4] तत व्यध्यशिरं पुरुषं प्रत्यादित्यमुखमरत्निमात्रोच्छ्रिते उपवेश्यासने सक्थ्नोराकुञ्चितयोर्निवेश्य कूर्परसन्धिद्वयस्योपरि हस्तावन्तर्गूढाङ्गुष्ठकृतमुष्टी मन्ययोः स्थापयित्वा यन्त्रणशाटकं ग्रीवासक्थ्नोरुपरि परिक्षिप्यान्येन पुरुषेण पश्चात्स्थितेन वामहस्तेनोत्तानेन शाटकान्तद्वयं ग्राहयित्वा ततो वैद्यो ब्रूयाद्दक्षिणहस्तेन शिरोव्यधनार्थं नात्यायतग्रथितं यन्त्रमावेष्टयेत्यसक्त्साधणार्थं यन्त्रं पृष्ठमध्ये च पीडयेति कर्म्मपुरुषश्च वायुपूर्णमुखं स्थापयेदेव उत्तमाङ्गगतानामलम्भुंखवर्ज्यानां सिराणां व्यधेन यन्त्रणविधिः।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. viii.

stimulate bleeding, the patient being then told to inflate his mouth with air forcibly. This is the method of binding for puncturing the veins of the head except those (veins) which have their mouths turned inside the body". Vāgbhaṭa describes a similar procedure in bleediug from the vessels of the neck[1].

The Greeks also used ligatures to tie up the arms and legs of a patient in the lithotomy position. Paul[2] says: "In operating, the woman should be placed on a seat in a supine posture, having her legs drawn up to the belly, and her thighs seperated from one another. Let the arms likewise be brought down to her legs and secured by proper ligatures about the neck".

In modern times, similarly, we use lithotomy straps or crutch, after placing the patient in the lithotomy position during the operation of lithotomy and excision of piles.

Pāśa.

This is a different shackle to be used for binding insane persons.[3]

---

[1] अग्नितापातपस्निग्धो जानूच्चासन संस्थितः।
मृदुपट्टार्त्तकेशान्तो जानुस्थापित कूर्परः॥
सुष्टिभ्यां वस्त्र गर्भाभ्यां मन्ये गाढ़ं निपीड़येत्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] Paul. VI. lxxiii.

[3] भीमाकारैर्नरैर्नागैर्दान्तैर्व्यालैश्च निर्विषैः॥
भीषयेत् सततं पाशैः कशाभिर्व्यथ ताड़येत्।
यन्त्रयित्वा सुपुष्टं वा चासयेत्त॰ व्रणाग्निना।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. lxxii.

Abdominal Binder.

The use of cloth binder has been described before[1]. Leather binder is to be used after the operation of paracentesis abdominis to apply pressure over the abdomen. After draining the fluid of ascites, the abdomen of the patient should be well wrapped with blankets, or silk cloth, or leather binder, for then the abdomen would not be flatulently distended by air.[2]

Leather bags.

The use of leather in the formation of bags of the vasti-yantra has been described before[3].

Śīro-vasti. Leather bag for the head.

For application of oil on the head, Suśruta[4] directs us to use a goat's bladder filled with medicated oil, just in the same way as ice bags are used nowadays.

Śārṅgadhara[5] describes another variety of śīro-vasti: "It is

---

[1] See P. 181.

[2] निःस्रुतेच दोषे गाढतरमाविक काप्रेय चर्म्मणामण्यतमेन परिवेष्टयेदुदरं तथा नाध्मापयति वायुः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xiv.

[3] See P. 129-30.

[4] ऋज्वासीनस्य वध्नीयाद वस्तिकोषं ततो हृदं ।

Ibid, VI. xviii.

[5] शिरोवस्तिविधिश्चात्र प्रोच्यते सुश्रुतोदितः ।
शिरोवस्तिश्चर्म्मणः स्यादिमुखो हादशाङ्गुलः ॥
शिरःप्रमाणं तं वद्ध्वा मस्तके मार्दपिष्टकैः ।
सन्धिरोधन्विधायादौ स्नेहैः कोष्णैः प्रपूरयेत् ॥
तावत् धार्य्यस्तु यावत् स्यान्नासानेत्रसुखस्रुतिः ।
षिदनोपशमो वापि मात्राणां वा सहस्रकम् ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. xi.

made of leather, has a length of twelve aṅguli and has two orifices or mouths. The leather bag is to be well tied round the head, the junction of the circumference of the bag and the skin should be well pasted with māṣa (Phaseolus Rox) glue. Then the cavity thus formed is to be filled with hot oily medicine. This is to be retained until the headache is relieved." Cakradatta[1] also mentions it. The bag is described to be sixteen aṅguli high in the Yogaratnākara[2]. Vāgbhaṭa[3] advises us to use leather of a cow or buffalo, and it is said to have been twelve aṅguli broad.

Leather band.

In phlebotomy, a band is advised to be applied above the spot where the vein is to be punctured. This band is recommended to be made of cloth, or jute, or leather, or barks of

---

[1] आशिरो व्यायतं चर्म कृत्वाष्टाङ्गुलमुच्छ्रितम् ॥
तेनावेष्य शिरोऽधस्तान्माषकल्केन लेपयेत् ।
निश्चलस्योपविष्टस्य तैलैरुष्णैः प्रपूरयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Śiro-roga Cikitsā.

[2] आशिरो वापितचर्म षोड़शाङ्गुलमुच्छ्रितम् ।
तेनावेष्य शिरोऽधस्तान्माषकल्केन लेपयेत् ॥

Yogaratnākara, P. 402.

[3] विधिसस्य निषण्णस्य पीठे जानुसमे सदौ ।
श्रद्धाक्तस्विन्नदेहस्य दिनान्ते गव्यमाहिषम् ॥
द्वादशाङ्गुलविस्तीर्णं चर्मपट्टं शिरः समम् ।
आकर्ण बन्धनस्थानं ललाटे वस्त्र वेष्टिते ।
चैलवेणिकया बद्धा माषकल्केन लेपयेत् ॥
ततो यथाव्याधि श्रृतं स्नेहं कोष्णं निषेचयेत् ।
ऊर्ध्वं केशभ्रुवो यावद्वाङ्गुलं धारयेच्च तम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxii.

trees, or tendrils of twining plants[1]; and it should not be applied either too tight or too loose. As for example, in phlebotomy in the foot, the yantra-śāṭaka or ligature should be applied below the knee-joint, while the band is to be tied round, at a distance of four aṅguli above the part selected for the operation.[2] Vāgbhaṭa[3] says: "In phlebotomy, a band is to be tied round the upper extremity, four aṅguli above the spot selected for opening the vein which is to be made prominent by pressing it upwards with the closed fist." Cakradatta[4] also quotes it. Vāgbhaṭa[5] recommends us to use a cloth band to be tied round the leg, four aṅguli above the spot selected for opening the vein in the leg.

This band corresponds to the band of Antyllus used by the Greeks. Antyllus applies a ligature of two fingers'

---

[1] गाढं बद्धोपरि दृढं रज्ज्वा पट्टेन वा समम्।
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

वस्त्रपट्टचर्म्मान्तर्व्वल्कललतानामन्यतमेन यन्त्रयित्वा नातिगाढं नातिशिथिलं शरीरं प्रदेशमासाद्य यथोक्तं शस्त्रं गृहीत्वा सिरां विध्येत्॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. viii.

[2] तच्च पादव्यधसिरस्थं पादं समेस्थाने सुस्थिरं स्थापयित्वान्यं पादमीषत्सङ्कुचितमुच्चैः कृत्वा व्यधपादं जानुसन्धेरधः शाटकेनावेष्य हस्ताभ्यां प्रपीड्य गुल्फं व्यधप्रदेशस्योपरि चतुरङ्गुलम् श्रोतदीनामन्यतमेन बद्धां पादासिरां विध्येत्॥
Ibid.

[3] विध्येद्बद्धशिरां बाहावनाकुञ्चित कूर्परे।
बद्धा सुखोपविष्टस्य मुष्टिमङ्गुष्ठ गर्भिणीम्।
ऊर्द्धं वेध्यप्रदेशाच्च पट्टिकां चतुरङ्गुलं॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[4] Cakradatta, Śīra-vyādhādhikāra.

[5] पादे तु सुस्थितेऽधस्ताज्जानु सन्धेर्निपीड़िते।
गाढं कराभ्यामागुल्फं चरणे तस्य चोपरि॥
द्वितीये कुञ्चिते किञ्चिदाबद्धे हस्तवत्ततः।
बद्धा विध्येत् सिरामित्यमनुक्तेष्वपि कल्पयेत्॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

breadth round the arm in bleeding at the elbow, while to bleed at the ankle, the band is to be applied at the knee. It is mentioned as fillet in the pseudo-Hippocratic treatise on Ulcers;[1] and Oribasius[2] gives an interesting dissertation on the subject, principally condensed from the works of Herodotus, Antyllus and Galen. Paul[3] also ties a narrow band round some muscular part of the arm before abstracting blood from the inner part of the elbow. "Wherefore we must tie a narrow band around some muscular part of the arm, and having by friction of the hands upon one another produced the necessary fulness of the vein, we divide it transversely, but only along its breadth."

Leather bottles, jars, maṣaka, etc.

Leather was used in the manufacture of bottles and jars. Leather maṣaka for honey, Soma juice, and dadhi (curdled milk), is mentioned in the Ṛgveda[4] and also in the Laws of Manu where

---

[1] Ulcers, iii. 328.

[2] Med. Collect., vii, Phlebotomy.

[3] Paulus Ægineta. Adam's Trans. Bk. VI. Sec. XL.

[4] इतेरिव तेऽइकमस्तु सख्यं ।
अच्छिद्रस्य दधन्वतः सुपूर्णस्य दधन्वतः ॥
Ṛgveda. 6 M. 48 S. 4 A. 8 Ch. 18 v.

यो इ वां सधुनो इतिराड्डितो रथचर्षणे ।
ततः पिबतमश्विना ॥
Ibid, 8 M. 5 S. 5 A. 8 Ch. 19 v.

उच्छिष्टं चम्वोर्भर सोमं पवित्र आ सृज ।
नि धेहि गोरधि त्वचि ॥
Ibid, 1 M. 28 S. 1 A. 2 Ch. 9 v.

एष सोमो अधि त्वचि गवां क्रीळत्यद्रिभिः ।
इन्द्रं मदाय जोषयत् ॥
Ibid, 9 M. 66 S. 7 A. 2 Ch. 29 v.

it is called dṛti[1]. Leather maṣaka or inflated skins were in use as swimming bladders, and we have a representation of "figures with garlands in their hands, swimming and disporting themselves, supported on maṣaks or inflated skins."[2] In the Ṛgveda, Agastya in his spell to neutralise poison, says:[3] "I deposit the poison in the solar orb, like a leather bottle in the house of a vendor of spirits."[4] Dr. Mitra points out that "other smṛtis ordain that oleaginous articles preserved in leather bottles do not become impure by the contact of the impure cowhide; and in the present day, jars of that material are in extensive use in Bengal and the North-West Provinces for the storage of oil and ghee. In the latter place, leather bags are universally used for raising water from wells, and

---

रुवति भीमो वृषभस्तविष्यया गृह्णे शियानो हरिणी विचक्षणः।
आ योनिं सोमः सुकृतं नि षीदति गव्ययी त्वग्भवति निर्णिगव्ययी॥

Ṛgveda, 9 M. 70 S. 7 A. 2 Ch. 7 v.

एष स्य भानुरुदियर्ति युज्यते रथः परिज्मा दिवो अस्य सानवि।
पृचासो अस्मिन्मिथुना अधि त्रयो दृतिस्तुरीयो मधुनो वि रप्शते॥

Ibid, 4 M. 45 S. 3 A. 7 Ch. 1 v.

See Wilson's Ṛgveda, II. 29.

[1] इन्द्रियाणां तु सर्वेषां यद्येकं क्षरतीन्द्रियम्।
ततोऽस्य क्षरति प्रज्ञा दृतेः पादादिवोदकम्॥

Manu Saṁhitā, II. 99.

"But when one among all his organs fails, by that single failure his knowledge of God passes away, as water flows through one hole in a leathern bottle."

Ibid, Jones' Translation.

[2] Pl. xxxi. fig. 1. Fergusson's Tree and Serpent Worship, P. 127.

[3] सूर्ये विषमा सजानि दृतिं सुरावतो गृहे।

Ṛgveda, 1 M. 191 S. 2 A. 5 Ch. 10 v.

[4] Ibid. Wilson's Translation.

according to the law books of Śaṅkha and Likhita,[1] that water is declared pure which is kept in old leather bottles"[2]. To this may be contrasted the prevailing Hindu notion that water is defiled if touched by a Brāhmana in his shoes. Though the leather is not allowed to be a material of dress of the Hindus, except his shoes which are considered as unclean, leather belts formed one of the eight sacred utensils necessary for a śramaṇa of the Buddhist order; and in the Manu Saṁhitā[3] we find the students of theology advised to "wear for their mantles, the hides of black antelopes, of common deer, or of goats."[4]

5. Antarvalkala. The inner barks of trees.

Barks of trees are recommended to be used as splints for the support of fractured bones. In fractures of bones of the foot, leg and thigh, Suśruta directs us to use splints made of barks of trees[5] to surround the limbs. In the treatment of a simple fracture, Bhāva Miśra advises us to use cold water first, then mud is to be applied, and lastly the fractured bones should be secured

---

[1] आपो रूपवदगन्धवत्यः परिशुद्ध जीर्णचर्म्मकरण्डकेष्वभ्युद्धृताः।
चर्म्मकरण्डः चर्म्मपुटः।

Śaṅkha and Likhita.

[2] Dr. R. C. Mitra's Indo-Aryans. vol. II.

[3] कार्ष्णरौरववास्तानि चर्माणि ब्रह्मचारिणः।
वसीरन्नानुपूर्व्वेण शाणक्षौमाविकानि च॥

Manu Saṁhitā, II. 41.

[4] Ibid. Sir Wm. Jones' Translation. II. 41.

[5] अभ्यज्य सर्पिषापादं तलभग्नं कुशोत्तरं।
वस्त्रपट्टेन वध्नीयान्नच व्यायाममाचरेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

by splints and bandages.[1] In the Yogaratnākara[2], we are advised to treat fractures, by lowering the raised end and elevating the depressed end of the bone, and then by using splints and bandages to keep them in position. Bhāva Miśra[3] describes it similarly after Suśruta. Suśruta directs us to use barks of Vata (Ficus Indica. Rox.) and bamboo strips as splints to support the neck after reducing its dislocation by holding at the temporo-maxillary articulations on the sides and the occipital protuberance on the back, and raising him up in the air. He should lie down with his head raised for seven days[4]. In modern times, the Sayre's suspension apparatus and jury mast serve the same purpose.

The barks of Madhuka (Bassia latifolia), Aśvattha (Ficus religiosus), Kukubha (Terminalia arjuna), Polāśa (Butea frondosa, Rox.), Udumbara (Ficus glomerata, Rox.) bamboo, śāla (Shorea robusta), Vata (Ficus Indica. Rox.) are mentioned as

---

[1] आदौ भग्नं विदित्वा तु सेचयेच्छीतलाम्बुना ।
पङ्कनालेपनङ्कार्य्यं बन्धनञ्च कुशान्वितम् ॥
Bhāva Prakāśa, II. iii. Bhagnādhikāra.

[2] पङ्केनालेपनं कुर्य्याद्बन्धनं च कुशान्वितम् ।
अवनामितमुन्नाम्योदुन्नतं चावपीड़येत् ॥
छिन्नं द्विधापि च स्थाने संस्थाप्य विधिमाचरेत् ॥
Yogaratnākara, P. 345.

[3] अवनामितमुन्नम्य दुन्नतञ्चावपीड़येत् ।
आञ्छेदतिछिन्नमधोगतञ्चोपरि वर्त्तयेत् ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.
Bhāva Prakāśa, II. iii. Bhagnādhikāra.

[4] अवटावयहन्वोश्च प्रगृह्योन्नमयेन्नरं ।
तथा कुशान् समंदत्त्वा वस्त्रपट्टेन वेष्टयेत् ।
उत्तानं शाययेच्चैनं सप्तरात्रमतन्द्रितः ॥
Suśrutā Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

supplying the materials of splints[1]. Bhāva Miśra[2] adds Kadamba (Anthocephalus cadamba), Hijjala (Barringtonia acutangula), Sarjja (Pinus longifolia) to the list. Such splints are called kuśa, and Vāgbhaṭa[3] says that the splints should be broad, thin, pliant and clean.

Dr. Jacobi, of Dublin, says that he has seen an excellent splint made from the "fresh bark of a tree, taken off while the sap is rising". "It fits admirably", says he, "just like paste-board soaked in water"[4]. Dr. C. C. Jewet[5] recommends for the same purpose the bark of leriodendron, or tulip tree.

The Crutches.

The crutches were used to help the crippled. In the Vajasenīya Saṁhitā of the White Yayurveda, there is a passage describing the different kinds of human victims, appropriated to particular gods and godesses. The passage occurs also in the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa with slight differences. There we

---

[1] मधूकोडुम्बराश्वत्थ पलाश ककुभत्वच:।
वंशसर्ज्ज वटानां वा कुशार्थमुपसंहरेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

[2] मधुकोदुम्बराश्वत्थ कदम्ब निचुलत्वच:।
वंशसर्ज्जार्ज्जुनानाञ्च कुशार्थमुपसंहरेत्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, II. iii. Bhagnādhikāra.

[3] कदम्बोदुम्बराश्वत्थसर्ज्जार्ज्जुन पलाशजै:।
वंशोद्भवै वा पृथुभि स्तनुभि: सुनिवेशिते:॥
सुश्लक्ष्णै: सुप्रतिस्तब्धै वैल्कलै: शकलैरपि।
कुशाद्यै: समं बन्धं पट्टस्योपरि योजयेत्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, VI. xxvii.

[4] Hamilton's Fractures and Dislocations. 5th Ed. P. 50-51.

[5] The 20th Mass. vols.

find "to the two (deities) who preside over the gains above or below one's expectation (utkula and vikula), a cripple, who can not move even with the help of a crutch" is recommended to be sacrificed. And again "to the divinity of land, a cripple who moves about on a crutch."[1]

The use of the sound limb as a splint of support for the fractured bone of the opposite side was well known. Wooden splints resembling in shape the injured member are also recommended. Suśruta says[2] that if the hand be fractured, it is to be tied with the opposite hand, but in fractures of both the hands, Gayadāssa[3] recommends a wooden hand to be used as a splint for both. After union of the fractured bones, the hands should be made to hold balls of cow-dung, mud and stones.

6. Latā or creepers (tendrils of).

The tendrils of creepers as materials of ligature are mentioned

---

[1] उत्कुलविकुलाभ्यां (उत्कुलविकुलेभ्यः) विस्थिनं।
भूम्ये पीठसर्पिनमालभते।

Taittirīya Brūhmaṇa.

Quoted in Mitra's Indo-Aryans. vol. II. P. 84—85.

[2] उभे तले समे कृत्वा तलभग्नस्य देहिनः।
बध्नीयादामतैलेन परिषेकञ्च कारयेत्।
प्राग् गोमयमयं पिण्डं धारयेन् मृन्मयं ततः।
हस्ते जातबलेचापि कुर्य्यात् पाषाणधारणं॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iii.

[3] गयोतु उभेऽपि हस्ततले तवेकस्य भङ्गे वामं दक्षिणेन दक्षिणं वामेन, उभयोस्तुभङ्गेन तत्समेन, काष्ठमयेन कृत्वा इं अपि बध्नीयादेवं दार्ढ्यः भवतीति, मृत्पिण्डादिधारणमात्मकर्म्म प्राप्तार्थम्।

Quoted in Dallana's Commentary, IV. iii.

by Suśruta. He recommends[1] to give up a patient, bit by a snake, as hopeless when he does not respond to the application of stimuli, such as cold water, tendrils of creepers, etc. Vāgbhaṭa[2] advises us to introduce the stalk of the lotus, with a thread tied to it, inside the throat to extract any foreign body stuck there. When the soft stalk is touched by the śalya, it should be extracted by the sudden withdrawal of the stalk and thread.

7. Vastra or cloth.

Cloth[3] as a material of bandages, tents, gauze, etc. has been described before[4].

8. Aṣṭhīlaśma. Stone or pebble.

It is a piece of stone—long and round. It is advised to be used for moving arrows fixed in the bone[5]. Caraka[6] advises us to strike two pieces of stone against each other to resuscitate a

---

[1] अजीर्णे पित्ततप्ते पोड़ितेषु बालप्रमेहेष्वथ गर्भिनीषु ।
हृद्रातुर क्षीणवुभुक्षितेषु रूक्षेषु भीरूष्वथ दुर्ब्बलेषु ॥
शस्त्रक्षते यस्य न रक्तमस्ति राज्योलताभिश्च न सम्भवन्ति ।
शीताभिराद्भिश्च न रोम हर्षो विषाभिभूतं परिवर्ज्जयेतं ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, V. iii.

[2] कण्ठस्रोतोगते शल्ये सूत्र कण्ठे प्रवेशयेत् ।
विसेनात्तं ततः शल्यं विसं सूत्रं समं हरेत् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

[3] वस्त्रं प्रसिद्ध तूलक सूत्रनिर्म्मितं वेष्टनार्थं प्रयुज्यते ॥

Vāgbhatārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[4] See P. 176-83.

[5] अश्मप्रस्तरखण्ड शल्यपीड़नार्थं निर्घातनाच्च युज्यते ॥

Ibid.

[6] अश्मनोः संघट्टनं कर्णयोर्मुले शीतोदकेनोष्णोदकेन वा सुखपरिषेकः ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

still-born child. In bleeding from the veins of the neck, Vāgbhaṭa[1] advises the patient to hold firmly two pieces of stones in their hands.

A piece of stone is to be used by a person, for holding it with his hand, after recovery from fractures of the carpal and metatarsal bones[2].

In ancient times, in India, the kings used to decorate themselves with antidotary gems, as a safeguard against poisons.[3] Even now the snake charmers apply a black stone on their bodies where they are wounded by the venomous reptile. This stone is popularly known as the vi-a-pāthara or poison-stone, and is supposed to have the property of extracting poison from the body.

9. Mudgara. Hammer.

Suśruta directs us to use a hammer or a piece of stone to strike an arrow firmly fixed in the bone, until loosened, when it can be conveniently extracted by means of a pair of forceps[4]. It should be pointed out that the tubular instrument—śalya

---

[1] पाषाणगर्भहस्तस्थ जानुस्थे प्रसृते भुजे।
कुचेरारभ्य सदिते विध्येदङ्गोर्ध्वपट्टके॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] See foot-note. 2. P. 196.

[3] विषघ्नैरुदके स्नाती विषघ्नमणिभूषितः।
परीचितं समश्नीयाग्गाङ्गुलाविङ्गिषग्वृतः॥

Kāmandakīya Nītisāra, Ch. vii. v. 10.

रचितो गरुडोद्गार मणिर्यस्य विभूषणं।
स्थावरं जङ्गमं तस्य विषं निर्व्वापितं व्रजेत्॥

[4] अस्थिदेशोत्तुष्टित मट्टीलाग्रमुद्गराणामन्यतमस्य प्रहारेण विचाल्य यथामार्गमेव।

Suśrutā Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

nirghātanī—described before[1], served the same purpose. Vāgbhaṭa also uses a hammer[2] to shake an arrow fixed in the bone, and directs us to extract it with the hands or by the various kinds of forceps[3].

The Greeks used some iron instrument to shake such an arrow from the place where it was lodged. The hammer was also used by the Greeks and Romans but in a different capacity. Paul mentions its use in cranial surgery to strike the lenticular and gouge[4]. Paul and Celsus describe a "method of extracting foreign bodies from the ear by laying the patient on a board and striking the under side with a mallet."[5] Vāgbhaṭa describes this method for draining out water from the ear.[6]

10. Pānipādatala. The palm of hand and sole of foot.

11. Aṅguli or Fingers.

The surgeon's hand is considered by Suśruta to be the principal instrument as the use of all other instruments depends

---

[1] See P. 111.

[2] मुद्गराहतया नाड्या निर्घात्योत्क्षिप्तं हरेत् ।
तैरेव चानयेन्मार्गमार्गोत्क्षिप्तं तु यत् ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

[3] यथाहरेत् करप्राप्यं करणैरेतरत् पुनः ।
दृश्यं सिंहाहिमकरवर्मि कर्कटकाननैः ॥
अदृश्यं व्रणसंस्थानाद् ग्रहीतुं शक्यते यतः ।
कङ्क भङ्गाङ्ग कुरर शरारी वायसाननैः ॥
Ibid.

[4] Paulus Ægineta VII. xc.

[5] Milne, Graeco-Roman Surgical Instruments, p. 125.

[6] कर्णेऽम्बु पूर्णे हस्तेन मथित्वा तैलवारिणी ।
क्षिपेदधोमुखं कर्णं हन्याद्वा चूषयेत वा ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

upon it[1]. But again he mentions the hand and foot as accessory to, or substitutes for, the instruments. Longmore[2] says: "Of all instruments for making a complete examination of a gun-shot wound as well as for exploring for foreign bodies which may be lodged in it, the finger of the surgeon is the most appropriate, whenever a wound is large enough to admit of its insertion." There are many instances of the use of hand and foot in the treatment of surgical diseases but I shall point out a few of them.

1. Both Suśruta[3] and Cakradatta[4] say that "if a swelling be hard but slightly painful, then it should be well fomented, pressed and rubbed by a piece of bamboo, or palm of the hand, or thumb to cause its subsidence. Bhāva Miśra also quotes this verse [5]. Suśruta [6] and Vāgbhaṭa [7] recommend a similar treatment for enlarged glands.

---

[1] See foot note, P. 90.

[2] Longmore, Gun-shot Injuries, 1877, P. 319.

[3] अभ्यज्य स्वेदयित्वा तु वेणुना वा शनैः शनैः।
विमर्दयेद्भिषक् प्राज्ञस्तलेनाङ्गुष्ठकेन वा ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[4] अभ्यज्य स्वेदयित्वा च वेणुनाद्याततः शनैः।
विस्रापनार्थं मृद्नीयात् तलेनाङ्गुष्ठकेन वा ॥
Cakradatta, Vraṇaśotha Cikitsā.

[5] अभ्यज्य स्वेदयित्वातु वेणुनाद्या शनैः शनैः।
विमर्दयेद्भिषङ्मन्दन्तलेनाङ्गुष्ठकेन वा ॥
Bhāva Prakāśa, II. iii.

[6] हृतेषु दोषेषु यथानुपूर्व्वं ग्रन्थौ भिषक् श्लेष्म समुत्थितेतु।
सिद्धस्य विस्रापनमेव कुर्य्यादङ्गुष्ठलोहोपलवेणुदण्डैः ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xviii.

[7] संस्वेद्यं बहुशोग्न्यिं विमृद्नीयात् पुनः पुनः।
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, VI. xxx.

2. Suśruta says[1] that "when a morsel of food sticks in the throat, a blow should be fearlessly struck with the fist on the shoulder of the patient without his knowledge". Vāgbhaṭa[2] also describes it.

It is however curious to find that exactly the same procedure was adopted by Alsaharavius. Adams in his commentary[3] on Paul says that "when a morsel of food sticks to the œsophagus, Alsaharavius directs that the person should be struck on the back, which will facilitate the descent of it".

3. In the reduction of dislocation of the lower jaw, Caraka used his fingers to do it exactly in the same way as recommended by the modern surgeons. He directs us to depress the lower jaw by the thumbs and at the same time to raise the chin by the index fingers[4]. The verses are quoted by Cakradatta.[5] The description of the method, quoted from any modern text book, would be a good commentary on the above passage of Caraka. Erichsen says[6]: "The reduction is best effected, by the surgeon,

---

[1] यासग्रलग्ये तु कण्ठासक्ते निःशङ्कमनवुद्यस्कन्धे मुष्टिनाभिहन्यात् स्नेहं मद्यं पानीयम् वा पाययेत्।

Suśruta Samhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] अपान स्कन्धघाताभ्यां यासग्रलग्ये प्रवेशयेत्।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

[3] Adam's Commentary on Paulus Ægineta, VI. xxxii.

[4] व्यात्ताननेहनुं स्विनमङ्गुष्ठाभ्यां प्रपीड्य च।
प्रदेशिनीभ्याञ्चोन्नम्य चिबुकोन्नमनं हितं॥
सक्थां सङ्गमयेत् स्थानं सक्थां स्विन्नं विनामयेत्।
प्रत्येकं स्थानदृष्ट्यादिक्रिया वैशेष्यमाचरेत्॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxviii.

[5] Cakradatta, Vātabyādhi Cikitsā.

[6] Surgery, Vol. II, p. 658.

standing before the patient, placing his thumbs, well protected by napkins, or a few turns of a narrow bandage, on the molar teeth on each side, and then depressing the angles of the jaw forcibly, at the same time that he raises the chin by means of his fingers spread out and placed underneath it."

4. Caraka says[1] : "After pairing her nails and covering the tip of her index finger with cotton, the nurse is to clean the palate, lips and throat of the new-born child".

With this passage we may compare what Barnes says on the point[2]. "The attendant having then placed the child close to the mother, so as to avoid any strain on the cord, should cleanse its mouth from any fluids, such as blood and mucus, it may have partially swallowed during its passage through the vagina. This should be done at once, as such fluids drawn into the lung vescicles may give rise to inflammation of the lungs, or even septicæmia."

5. Suśruta[3] recognises "six modes of diagonosing diseases, namely by the five senses *i.e.* by hearing, smell, taste, sight and touch, and by questions. "Symptoms descernible by the sense of touch are coolness or heat, smoothess or roughness, softness or hardness, and other tangible qualities of the skin in fever, dropsy,

---

[1] अथास्य तालोष्ठकण्ठ जिह्वाप्रमार्ज्जनमारभेत अङ्गुल्यासुपरिलिखितनखया सुप्रक्षालितोपधानकार्पासपिचुमत्या प्रथमं प्रमार्ज्जि तस्यास्य च शिरस्तालु कार्पासपिचुना स्नेहगर्भेन प्रतिच्छादयेत् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

[2] Obstetric Medicine and Surgery, Vol. II, p. 105.

[3] षड्विधो हि रोगाणां विज्ञानोपायः । तद्यथा पञ्चभि श्रोत्रादिभिः प्रश्नेन चेति ।
* * * * स्पर्शनेन्द्रियविज्ञेयाः शीतोष्णश्च कर्कशमृदुकठिनत्वादयो ज्वरशोफादिषु ।

Suśrutā Saṁhitā. I. x.

and other diseases." And we know how important it is to educate the tactile sense in the diagonosis of diseases.

6. The foot is recommended to fix a part of the human body whence any foreign body may be removed easily by the hands.[1] Suśruta says[2]: "If a foreign body cannot be easily extracted, as when it is impacted in the hollow or the substance of a bone, the part should be pressed by the feet, and it should by drawn out by the instrument." Vāgbhaṭa also gives a similar description[3]. Caraka describes a method of removal of the placenta if not spontaneously seperated. One of the female attendants should press upon the navel of the peurpera forcibly with her right hand, while with the left hand placed upon her back, she should shake her. Then the heel is to be placed on the patient's buttock while the two sides of the gluteal regions are also to be pressed and shaken[4].

12. Jihvā or tongue.

The organ of taste as a means of diagonosis is noted by

---

[1] पाद इति पादेन शरीरदेशं धृत्वा हस्तादियन्त्रेण उद्धरणादि क्रियते ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[2] अस्थिविवरप्रविष्टं अस्थिविदष्टं वाऽवगृह्य पादाभ्यां यन्त्रेणापहरेत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[3] अस्थिदष्टे नरं पद्भ्यां पीड़यित्वा विनिर्हरेत् ।
इत्यशक्ये सुबलिभिः सुगृहीतस्य किङ्करैः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

[4] तस्याश्चेदमरा न प्रपन्ना स्यादथैनामन्यतमा स्त्री दक्षिणेन पाणिना नाभेरुपरिष्टाद्वलवत् निपीड्य सव्येन पाणिना पृष्ठत उपसंगृह्य सुनिर्हृतं निर्हृतुयात् । अथास्याः पादपार्ष्णिश्रोणीमाकोटयेदस्याः स्फिचावुपसंगृह्य सुपीड़ितं पीड़येत् ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, V. vii.

Suśruta[1]. "Symptoms discernible by the sense of taste are the various tastes noticeable in morbid secretions of urine and other diseases". Cakrapāṇi "explains that 'inference' is necessary, because the sense of taste can not be exercised by the physician on the patient directly;"[2] he must do it through some intermediate agents such as ants, whose attraction to sugar is well-known and so the presence of sugar in urinary diseases can be inferred."

13. Danta or tooth.

Ivory as a material of surgical instruments has been described bofore[3]. Suśruta[4] advises us to use the ash of ivory with stibium as a stimulant to the growth of hair on a scar. It is also recommended by Vāgbhaṭa[5].

14. Nakha or nails.

Suśruta advises the surgeon to use his nails[6] for the operation of cutting, piercing and extraction, if these can be possibly helped by his nails.

In modern times, nails often help the surgeons in separating

---

[1] रसनेन्द्रियविज्ञेया: प्रमेहादिषु रसविशेषा: ।
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. x.

[2] Hœrnle's Commentary on the Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. x. (Bibliotheca Indica).

[3] See page 67.

[4] हस्तीदन्तमसीं कृत्वा मुख्यचैव रसाञ्जनं ।
रोमाण्येतेन जायन्ते लेपात् पानितलेष्वपि ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[5] तैलाक्ता हस्तिदन्तस्य मषी वा चौषधं परम् ॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, VI. xxiv.

[6] आहार्य्यच्छेद्यभेद्येषु नखं शक्येषु योजयेत् ।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

layers of tissues during operation as in the operation for the radical cure of hydrocele. We often extract thorns, impacted in our body, with our nails.

15. Mukha or mouth.

The use of mouth as a suction apparatus was well known to the ancients. Suśruta advises us to use ārā or pāṇimantha (awl) to perforate bone in diseases of the medullary canal, caused by obstructed and deranged air. He next introduces one end of a tube, open at both ends, into the canal through the perforation in the bone, while through the other end the surgeon sucks out air by his mouth[1]. The use of mouth for sucking out air through the śṛṅga or horn has been described before[2]. Caraka says[3] that the poison of a snake-bite may be sucked out by the surgeon's mouth, filled with flour or ash. Even in modern times, it is common amongst Indians to suck out blood, in accidental cuts by knives, by the mouth. The practice of the suckers in Europe has been noted before[4].

16. Vāla or hair.

Horse-hair is to be used for applying ligatures round the piles[5]. It is also a material of suture for the skin. Horse-hair is also described to have been used for raising pterygium. Paul[6] also used horse-hair to raise a pterygium.

---

[1] निरुद्धेऽस्थनि वा वायौ पाणिमन्थेन दारिते।
नाड़ीं दत्त्वास्थनि भिषक् चूषयेत् पवनं बली॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. iv.

[2] See P. 148-49.

[3] दंशं वा चूषेन्मूखेन यवचूर्णपांशुपूर्णेन।
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxv.

[4] See P. 149-50.

[5] वालाः, अश्वादीनां पुच्छभवकेशा नृकेशाश्च अर्शो वाल्यादि बन्धनार्थं युज्यते।
Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[6] Paulus Ægineta, VI. xviii.

Suśruta[1] says: "Bundles of hairs or tents are to be used in the treatment of wounds in the skull, formed by the extraction of an arrow from the brain. These would prevent the hernial protrusion of the cerebral subtances from passing out through the wound. The hairs are to be removed one by one, as the wound heals up gradually." Vāgbhaṭa[2] also approves this treatment.

A bundle of hairs tied to a long thread is mentioned by Suśruta to have been used for the extraction of fish-bones from the throat[3]. The patient is directed to swallow the ball of hairs with some liquid. Next emetics are to be administered to excite vomiting. During this act, the foreign body gets entangled in the meshes of the ball, which being then suddenly pulled out by the thread outside, extracts the fish-bone satisfactorily. Vāgbhata[4] also describes it similarly. For this purpose

---

[1] शिरसोऽपहृते शल्ये वालवर्त्तिं प्रवेशयेत् ।
वालवर्त्त्यामदत्तायां मस्तुलुङ्गं व्रणात् स्रवेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. ii.

[2] कार्य्या शल्याहृते विद्धे भङ्गाद्विदलिते क्रिया ।
शिरसोपहृते शल्ये वालवर्त्तिं प्रवेशयेत् ॥
मस्तुलुङ्गस्रुते क्रुद्धो हन्यादेनं चलोऽन्यथा ।
व्रणे रोहति चैकैकं शनैरपनयेत् कचम् ।
मस्तुलुङ्गस्रुतौ खादेन्मक्षिकानन्यजीवजान् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, VI. xxvi.

[3] अस्थिशल्यमन्यद्वा तिर्य्यक्कण्ठासक्तमवेक्ष्य कोशोष्णुकं दृढैकसूत्रवद्धं द्रवभक्तोपहितं पाययेदाकण्ठाच्च पूर्णकोष्ठं वामयेद्वमतश्च शल्यैकदेशसक्तं ज्ञात्वा सूत्रं सहसा त्वाचिपेत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[4] कोशोष्णुकेन पीतेन द्रवैः कण्टकमाचिपेत् ।
सहसा सूत्रबद्धेन वमतस्तेन चेतरत् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

a tooth brush formed by chewing the end of a narrow branch of a tree is also recommended[1]. A common domestic remedy is to make the patients swallow large morsels of boiled rice, plantain, etc.

Paul[2] mentions a similar contrivance, and says: "Some are of opinion that the patient ought to be made to swallow large morsels, such as stalk of lettuces or pieces of bread; but others direct us to bind a thread about a small piece of clean soft sponge and give it to the patient to swallow, and then taking hold of the thread to draw it up, and to do this frequently in order that the thorn may get fixed in the sponge and be brought up". For this purpose Aetius used the epilation forceps. Paul calls it acanthobolus or the fish-bone forceps.

The modern surgeons use a probang for the same object. "Small sharp bodies, such as bristles, fish-bones, or pins, are generally found sticking between the pillars of the fauces and the tonsils." Such bodies "should not be pushed on, but an endeavour should be made to catch them with the "horse-hair probang." This being pushed gently, unexpanded, beyond the point where the pin or bone is stuck, is expanded by pulling up the handle and then withdrawn with a slight rotatory motion."[3]

Caraka[4] mentions the practice amongst the recently delivered

---

[1] मृदुना वा दन्तधावनकुर्चकेनापहरेत्।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, VI. xxxi.

[3] Swain's Surgical Emergencies, 3rd ed., Pp. 32-33.

[4] यथास्या बालवेष्या कण्ठतालु परिस्रजेत्।
Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. xviii.

women to push a braid of her hair into her throat, to help the expulsion of the placenta. So in the Yogaratnākara[1], her throat is advised to be rubbed by a finger surrounded by hairs. This practice is still prevalent among the women of Bengal to a certain extent.

Suture Material.

Horse-hair was the material used by the Hindus for sutures. Besides it, they used[2] sutures of fine thread, or the fibres of the bark of Aśmantaka (Cæsalpina digynia), or threads made of hemp or flax, or of the fibres of which bow-strings were made, or of the fibres of the Mūrvvā (Sansevieria zeylanica) or Guḍūcī (Tinspora cordifolia). Besides these, the Hindu surgeons used the mouth parts of the ants as clasps to close incisions on the intestines. Suśruta[3] describes the use of living black ants to close the incisions on the walls of the intestines, during the operation for intestinal obstruction, after removing the scyballi, stones, etc. He advises us to remove the bodies of the ants, leaving their heads fixed on the margins of the incision,

---

[1] केशवेष्टित्याङ्गुला तस्याः कण्ठं प्रघर्षयेत् ।

Yogaratnākara, P. 437.

[2] सीव्येत् सूक्ष्मेण सूत्रेण वल्केनाश्मन्तकस्य वा ।
सनजक्षौमसूत्राभ्यां स्नायुना वालेन वा पुनः ॥
मूर्व्वागुडूचीतानैर्वा ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

स्नायुना सूत्रेण वल्कलैः ।
सीव्येन्न दूरे नासन्ने गृहीत्वाल्पं न वा बहु ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxix.

[3] परिस्रावेष्वप्येवमेव शल्यमुद्धृत्यान्त्रस्रावान् संशोध्य तच्छिद्रमन्त्रं समाधाय कृष्णपिपीलिकाभिर्दंशयेत् दष्टे च तासां कायानपहरेन्न सिरांसि ततः पूर्ववत् सीव्येत् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xiv.

in the act of biting. Then the intestines should be replaced with the ants' heads sticking to them. Caraka[1] also describes the use of ants for obliteration of small perforations in the intestines, but he takes away the ants before replacing the gut into the abdominal cavity. If by any accident, the abdominal muscles be incised and the intestines come out of a gaping wound, Suśruta recommends us to allow black ants to bite the exposed coils of intestines before replacing them into the abdomen[2]. This is a curious practice of ancient surgery of the Hindus. The Greeks and Arabs never mentioned it. "Amongst some Indian tribes, it is customary to allow both edges of a wound to be seized by the sharp head-nippers of certain ants, whose bodies are then rapidly cut off; one ant after another being used, the wound is closed."[3]

Suśruta describes four sorts of sutures, *viz*:

1. Vellitaka or winding.
2. Gophaṇikā or like a sling.
3. Tunna sevanī or continued sutures.
4. Ṛjugranthi or interrupted sutures.

---

[1] छिद्राण्यन्तस्य तु स्थूलैर्दंशयित्वा पिपीलिकैः।
बहुशः संगृहीतानि मत्वा च्छित्वा पिपीलिकान्।
प्रतियोगैः प्रवेश्यान्त्रं बहिः सीव्येद व्रणं ततः॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xviii.

[2] अभिन्नमन्त्रं निष्क्रान्तं प्रवेश्यं नान्यथा भवेत्।
पिपीलिकाशिरोग्रस्तं तदाण्डे के वदन्ति तु॥
प्रक्षाल्य पयसा दिग्धं तृणशोणित पांशुभिः।
प्रवेशयेत् कृत्तनखो घृतेनाक्तं शनैः शनैः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. ii.

[3] Neuburger's History of Medicine. Playfair's Translation, Vol. I., P. 9

These are advised to be so applied as they may suit the different parts of the body[1]. The needles must not be introduced either too far from, or too close to the edges of the wound. In the former case, the lips of the wound shall be inflamed and so cause pain, while in the latter, the sutures will give way".

The use of horse-hair as a material for suturing wounds was unknown to the Greeks and Romans. They used sutures of flax and woollen threads for wounds. Paul says: "Afterwards we unite the seperated parts with a needle containing a woollen thread, being satisfied with two sutures."[2] Celsus[3] advises us to use sutures of soft thread; and the apolinose of Hippocrates[4] is directed to be made of crude flax.

17. Aśvakaṭaka. THE RING OF A HORSE'S BRIDLE.

Suśruta says that when the arrow is firmly fixed in the bone and if it can not be extracted by forcible pulling by hands or instruments, it should be tied to the ring of a horse's bridle. Then the animal is to be whipped, when by the sudden movement of the horse, the weapon would be jerked out of the wound[5].

18. Śākhā OR BRANCH OF A TREE.

Another method is to tie such an arrow by means of a rope

---

[1] सौव्येदक्षितकं शनैः।
सौव्येद्गोफणिकां वापि सौव्येद्वा तुन्नमेवनीं।
ऋजुग्रन्थिमथो वापि यथायोगमथापि वा॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, VI. xii. Adam's Translations.

[3] Celsus, V. xxvi.

[4] Hippocrates, iii. 132.

[5] अश्ववल्लकटकं वा बध्नीयादथैनं कशया ताड़येयुश्चोन्नमयन् शिरोवेगेन शल्यमुद्धरति।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

to the branch of a tree, lowered by pressure[1]. When the pressure is released, the branch suddenly goes high up, and thereby it pulls the weapon out of the wound[2]. Dallana, however, mentions another view that a bridle-ring and a branch of a tree are both required for the extraction of foreign bodies[3]. Hœrnle remarks: "The branch apparently is put through the ring to afford a stronger pull"[4]. Vāgbhaṭa[5] also mentions these contrivances.

19. Ṣṭhīvana or spittle.

Dallana[6] understands by it—"throwing out expectoration and saliva by the mouth." By this means any foreign body lodged in the oral cavity, such as in the gums, fauces, may easily be got rid of.

---

[1] दृढां वा द्रुचशाखामवनम्य तासां पूर्ववदवद्धोद्धरेत्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] शाखा, द्रुचशाखा, वद्धायास विनमितायां शाखायां शल्यावयवभागं दृढं वद्धा, सहसा शाखात्यागेन उच्छ्रितया शाखया शल्यमुध्रियते।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[3] अन्ये त्वेवं पठन्ति अशक्यमेवं वा बलवद्भिः सुपरिग्रहितस्य यन्त्रे णैनं बाहयित्वा शल्यभागवद्धं प्रविभज्य धनुर्गुणैर्व्वद्धैकतःशाखाद्रुवक्रकटके बध्नीयात्। अथैनम् इत्यत्र कारकैक पाठः कशया ताड़येत् यथोन्नमयन् शिरोवेगेन शल्यमुद्धरति, नमितायां पश्चाङ्गायां द्रुचशाखायां व पूर्ववद वद्धोद्धरेदिति॥

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. xxvii.

[4] The Suśruta Saṁhitā. Bibliotheca Indica. P. 48. foot note 109.

[5] तथाप्यशक्ये वारङ्गं वक्रीकृत्य धनुर्ज्यया।
सुवद्धं वक्रकटके बध्नीयात् सुसमाहितः॥
सुसंयतस्य :पश्चाङ्गा वाजिनः कशायथ तम्।
ताड़येदिति मूर्द्धानं वेगेनोन्नमयन् यथा॥
उद्धरेच्छल्यमेवं वा शाखायां कल्पयेत्तरोः।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxviii.

[6] ष्ठीवणं श्लेष्मादिनिरसनम्।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. vii.

20. Provāhana or fluxing the patient.

This comprises the acts of emesis, purgation and lacrymal secretion. Thus the foreign bodies lodged in the alimentary canal or eyes may be got rid of by causing discharges from the bowels, the stomach, or the eyes[1].

21. Harṣa or objects exciting happiness.

Persons suffering from vraṇa or wound are directed to have their minds in a state of cheerfulness by the sight of objects exciting happiness[2]. A cheerful man is a better subject for a surgical operation than a morose and gloomy one. Vāgbhaṭa[3] adds fear as an accessory instrument. Joy and fear cause a sudden change in the temper of a man and so may be of some help in curing diseases[4]. Suśruta regards, sorrow as a śalya or foreign body which is to be removed by joy.[5]

22. Ayaskānta or load-stone.

Magnet was known to the ancient Hindus[6] and they used it

---

[1] तवास्रुच्चवधूद्गार कास मूत्र पूरीषानिलै: स्वभाववलप्रवृत्तै नयनादिभ्य: पतति।
Suśruta Sāṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] सुहृदो विचिपन्त्याशु कथाभिर्व्रणवेदना:।
आश्वासयन्तो वहुशस्त्वनुकूला: प्रियम्वदा: ॥
* * * *
सम्पदायनुकूलाभि: कथाभि: प्रीतिनानस:।
आशावान् व्याधिमोचाय क्षिप्रं सुखमवाप्नुयात् ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xix.

[3] See foot-note 1, P. 98.

[4] भय हर्षौ शरीरस्य सहसा भावान्तरमुत्पादयन्तौ यन्त्रकार्य्यं कुरुत इति।
Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[5] हृदयवस्थित मनेक कारणोत्पन्नं शोकशल्यं हर्षेणेति।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[6] मणिगमनं सूच्यभिसर्पणमदृष्टकारणकं।
Vaiśeṣikā Darśanam, Ch. V. Āhnika 15.

to extract minute foreign bodies such as iron particles from the eyes and teeth. Suśruta[1] also mentions its use for extracting an arrow from the wound, if it be without barbs.

In modern times, a magnet is still used for removing a particle of iron from the eye. "Indeed, cases have occurred in which the application of an inch bar-magnet connected with four Grove's cells to the outside of the cornea has caused the foreign body to retrace its course and emerge through the wound"[2]. A fragment of iron lying in the vitreous has been removed by the Snell's electro-magnet introduced through the scleral wound behind the ciliary region. "The following plan of ascertaining whether a portion of needle be really impacted has been suggested by Marshall, and successfully carried into practice by Littlewood of Leeds. A powerful magnet is to be held upon the part for a quarter of an hour, so as to magnetise the fragment; a firmly hung polarised needle should then be suspended over it, when, if any iron is present, deflection will ensue."[3]

23. Kṣāra. Caustics or potential cautery.

Caustics were highly extolled by the ancient surgeons as the external applications are better tolerated by the weak and

---

सूच्यभिसर्पणमिति सूचीपदेन लौहमात्रं व्रणस्योपलक्षयति: तथा चायस्कान्ताभिसुखं यत् सूच्यादेर्गमनं * * * * * * *

Śaṅkara Miśra, Upaskāra.

[1] अनुलोममनववहकर्णमनल्प व्रणसुखमयस्कान्तेन।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] Carter's Ophthalmic Surgery, 2nd ed., P. 369.

[3] Erichsen's Surgery, Vol. I, P. 343.

timid persons who are afraid of the surgeon's knife[1]; though Suśruta[2] distinctly states: "The following persons should not be treated with caustics: weak people, children, old and timid people, etc." They even give them preference to the knife for they argue that surgical diseases are radically cured by the application of the caustics, without any possibility of recurrence. Suśruta says[3]: "Of all cutting instruments and their substitutes, caustics (or vegetable alkalis) are the most important, because by means of them deep and superficial incisions and scarifications may be made, derangements of the three humours may be rectified and some diseases can be treated with special advantage."[4]

For the preparation and uses of caustics, see the Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xi.

For the application of potential cauteries, three classes of instruments are recommended.[5]

1. Darvvī—it is to be made of wood and should resemble a spoon in appearance.

---

[1] अल्पसत्वेऽबले बाले पाके चातर्थ्य मुद्गते।
दारणं मर्म्म सन्ध्यादिस्थिते चान्यत्र पाटनं॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxix.

[2] अघनैते चारकृत्याः। तद्यथा दुर्ब्बलबाल स्थविर भीरुसर्व्वाङ्ग श्लीनोदरि रक्तपित्तिगार्भिण्यृतुमती प्रहृदज्वरि प्रमेहीरः चतचीनतृष्णा मूर्च्छोपद्रुतक्लीवापतन्तोदृत्त फलयोनयः॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xi.

[3] शस्त्रानुशस्त्रेभ्यः चारः प्रधानतमश्छेद्यभेद्यलेख्य करणाविदोषघ्नत्वादिशेषक्रियावचारणाच्च।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xi.

[4] Ibid. Hoernle's Trans. Bibliothica Indica.

[5] आस्वाद्य च दर्व्वीकूर्च्च शलाकानामन्यतमेन चारं पातयेत्।
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. vi.

2. Śalākā or rods,—plain probes are mentioned for application of caustic lotions to parts of the body. But generally the ends of the probes are shaped like spoon. To this class belongs the three spoon-like probes of Suśruta and the three nail-shaped probes of Vāgbhaṭa, described before[1].

3. Kūrcca,—it is a brush-like instrument.

The application of caustics has its advantages and disadvantages; and these are to be considered in their relations to the pre-anæsthetic periods of surgery. Patients are still less terrified by their application than by surgical incisions. The real value of caustics is thus summed up by Velpeau.[2] "Nevertheless caustics possess some advantages which can not be denied them. As they do not give the idea of an operation, they shake less the minds of the patients, they are accepted with more calmness and with infinitely less effort, than the action of the knife. Mortifying the tissues step by step, they give rise to no effusion of blood, and affect less deeply the economy than the operation, properly so called. Women treated in this way do not require to remain in bed or to consider themselves as patients. The dressings require little care, and do not demand absolutely the intervention of the surgeon. The wound cleans itself very rapidly in general, and once cleaned, it proceeds speedily towards cicatrisation. Without exempting wholly erysipelas, phlebites or purulent infection as some surgeons have asserted, there is notwithstanding, some reason for supposing that they expose the patient somewhat less to these troublesome complications than the operation".

---

[1] See P. 158-159.

[2] Velpeau. Cancer of the breast. Marsden's trans.

25. Agni. Actual cautery.

Suśruta says[1]: "With regard to surgical treatment, actual cautery is said to be superior to caustics, in as much as diseases treated with the actual cautery do not re-appear, and because it can cure diseases which are incurable by medicines instruments, and caustics."[2] This partiality for cauteries is one of the reasons of the gradual decadence of Hindu surgery and its total extinction in the present time. To this belief of the Hindus may be compared the following aphorism of Hippocrates[3]:—

"Those diseases which medicine do not cure, the knife cures; those which iron can not cure, fire cures; and those which fire can not cure, are to be reckoned wholly incurable".

For the application of the actual cautery the following articles are considered necessary[4]:—

1. Pippali or piper longum
2. Goat's dung
3. Teeth of a cow
4. Śara or saccharum sara
5. Probes or śalākā (see before[5])

} These are to be used for diseases of the skin.

---

[1] चारादग्निर्गरीयान् क्रियासु व्याख्यातस्तद्दग्धानां रोगानामपुर्णभावाद्दिषजशस्त्रचारैरसाध्यानां तत्साध्यत्वाच्च।

Suśruta Samhitā, I. xii.

[2] Ibid. Hoernle's Trans. Biblio. Ind.

[3] The Works of Hippocrates. Syd. Soc., vol. II., p. 774.

[4] अथैमानि दहनोपकरणानि। तद्यथा पिप्पल्यजाशकृद्गोदन्त शरशलाका जाम्बवीष्ठेतर लोहाः क्षौद्रगुडस्नेहाश्च। तत्र पिप्पल्यजाशकृद्गोदन्त शरशलाकास्त्वगगतानां। जाम्बवीष्ठेतर-लोहानि मांसगतानां क्षौद्रगुडस्नेहाः सिरस्नायु सन्ध्यस्थिगतानां।

Suśruta Samhitā, I. xii.

[5] See P. 159-60.

6. Jāmvavauṣṭha[1]	Used for diseases of the muscles.
7. Different kinds of iron	
8. Honey[2]	Used for diseases of the vessels, joints and ligaments.
9. Treacle	
10. Ghee	
11. Oil	

"Both Aetius and Oribasius represent goat's dung, pounded with vinegar, as being equally efficacious as the sinapism, and applying particularly to ischiatic diseases."[3] Hippocrates says that cauterisation may be performed with boxwood spindles dipped in boiling oil.[4] In Kordofan, are used "*El kamaia*. primitive instruments used for cauterisation consisting of a piece of camel's or sheep's dung dried and impaled on a long thorn."[5]

12. Cautery knife.—This is to be used in the treatment of prolapse of the omentum in cases of abdominal injuries. The

---

[1] अर्शो भगन्दरग्रन्थिनाड़ीदुष्टव्रणादिषु ।
मांसदाही मधुस्नेह जाम्बवौष्ठ गुड़ादिभिः ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxx.

[2] मधुच्छिष्टेन तैलेन मज्जचौद्रवसाघृतैः ।
तप्तैर्वा विविधैर्लौहैर्दहेद्दाह विशेषवित् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xiii.

[3] Adams' Commentary on Paul. vol. iii. bk. vii. sec. xix.

[4] Hippocrates, ii. 482.

[5] Medical Practices in Kordofan, Third Report. Wellcome Research Laboratory, Khartoum.

prolapsed part is to be ligatured well and the cautery knife used to remove the prolapse below the ligature[1].

Cautery knife was also known to the Greeks and Romans. Galen[2], speaking of cancer, says that "some use heated razor blades, at once cutting and burning". Paul[3] also mentions a sword shaped cautery in the radical cure of hydrocele.

13. Plates of copper, lead or iron.—In the application of both kinds of cauteries, plates of these metals are to be used to surround a tumour to prevent injury to the adjacent structures (Suśruta).[4]

Hippocrates[5] in the treatment of nasal polypus, says that "when that occurs we must insert a tube and cauterise with three or four irons". Celsus[6] says that this tube may be a calamus or a tube of pottery.

14. Cakradatta mentions a probe of gold for applying actual cautery to the hair follicles after the removal of the eyelashes, to prevent a recurrence of trichiasis.[7]

Albucasis similarly recommends burning the roots of hairs

---

[1] उदरान्मेदसो वर्त्तिं निंगता यस्य देहिनः।
कषायभक्षसत्कीर्णां वह्वा सूत्रेण सवित्।
अग्नितप्तेन शस्त्रेणच्छिन्द्यान्मधुसमायुतं॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. ii.

[2] Galen, xiv. 786.

[3] Paul, vi. lxii.

[4] यदल्पमूलं वपुतावसीस पट्टैः समावेष्टा तदायसैर्वा।
क्षाराग्निशस्त्राण्य सकृदविदध्यात् प्राणानहिंसन् भिषगप्रमत्तः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xiii.

[5] Hippocrates, ii. 244.

[6] Celsus, vii. x.

[7] See foot-note 2, p 66.

in trichiasis with a probe of gold. Paul[1] applies a heated olivary probe or an aural probe for the same purpose. Haly Abbas and Rhazes also describe this operation.

26. Bheṣaja or medicines.

This means such medicines as become necessary in the treatment of surgical diseases and do the work of surgical instruments to a certain extent. Suśruta gives a list of medicines,[2] required in the treatment of various kinds of inflammations, and I quote a few passages from the English translation[3] to illustrate the action of medicines in surgical practice. "Warm poultices made of the following drugs promote suppuration, namely, fruits of *sana* (*Crotalaria juncea*), *Múlaka* (*Raphanus sativus*), *Śigru* (*Moringa pterygosperma*), seasum and mustard seeds, flour of barley and wheat, kiṇva (the drugs used as a ferment in distilling spirits) and linseed. The following medicines are applied for opening abscesses, namely, *chiravilva* (*Pongamia glabra*), *agnika* (*Semicarpus anacardium*), *chitraka* (*Plumbago Zeylanica*), *danti* (*Baliopermum montanum*), *hayamáraka* (*Nerium odorum*), and the excrement of the pigeon, vulture and heron. Caustic alkalies are also very offectual in opening abscesses. Demulcent articles, such as, flour of barley, wheat or *másha* (pulse of *Phaseolus Rux.*) promote discharge from the interior of abscesses. * * * * Pastils for fumigating ulcers should be made of *śríveshṭaṭka* gum of (*Boswellia Thurifera*), *sarjarasa* (resin of *Shorea robusta*), *sarala* (*Pinus longifolia*), and *devadáru* (*Cedrus*

[1] Paul viii. xiii.

[2] See Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxxvi.

[3] Dr. U. C. Dutt's Translation, Bibliotheca Indica. P. 151-154.

deodara); decoctions or cold infusions of astringent and unirritating barks should be used as washes for promoting granulations in ulcer. Tents for promoting granulations should be made of *soma* (*Sarcostemna brevistigma*), *amṛita* (*Cocculus cordifolias*), *aśvagandhá* (*Withania somnifera*), the plants included under the class of *kákolyádi*, and the buds of (Ficus Bengalensis)".

In treating inflammation, the Hindu surgeons used pastes to give relief to the pain and tension; warm poultices to promote suppuration; medicinal applications and incisions by knife for opening abscesses; demulcent articles to promote discharges; decoctions of drugs as corrective washes; tents of drugs and lints for introducing them into the cavities of the abscesses; decoctions in oils and clarified butter to improve the character of ulcers; pastils for fumigating sores; tents, pastes, powders and lotions for promoting granulations; drugs to repress high granulations; drainage to prevent infection, and bandages to give the part rest. This shows that the Hindus were not wholly ignorant of the antiseptic methods of treating wounds; and Suśruta enjoins that a certain incense should be kept burning in the operation room.

Of the additions to the list of Suśruta by Vāgbhaṭa, we need consider the goat's gut only.

Goat's gut.

The intestines of the goats, etc. are to be dried and prepared as materials of ligature[1]. They should be used in ligaturing fine vessels after incision by knife, evidently to check hæmorrhage.

[1] See foot note 1, P. 223.

The use of goat's gut in surgery is generally considered to have been unknown to the Greeks and Romans, as it is not mentioned in their works. But Adams points out[1] "that the strings of ancient harp were made of the guts of a sheep," and this he clearly proves from a passage in the Odyssey of Homer.

Hippocrates[2] used apolinose made of crude flax, which is also mentioned by Paul for the delegation of arteries. Rhases however describes the use of strings of harp[3] as a material for suture in the operation called gastroraphé.

Arrest of hæmorrhage.

It is generally believed and often stated in modern works on surgery that the ancients were unacquainted with the proper treatment of hæmorrhage. Suśruta however enumerates four different ways of arresting hæmorrhage after venesection; namely:

1. Sandhāna :—Contraction of the wound by astringent decoctions of Chebulic Myrobolan and the root-barks of the panchavalkala trees (five barks).
2. Skandana :—or thickening of the blood by the application of severe cold.
3. Pāchana :—or descicating or drying up the wound by ashes.
4. Dahana :—or cauterising the veins to make them shrink[4].

---

[1] See Commentary on Paul, VI. lii. vol. II, P. 345. Syd. Soc. Ed.

[2] Hippocrates, iii. 132.

[3] Rhases. Cont. xxviii.

[4] चतुर्विधं यदेतद्धि रुधिरस्य निवारणं ।
सन्धानं स्कन्दनञ्चैव पाचनं दहनं तथा ।

If the blood does not thicken by the application of cold, astringents should be applied; if these fail ashes should be used. By means of these three modes, the physician should endeavour to the best of his abilities to stop the bleeding, but if success be not still obtained, cautery may be resorted to as the absolute effective means[1]. To stop bleeding from an artery, he advises us to apply astringents and pressure with the fingers. Vāgbhaṭa[2] also describes these methods of arresting hæmorrhage, and advises us that if the ordinary means do not check the bleeding, the vessel must be again opened at a point in its course beyond the bleeding area, or actual cautery applied. Cakradatta also repeats these directions[3].

Vāgbhaṭa however mentions the sheep's gut amongst the accessory instruments. His commentator explains its use for

---

व्रणः कषायः सन्धत्ते रक्तं स्कन्दयते हिमं ।
तथा सम्पाचयेद्भस्म दाहः सङ्कोचयेत् सिराः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xiv.

[1] अस्कन्दमाने रुधिरे सन्धानानि प्रयोजयेत् ।
सन्धाने भज्यमाने तु पाचनैः समुपाचरेत् ॥
कर्म्मभिरेतैस्त्रिभिर्वैद्यः प्रयतेत यथाविधि ।
असिद्धिमत्सु चैतेषु दाहः परम इष्यते ॥

Ibid.

[2] रक्ते त्वतिष्ठति क्षिप्रं सन्धनीमाचरेत् क्रियाम् ।
लोध्र प्रियङ्गु पत्तङ्ग माधवत्थाङ्ग गोरिकैः ॥
शतकपालाञ्जनचौम मधौ चौरौत्वगङ्कुरैः ।
विचूर्णयेद् व्रणमुखं पद्मकादि हिमं पिबेत् ॥
तामेव वा शिरां विध्येद्बाधात् तस्मादनन्तरं ।
शिरामुखं वा त्वरितं दहेत् सन्नयलाकया ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[3] See Cakradatta, Śirāvyādhādhikāra.

ligaturing blood-vessels[1]. Suśruta says that if in venesection, or in treating wounds, excessive bleeding occurs, it should be stopped by proper means[2].

Celsus[3] advises us to fill up the wound with dry pledgets, then to apply a sponge squeezed out of cold water and to press with the hand. If not successful, cut the vessel asunder between two ligatures, or apply cautery, or try the method of revulsion. Galen[4] applies pressure by finger on the wounded vessel, or twists it moderately. If the vessel be an artery, he gives the alternative of a ligature or cutting across. Paul[5] mentions all the methods to stop the bleeding, *viz.*, pressure, styptics, ligature, escharstics, and cauteries with fire.

Albucasis[6] mentions four methods of stopping the discharge of blood from an artery :

1. By cautery.
2. By dividing the artery across.
3. By using the ligature.
4. By stypties and bandage.

Avicenna[7], Rhases[8] and others also mention these methods

---

[1] यन्त्रं मेषादीनां युष्मान्तं तौदत्ख्यातं शस्त्रच्छेदानन्तरं सूक्ष्मसिरादिबन्धनादिषु युज्यते ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxv.

[2] तैस्तैर्विभिन्नैर्बहुधा शोणिते प्रसृते भृशं ।
कार्यं यथोक्तं वैद्येन शोणितस्थापनं भवेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[3] Celsus, v. 26.

[4] Galen. Meth. Med. v.

[5] Paulus Ægineta, IV. lii. vol. II. P. 127. Syd. Soc. Ed.

[6] Albucasis. Chirrug. i. 58.

[7] Avicennæ Cantic. ii. 2., and Collig. vii. 23.

[8] Rhases. Divis i. 39; Contin. xxviii.

for arresting hæmorrhage. Thus it becomes apparent that the use of ligature for stopping bleeding was well known to the ancient surgeons and the present methods of arresting bleeding are only the revival of the old practice. Adams[1] concludes: "It appears, therefore, that the use of the ligature for stopping hemorrhages was well understood by the ancients, and had never been lost sight of even in the darkest ages."

---

[1] Adam's Commentary on Paul, vol. II. p. 132.

CHAPTER VI.

THE ŚASTRA OR THE SHARP INSTRUMENTS.

1. The Maṇḍalāgra or round headed knife.

It is described as a round or circular headed cutting instrument, having a length of six aṅguli. Two sub-varieties are noted —one with a circular edge and the other shaped like a razor (Dallaṇa).[1] Vāgbhaṭa[2], however, describes the blade to be shaped like the index finger when its nail points towards the palm of the hand. This would then resemble the decapitating hook of Ramsbotham.

It is said to have been principally used for the operation of cutting through and scraping[3]; so it is recommended to be used

---

[1] मण्डलमिवास्य यस्य तत् मण्डालाग्रं तच्च द्विविधम् तथाहि—

यदग्रे मण्डलं छत्तं क्षुर संस्थानमेव वा।

मण्डलाग्रस्य जानीयात् प्रमाणन्तु षडङ्गुलम्।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, viii.

[2] मण्डलाग्रं फले तेषां तर्जन्यन्तर्नखाकृति।

लेखने छेदने योज्यं पोथिकी ग्रन्थिकरदिषु॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

मण्डलाग्रं, मण्डलाग्रं नाम शस्त्रं, फले, फल प्रदेशे, तर्जन्यन्तर्नखाकृति स्यात्, अन्तः, अन्तर्हितो नखः, अन्तर्नखः, तर्जन्या अन्तर्नखः तर्जन्यन्तर्नखः, तस्येवाकृति राकारो यस्य तत् तर्जन्यन्तर्नखाकृति। तच्च पोथकी गलग्रन्थिकादिषु, लेखने, लेखन कर्म्मणि, तथा छेदने, छेदन कर्म्मणि, योज्यं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

फलोद्देशे तर्जन्या अन्तर्नखस्तर्जन्यन्तर्नखस्येवाकृतिर्यस्य तदेवम्।

Sarvāṅga Sundarī, I. xxvi.

[3] तत्र मण्डलाग्रकरपत्रे स्यातां छेदने लेखने च।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

in the operative treatment of enlarged tonsil[1]. It is also advised to be used for piercing the skull of a dead fœtus in utero to help its easy extraction by other instruments. So any other presenting part causing difficulty in the delivery of the dead fœtus, is to be cut with it. It is claimed that there is less likelihood of damaging the soft parts of the mother by this instrument than by the sharp pointed vṛddhipatra.[2]

We find that Suśruta recommends a maṇḍalāgra knife in ophthalmic practice for scraping away the membranous expansion in the operation of pterygium[3] and other ophthalmic operations,

---

[1] अङ्गुष्ठाङ्गुलिसन्दंशेनाक्रम्य गलगण्डिकां ।
छेदयेन्मण्डलाग्रेण जिह्वोपरि तु संस्थिताम् ।
नोत्कृष्टश्चैव हीनश्च विभागं च्छेदयेद्भिषक् ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxii.

[2] तत्र स्त्रियमाश्वास्य मण्डलाग्रेणाङ्गुली शस्त्रेण वा शिरो विदार्य्य शिरःकपालान्याहृत्य शङ्कुना गृहीत्वोरसि कक्षायां व्यपहरेदभिन्नेशिरसि चाविस्फुटे गण्डे वा अंससंसक्तस्यांसदेशे बाहुं छित्वा इतिमिवाततं वातपूर्णोदरं वा विदार्य्य निरस्यान्त्राणि शिथिलीभूत माहरेज्जघनसक्तस्य वा जघनकपालानीति ।

यद्, यदङ्गं हि गर्भस्य तस्य स्रजति तद्भिषक् ।
सम्यग्विनिर्हरेच्छित्वा रक्षेन्नारीञ्च यत्नतः ।
गर्भस्य गतयश्चिता जायन्तेऽनिलकोपतः ।
तत्रानाल्पमतिर्ब्रूयो वर्त्तेत विधिपूर्व्वकं ॥
नोपेक्षेत मृतं गर्भं मूहूर्त्तमपि पण्डितः ।
सद्यायु जननीं हन्ति निरुच्छ्वासं पशुं यथा ॥
मण्डलाग्रेण कर्त्तव्यं छेद्यमन्तर्व्विजानता ।
हड्डिप्रवं हि तीक्ष्णाग्रं नारीं हिंस्यात् कदाचन ।
Ibid, IV. xv.

[3] अक्ष्णि यत्र वलीजातं तत्रैतल्लक्षयेद् भिषक् ॥
अपाङ्गं प्रेक्षमाणस्य वड्डिशेन समाहितः ।
सुचुण्डिताग्रस्य मेधावी सूचीमूलेन वा पुनः ॥
नखोत्थापयता क्षिप्रं कार्य्यमभ्युद्धृतं तु तत् ।

such as for vascular net-work and nodules on the eyeball[1]. Cakradatta says[2] that if the pterygium extends to the black part of the eye, the membrane is to be raised by the point of a needle, transfixed by a vaḍiśa or hook, and leaving the pupil free, is to be excised, as Sivadāsa[3] explains, by the maṇḍalāgra. He also uses it to scrape away the root of any new growth in the eye[4] and to perform the operation of scratching in ophthalmic surgery[5].

शस्त्रपातभयाच्चासन्न वर्त्म नो गाहयेद् दृढं ॥
ततः प्रशिथिलीभूतं विभिरेव विलम्बितं ।
उल्लिखन्मण्डलाग्रेण: तीक्ष्णेन परिशोधयेत् ॥
विमुक्तं सर्व्वतश्चापि कृष्णाच्छुक्लाच्च मण्डलात् ।
नीत्वा कनीनकोपान्तं छिन्द्यान्नाति कनीनकं ॥
चतुर्भागस्थिते मांसे नाचि व्यपत्तिमर्हति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xv.

[1] सिराजाले सिरायास्तु कठिनास्ताश्च बुद्धिमान् ।
उल्लिखेन्मण्डलाग्रेण वड़िशेनावलम्बितः ॥
सिरासु पिड़काजाता या न सिध्यन्ति भेषजैः ।
अर्म्मवन्मण्डलाग्रेण तासाञ्छेदनमिष्यते ॥

Ibid.

[2] अर्म्म तु च्छेदनीयं स्यात् कृष्णप्राप्तं भवेद्यदा ।
वड़िशविद्धसुन्नम्य विभागञ्चाव वर्ज्जयेत् ॥

Cakradatta, Netraroga Cikitsā.

[3] अर्म्मछेदनीयमिति मण्डलाग्रेणेति शेषः । ससुन्नम्येति सूच्यग्रेणेति शेषः । सूच्यग्रेण समुन्नम्य उत्तोल्य अनन्तरं वड़िशेन विद्धा मण्डलाग्रेण छेदयेदित्यर्थः ।

Tattva Candrikā, Netraroga Cikitsā.

[4] अर्शस्तथावर्त्म नास्रा शुक्लार्शोऽर्व्बुदमेव च ।
मण्डलाग्रेण तीक्ष्णेन मूलेच्छिन्द्याद भिषक् शनैः ॥

Cakradatta, Netraroga Cikitsā.

[5] भित्वोपनाहं कफजं पिप्पली मधुसैन्धवैः ।
विलिखेन्मण्डलाग्रेण प्रच्छयेद्वा समन्ततः ॥

* * * *

A small instrument with a broad blade and a rounded cutting tip is figured by Albucasis[1] in connection with ophthalmic work. This was the scalpel for the plastic operation on the eyelid as for trichiasis. Incisions were made by this knife on the eyelids in such a way as to enclose a leaf-shaped area which was then dissected off. The lips of the incisions were then united with three or four sutures[2]. Paul[3], quoting Aetius[4], describes the operation for pterygia :—"Having separated the eyelids, and seized upon the pterygia with a hook-like instrument, having a small curvature, we stretch it, and taking a needle having a horse-hair and a strong flaxen thread in its ear (eye ?), and a little bent at the extremity, we transfix it through the middle of the pterygium, and with the thread we bind the pterygium and raise it upwards, while with the hair we separate and saw as it were the part at the pupil away unto its extremity ; but the remainder of it at the great canthus we cut off from the base with the scalpel used for the operation by suture, but leaving the natural flesh of the canthus, lest there be a running of the eye when it is taken away. Some stretching as aforesaid with a thread, dissect away the whole pterygium with the instrument called pterygotomos, taking care not to touch the corner."

Cakradatta mentions the use of the maṇḍalāgra for scarifying

घृतसैन्धव चूर्णेन कफानाहं पुनः पुनः।
विलिखेन्मण्डलाग्रेण प्रच्छयेद्वा समन्ततः॥

Cakradatta, Netraroga Cikitsā.

[1] Milne. Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments, Pl. ix. fig. 3.
[2] Paulus Æginet., VI. viii.
[3] Ibid, VI. xviii.
[4] Aetius, II. iii. 60.

the tongue for bleeding in the disease called jihvākaṇṭaka (prickly tongue)[1]. He also uses it in adhijihvā or ranula and says: "The tongue is to be raised, the ranula is to be drawn up and fixed by a sharp hook, and then excised by the maṇḍalāgra. Afterwards a strong gargle is to be prescribed".[2] Pālakāpya[3] also describes it to have a length of nine aṅguli, the handle being six, and the blade three aṅguli long. The end is full-moon-shaped and it is directed to be used for scarification on the eyeball.

It seems that maṇḍalāgra of different sizes and shapes were used. For the instrument used for perforating the fœtal cranium in uterus would scarcely be thought fit for a delicate operation on the eyeball.

Soranus[4] mentions a special instrument for perforating the fœtal head. Rhases[5] directs us to open the head when the child's cranium is large and cannot be brought down. Haly

---

[1] कण्ठकेषु कफोत्थेषु लिखितेष्वसृजः क्षये।
पिप्पल्यादिर्मधुयुतः कार्य्यस्तु प्रतिसारणम्॥

Cakradatta, Jihvāroga Cikitsā.

लिखितेष्विति मण्डलाग्रादिना।

Tattva Candrikā, Ibid.

[2] उन्नाम्य जिह्वामाकृष्य वडिशेनाधिजिह्विकाम्।
छेदयेन्मण्डलाग्रेण तीक्ष्णोष्णैर्लवणादिभिः॥

Cakradatta, Mukharoga Cikitsā.

[3] लेखनं मण्डलाग्रेण कर्त्तव्यं दन्तिनां भवेत्।

Pālakāpya, III. i.

पूर्णचन्द्राकृत्यायमण्डलायम् लेखनार्थमक्ष्णो।

Pālakāpya, III. iii.

[4] Soranus, II. viii., P. 366.

[5] Rhases, Cont. xxii.

Abbas[1] also advises us to open the head when it is preternaturally large. Aetius[2] also gives a similar discription. Some authors recommend the polypus-scalpel or the phlebotome in embryotomy. The embryotome figured by Albucasis[3] is a straight two-edged blade, and we may conjecture that the maṇḍalāgra used by the Hindus for perforating the fœtal cranium was a similar instrument.

2. Karapatra or saw.

It literally means, "an instrument having the blade in the form of a hand", the fingers being represented by the teeth of the saw. Others explain, as Dallaṇa[4] points out, the name from its resemblance to a carpenter's saw. It seems that saws of various sizes were used. Suśruta mentions its length to be six aṅguli, Vāgbhaṭa[5] describes it to be ten aṅguli

---

[1] Haly Abbas, Pract. ix. 57.

[2] Aetius, XVI. 23.

[3] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments, Pl. viii. fig. 7.

[4] करपत्रमिति करवत् पत्रं करपत्रं यथा करोऽङ्गुलिभिराचितो भवति तद्वत् यत् कण्टकैराचितं स्यात्तत् करपत्रमुच्यते। अन्ये तु करपत्रशस्त्रं करपत्राकारमेव तच्च द्वादशाङ्गुलं तन्त्रान्तर वचनात्। ननु यदि तन्त्रान्तरात्तद द्वादशाङ्गुलं करपत्रमुच्यते तर्हि स्वतन्त्रे विरोधः कुतः स्वतन्त्रे करपत्रस्य निर्दिष्टप्रमाणत्वात् शेषाणि तु षड़ङ्गुलानि इत्यनेन वाक्येन षड़ाङ्गुलमेव करपत्रम् स्यान्न द्वादशाङ्गुलं नैवम् तेषाम् नामाभिरेवाकृतयः प्रायेण व्याख्याता इत्यस्मात् सूत्रात् प्रायः शब्दोऽनुवर्त्तते तेनायमर्थः, शेषाणि प्रायेण षड़ङ्गुलानि एवं शस्त्रमानेऽन्यत्राप्यविरोधः।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[5] छेदेऽस्थ्नां करपत्रन्तु खरधारं दशाङ्गुलं।
विस्तारि द्व्याङ्गुलं सूक्ष्मदन्तं स्वत्सरु बन्धनं॥

Aṣṭāṅgā Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

करपत्राख्यं शस्त्रमाह छेदे इत्यादि करवत् पत्र यस्य तत् करपत्रं, अङ्गुलिभि राचितो यथाकारो भवति तद्वत् यत् कण्टकैराचितं तत् करपत्रमुच्यते। करपत्रं करात् ख्यातं। करपत्रं खरधारं, खरा, तीक्ष्णा, धारा यस्य तत्तथाविधम्, तथा दशाङ्गुलम्,

long and two aṅguli broad; while Bhoja[1] alludes to a saw, twelve aṅguli long. The edge of the instrument is described as rough and serrated; and this is the only instrument that need not have a very sharp edge.

The handle of the saw should be well formed and pegged. Its principal use is to saw a bone. Sometime it is recommended for the purpose of scraping.

Saw is frequently mentioned by the Greek and Roman authors in the descriptions of operations on the bones. Celsus[2] mentions it in describing the amputation of a gangrenous limb. With reference to fractures of the bones of the head, Paul says[3]: "But the mode of operating with saws and the instrument called chœnicides or modioli (trepans ?) is condemned by the moderns as a bad one." Evidently he means flat cranial saws. Galen[4] also mentions the "knife-shaped saws."

In modern times the saw is still used for identical purposes in surgery.

There is no mention of trephine in Hindu surgery though Jīvaka (500 B.C.) is said to have practised cranial surgery with success[5]. Pandit Vallala describes[6], in his Bhojaprabandha or

---

दैर्घ्येन दशाङ्गुल परिमाणं, तथा विस्तारे द्व्याङ्गुलं, परिसरे षड्ङ्गुलद्वयपरिमितं तथा सूक्ष्म दन्तं सूक्ष्मा दन्ताकारा दन्त यस्य तत्तथाविधं, तथा सुत्सरुबन्धनं, तसरु खड्गादि मुष्टि: बन्धनं, कीलादिना बन्धनं, त्सरुश्च बन्धनञ्च ते तसरु बन्धने, शोभने त्सरु बन्धने यस्य तत्तथाविधं। तच्च अस्थ्नां छेदे, छेदन कर्म्मनि योज्यं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

[1] See foot-note 4, P. 230.

[2] Celsus, VII. xxxiii.

[3] Paul, VI. xc.

[4] Galen, XVIII. 331.

[5] See Mahāvagga, VIII. 1.18. Sacred Books of the East. Vol. xvii.

[6] See foot-note 1, p. 60.

Annecdotes of King Bhoja, a surgical operation performed on the king. He was suffering from a severe pain in the head. Medicines did him no good, and so to give relief, surgical interference was thought necessary by two brother surgeons who happened to arrive in Dhar at that time. They are said to have administered a drug called sammohinī to render him insensible. They then trepanned the skull and removed the real cause of his complaint. They closed the opening, stitched the wound and applied a healing balm. They are then said to have administered to the king another drug called sañjibanī to accelerate the return of consciousness.

Trephine was well known to the ancient Greeks and Romans. Hippocrates[1] mentions a trephine or a saw having a circular motion, in the treatment of injuries to the head. Paul also mentions trephine, the use of which is, he says, condemned by the moderns. Sprengel[2] remarks, that "Galen was averse to the use of the trepan, though he performed the operation on the head occasionally."[3]

3. Vṛddhipatra.

This sharp cutting instrument is called vṛddhipatra from its resemblance to the leaf of a medicinal plant called vṛddhi. Two varieties of this knife are described by Vāgbhaṭa[4]—one is

[1] Hippocrates, III, 371, 374.

[2] Hist. de la Méd., 18.

[3] Adam's Commentary on Paul, VI, xc. Vol. ii., p. 436.

[4] इद्धिपत्रं क्षुराकारं छेद भेदन पाटने।
क्षज्वयसुखते शोफ गम्भीरे तु तदन्यथा।
नतायं पृष्ठतो दीर्घं ऋजवक्रं यथायथं॥
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

straight throughout and it is to be used for opening pointed superficial abscesses; and the other has the end bent or curved. Again amongst the second class of curved knives, some have their ends long and therefore called dīrgha-vaktra or long-mouthed, and these are to be used for opening the deep seated abscesses, while others have their ends short and therefore called hrasva-vaktra or short-mouthed, and these are to be used for superficial abscesses that would not point. Suśruta describes them to be six aṅguli long. Dallaṇa in his commentary[1] says:—Both the varieties, one with a curved,—and this is called a kṣura or razor,—and the other with a resected point, should be seven aṅguli long; the handles and the blades should measure five and a half and one and a half aṅguli respectively." These are to be used for cutting through a part, partially or completely, and also for puncturing it.

इद्विपवाख्यां शस्त्रमाह इद्विपवमित्यादि इद्विपवं नाम शस्त्रं, क्षुराकारं, क्षुराकृति, क्षुरस्य लोमच्छेदकः शस्त्रविशेषो नरसुन्दराणां। तच्च इद्विनामौषध इक्षस्य पवसदृश्य फलकवात् इद्विपवाख्यं लभते। तद् इद्विपवं नाम शस्त्रं छेदे भेदने पाटने च कर्म्मणि योज्यमिति ऋज्वयमित्यादिना विषय विशेषे इद्वि पवस्याकार भेद उच्यते। यत् इद्विपवं ऋज्वयं सरलायभागं, आयतायमित्यर्थः। तत्, उन्नते, उच्छ्रिते, शोफे, शोथे, योज्यं। गम्भीरे, भेद आदि धातुस्थे शोफे, तथा तदन्यथा, अनुन्नते च शोफे, यत् पृष्ठतः, पृष्ठदेशे नतायं वक्रीभूतायभागं, कुचितायमित्यर्थः। तत् इद्विपवं शस्त्रं यथायथं दीर्घं ह्रस्व वक्त्रं, दीर्घं मुखं, ह्रस्व मुखं वा योज्यं। यथायथमिति गम्भीरे शोफे दीर्घवक्त्रं, अनुन्नते च शोफे ह्रस्ववक्त्रमित्यर्थः। अव द्विविधं इद्विपव शस्त्रयुक्तम्, द्वे अपि सप्ताङ्गुल प्रमाणे, द्वयोरपि अर्द्धपञ्चाङ्गुल हन्तं कार्य्यं सार्द्धाङ्गुलद्वयं फलमिति। भेदनः, भेदं, एकस्मिन् शरीरदेशे शस्त्रमावगाह्य अपर दिशा शस्त्रायस्य निष्काशनं भेदनं। पाटनं, विदारणं फाड़न इति लोके।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

[1] इद्विपवमिति, इद्वेः पक्षमिव इद्विपवं तच्च द्विविधं एकं अञ्चितायं, द्वितीयं प्रयतायं, द्वे अपि सप्ताङ्गुल प्रमाणे द्वयोरपि अर्द्ध पञ्चाङ्गुलं हन्तं कार्यं सार्द्धाङ्गुलम् फलम् इति अनयोर्मध्ये अञ्चितायं इद्विपवं क्षुरमाहुः।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

One form of the vṛddhipatra resembles in shape the razor used by the barbers,—not the English razor that has now become common in Bengal, but the country-made razors which are still used by the barbers in the North-West Provinces.

Suśruta recommends the use of razor, scissors and pinchers for shaving the parts before operation; for "the hairs", he says, "prevent the healing up of the wound rapidly"[1]. He again uses vṛddhipatra as a knife and observes:—"If bitten by spiders whose bites are amenable to treatment, the area of the wound should at once be excised out by the vṛddhipatra, and then actual cautery applied by the red-hot jāmvavauṣṭha probe till the patient requests for its withdrawal"[2].

Suśruta uses the vṛddhipatra knife for the removal of the scrotal tumour and says[3]: "The scrotal tumour is to be well fomented and bandaged. The patient should then be cheered up, and leaving the testicles intact, underneath the median raphe, the tumour should be excised by vṛddhipatra knife. The fatty tisues being

---

[1] रोमाकीर्णो व्रणो यस्तु न सम्यगुपरोहति।
क्षुरकर्तरीसन्दंशै तस्मात्तरोमाणि निर्हरेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[2] साध्याभिराभिलुताभिर्दष्टमात्रस्य देहिनः।
वृद्धिपत्रेण मतिमान् सम्यगादंशमुद्धरेत्॥
जाम्बवेनाग्नि तप्तेन दहेदाकर वारणात्।

Ibid, V. viii.

[3] सिक्तां चावेष्ट्य पट्टेन समाश्वास्यातु मानवं।
रक्षेत् फले सेवनीञ्च वृद्धिपत्रेण दारयेत्॥
मेदस्ततः समुद्धृत्य दद्यात् कासीससैन्धवे।
बध्नीयाच्च यथोद्दिष्टं।

Ibid, IV. xix

removed, powdered ferri sulphas and rock salt are to be dusted over the wound and proper bandages applied."

Vṛddhipatra was also used by the ancient veterinary surgeons. Joyadatta Suri writes[1]: "The knife known as vṛddhipatra is shaped like a kṣura or razor. It is three aṅguli long and should be used by the wise to incise a suppurated abscess". In Pālakāpya[2], we find that "it is ten aṅguli long; the handle being six aṅguli and the blade four aṅguli long and three aṅguli broad. It is used for scission and excision". He uses it also in opening a sinus after well ascertaining its course by means of a probe[3].

Hypodermic medication:—The use of hypodermic syringe was not known to the Hindus. They were acquainted however with the hypodermic method of exhibition of drugs. Śārṅgadhara[4]

---

[1] वाङ्कुलं वृद्धिपत्रञ्च क्षुराकारं प्रकीर्त्तितम्।
पक्वशोथादिषु प्राज्ञः पाटनं तेन कारयेत्॥

Aśvavaidyaka, XIV. v. 22.

[2] शस्त्रेण वृद्धिपत्रेण वाऽसि(शि)तेन सि(शि)तेन वा।
शस्त्रकर्म्मणि निष्णातः सुपक्वं पाटयेद्भिषक्॥

Pālakāpya, III. iv.

वृद्धिपत्रेण नागानां कुर्य्याच्छेदन भेदने।

Pālakāpya, III. i.

[3] अथ भिषगयन्त्राधायोक्तेन विधिना सुयन्त्रितं वारणमभिविश्वास्याऽऽश्व(श्वि)त्य तस्यानुगतं गतिमन्तं स्वल्पसुखं नाड़ीव्रणमेषणया च विदित्वा वृद्धिपत्रेण शस्त्रेणानुलोमं पूयप्रतिरक्षार्थ-च्छेदं कुर्य्यात्॥

Pālakāpya, III. xv.

[4] प्रक्षयित्वा क्षुरेणाङ्गं केवलानिलपीड़ितम्।
तत्र प्रदेहं दद्याच्च पिष्टं गृञ्जाफलैः कृतम॥
तेनाववाड़्जा पीड़ा विपत्ती गृध्रसी तथा।
अन्यापि वातजापीड़ा प्रशमं याति वेगतः॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. xi.

directs us to scarify a part with a razor and then apply an ointment of guñjā (Abrus precatorius) in sciatica, scrofulous glands of the neck, etc. For treating a person in the state of unconsciousness caused by the derangement of all the humours, he directs us to scarify the anterior fontanelle with a razor, then to apply as much medicine as can be carried on the point of a needle to the part and rub it with fingers[1]. The medicine is to be prepared thus :—take aconite 1 pala, quicksilver 1 śāna; mix, and put inside two sorābas or earthen basins smeared with powdered glass and placed face to face. Apply some external application over this and put it on fire for six hours. Then open the basins, take the soot collected on the upper basin and deposit it in a glass vessel quickly to prevent exposure. Caraka[2] also advises us to apply a medicinal paste on a cranial incision, shaped like

---

[1] विषं पलमितं सूतः शाणिकश्चूर्णयेद्भयम् ।
तच्चूर्णं सम्पुटे च क्षिप्त्वा काचलिप्तसरावयोः ॥
मुद्रां दत्त्वा च संशोष्य ततश्चुल्यां निवेशयेत् ।
वह्निं शनैः शनैः कुर्य्यात् प्रहरद्वय संख्यया ॥
तत उत्पाट्य तन्मुद्रामुपरिस्थे सरावके ।
संलग्नो यो भवेद्धूमः तं गृह्णीयाच्छनैः शनैः ॥
वायुस्पर्शो यथा नस्यात् ततः कुप्यां निवेशयेत् ।
रसः सूचीमुखेलग्नस्कुप्या निर्याति भेषजम् ॥
तावन्मात्रो रसो देयो मूर्च्छिते सन्निपातिनि ।
घरेण प्रछिते मूर्द्ध्नि तदङ्गुल्या च घर्षयेत् ॥
रक्त भेषज सम्पर्कान्मुर्च्छितोऽपि हि जीवति ।
तथैव सर्पदंष्टस्तु सतावस्थोऽपि जीवति ।
यदातापो भवेत् तस्य मधुरं तत्र दीयते ॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, II. xii.

[2] विषदूषित कफमार्गः शीतसंरोधरुद्धवायुश्च ।
सततश्च श्वसेन्मर्त्यः सादसाध्यलिङ्गैर्विहीनश्च ॥

the foot of a crow, in case of snake-bite when he becomes unconscious but his life is not completely despaired of.

4. Nakha Śastra or nail parer.

Suśruta[1] mentions its length to be eight aṅguli. Dallaṇa[2] says that its blade is two aṅguli long and one aṅguli broad. Vāgbhaṭa[3], on the other hand, describes the length to be nine aṅguli. Aruṇadatta[4] thinks it to be a double instrument, one end having a straight edge and the other an oblique one. Some explain[5] that two different kinds of nakha śastra—one with a straight and the other with an oblique edge—are directed to be used.

चर्म्मकषाया: कल्कं विल्वसमं मूर्द्धि काकपदमसा ।
क्षत्वा कुर्य्यात् कटभीं कटुकोटफला प्रधमनञ्च ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xxv.

[1] तव नखशस्त्रैषणयावष्टाङ्गुले सूच्योवत्यग्रे ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[2] नखशस्त्रमिति नखानां छेदनाय शस्त्रं नखशस्त्रं तस्य फलं द्व्यङ्गुलायामम् एकाङ्गुल विस्तृतम् ।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[3] वक्रर्जुधारं द्विमुखं नखशस्त्रं नवाङ्गुलं ।
सूच्यग्रयोर्ऋतिच्छेदभेद प्रच्छान लेखने ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

[4] नखशस्त्रं नखच्छेदकं प्रसिद्धं । तच्च वक्रा ऋजूधारा यस्य तदेवम् । तस्येकं मुखं वक्रमन्यदृजु स्पष्टम् ।

Sarvāṅgasundarī, I. xxvi.

[5] नखशस्त्रमाह वक्रर्जुधारमित्यादि नखानां छेदनाय शस्त्रं नखशस्त्रं तत् द्विमुखं द्वि द्वि: प्रकारं मुखं यस्य तद्विमुखं तथा वक्रर्जुधारे एकं वक्रं धारं अपरम् ऋजुधारं स्यात्, तथा नवाङ्गुलं उभयोमपि दैर्घ्येण नवाङ्गुलपरिमितं तच्च नखशस्त्रं शल्योद्धृत्यादौ योज्यं शल्यानां कण्टकदीनामुद्धृति रुद्धरणं शल्योद्धृति: प्रच्छानं चेरा इति यस्य प्रसिद्धि: लेखनं चीचन् इति लोके ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kanmudī, I. xxvi.

They are principally recommended for cutting, puncturing and scarifying[1]; and also for the extraction of needles and minute foreign bodies from the soft parts.

There is no mention of a many-bladed scarificator in the surgical books of the Hindus, but its office was performed by the nakha śastra, in wet cupping, by making parallel incisions close to one another.

Paul[2] alludes to an instrument compounded of three blades joined in such a way that at one stroke, three scarifications were made; but he prefers a single scalpel for the purpose.

Pālakāpya mentions an instrument called rampaka[3], having the handle ten aṅguli and the blade three aṇguli long. It is to be used for paring the nails and cleaning the feet of the elephants.

5. Mudrikā.

It is described to be a cutting instrument of the size of the last phalanx of the index finger[4]; it is also called aṅguli-śastra or finger-knife. Vāgbhaṭa describes this instrument but not clearly. He says that the mouth of the aṅguli-śastra looks as if coming out of a ring, and the blade is half an aṅguli wide. A ring, having the size sufficient to admit the terminal phalanx of the index

---

[1] इद्विपव नखशस्त्र मुद्रिकोपलपत्रकार्द्ध धारानि छेदने भेदने।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, VI. xli.

[3] रम्पकस्त्राङ्गुलमुखो दशाङ्गुलहस्त पादशोधनार्थं नखच्छेदनार्थं चेति।

Pālakāpya, III, xxx.

[4] प्रदेशिन्यग्रपर्व्वप्रदेशप्रमाणामुद्रिका।

Suśrutā Saṁhitā, I. viii.

finger, should be soldered to it. The base of the instrument has a thread tied to it[1].

It is recommended to be used for cutting through neoplasms in the throat. In its uses, Vāgbhaṭa says that it resembles the maṇḍalāgra and vṛdidhipatra; and so was sometimes required for perforating the skull of a dead fœtus in the uterus of its mother[2].

Dr. Simpson of St. Andrews (1744) is said to have invented an instrument, a "ring scalpel" for opening the skull. It consists of a loop of steel, through which the finger is to be passed

---

[1] कुर्यादङ्गुलिशस्त्रकं ।
सुद्रिकानिर्गतसुखं फलेत्वर्धाङ्गुलायतं ।
योगतो ह्रद्विपत्रेण मण्डलाग्रेण वा समं ।
तत्प्रदेशिन्यग्र पर्व्वप्रमाणार्पन सुद्रिकम् ।
सूत्रवद्धं गलस्रोतो रोगछेदन भेदने ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

कुर्य्यादित्यादिना अङ्गुलिशस्त्रकं व्यक्ति । सुद्रिका अङ्गुरीयकेण निर्गतं निष्क्रान्तं सुखं यस्य तत्तथाविधं सुद्रिकानिर्गतसुखं तथा फले फलोद्देशे अर्द्धाङ्गुलायतं अर्द्धाङ्गुलमात्र विस्तार अङ्गुलि शस्त्रकं अङ्गुलिनाम शस्त्रं कुर्य्यात् । तत्र योगतः प्रयोगे ह्रद्विपत्रेण मण्डलाग्रेण वा समतुल्यं भवति । लेखने च्छेदने ह्रद्विपत्रवत् योज्यं किन्वा छेदन भेदन पाटने मण्डलाग्रवत् योज्यमित्यर्थः । तदित्यादि तदङ्गुलि शस्त्रकं प्रदेशिन्यग्र पर्व्वप्रमाणार्पण सुद्रिकं कुर्य्यादिति योज्यं । वैद्यस्य प्रदेशिनी नाम्नी अङ्गुलि तस्या अग्रं यत्पर्व्व तत्तथा तस्य यत् प्रमाणं परिमाणं तदर्पणा तत् प्रवेशोपयुक्ता सुद्रिका यस्य तत्तथाविधं । सुद्रिका मुद्दरी आङ्टी इति वा ख्याता । तथा सूत्रवद्धं मूलदेशे सूत्रेणवद्धं तच्च गलस्रोतो गतानां रोगाणां छेदने भेदने च योज्यं ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

[2] विष्कम्भो नाम तौ मूढौ शस्त्रदारणमर्हतः ।
मण्डलाङ्गुलि शस्त्राभ्यां तत्कर्म्म प्रशस्यते ।
ह्रद्विपत्रं हि तीक्ष्णाग्रं न यैनावबचारयेत् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, II. ii.

and from which protrudes a sharp pointed blade about an inch long, by which the cranium was pierced[1].

In the pseudo-Hippocratic treatise[2] a knife to fix on the thumb and dismember a fœtus in utero is mentioned. This knife is called by Turtullian[3] the "ring knife", whereby the limbs are advised to be cut off in the womb. It is intersting to point out that mudrikā also means a ring.

The veterinary surgeons still use a scalpel blade mounted on a ring[4], through which a forefinger is passed to dismember foals and calves in exactly the same way.

6. Utpalapatra.

This knife is described to have the shape of a petal of the blue lotus. The end is long, sharp and pointed. The utpalapatra is dīrgha-vaktra or long bladed, while the arddhadhāra is the hrasva-vaktra or short bladed knife[5]. It is to be used for cutting through and puncturing the parts.

---

[1] Ed. Med. Essays, vol. V, Part I, P. 445.

[2] Hippocrates, I. 463.

[3] De Anima, 26.

[4] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments, Pl. vii. fig. 1.

[5] दीर्घं ह्रस्ववक्त्रं यथायथं ।

उत्पलाध्यर्धधाराख्ये भेदने छेदने तथा ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

उत्पलपत्राख्यध्यर्धधाराख्ये शस्त्रे आह उत्पलेत्यादि उत्पलच्च अध्यर्धधारच्च ते आख्ये ययोः शस्त्रयोः ते उत्पलाध्यर्ध धाराख्ये शस्त्रे तथा, यथाक्रमं दीर्घ ह्रस्व वक्त्रे भवतः । तत्र उत्पलाख्यं दीर्घवक्त्रं, अध्यर्धधाराख्यं ह्रस्ववक्त्रमित्यर्थः । उत्पलशब्देन उत्पलपत्राख्यं शस्त्रं गम्यते तन्मात्रदर्शनात् । तस्य फलस्य उत्पलपत्रकारत्वादुत्पलपत्रमिति संज्ञितम् । अधिकमर्धं धारा यस्य तत अध्यर्धधारं । हस्तफलयोर्मध्ये फलस्यैव किञ्चिदधिक दैर्घ्यमिति वर्त्तते । तच्च अष्टाङ्गुलायतं उरसि अङ्गुल विस्तारं ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

In the Aśvavaidyaka, the utpalapatra and vrīhipatra knives are recommended to be used in puncturing the veins in phlebotomy[1]. "The surgeon who is practically acquainted with the methods of puncturing the veins, should use the utpalapatra and vrīhipatra knives for the purpose."

When used for puncturing the large veins the knife is recommended to be encircled with thread at a short distance from the end to prevent unnecessary injury to the vessels by plunging the the knife deeply[2].

Hippocrates similarly "gaurds his phlebotome in the surgical treatment of empyema, by having it wound round with a rag, leaving the breadth of the thumb nail at the point."[3]

Both the utpalapatra and vrīhimukha knives are thus described in the Aśvavaidyaka[4]: The "vrīhimukha knife should be six aṅguli long and half an aṅguli wide. The utpalapatra should also be similarly made."

The utpalapatra knife is recommended to be used for incising

---

[1] शस्त्रेणोत्पलपत्रेण व्रीहिपत्रेण वा भिषक्।
शिरावेधविधिं सम्यग् दृष्टकर्म्मा प्रयोजयेत्॥
Aśvavaidyaka, XIV. v. 23.

[2] सूत्रकेण च संवेष्य मुखं शस्त्रस्य बुद्धिमान्।
यथाप्रमाणं संस्थाप्य ततो विस्रावयेत् शिराम्॥
Ibid, XV. v. 35.

[3] Hippocrates, II. 258 Kuhn's Ed. and 1. 88 Syd. Soc. Ed.

[4] अर्द्धाङ्गुलन्तु विस्तीर्णं कुर्य्यच्छस्त्रं षडङ्गुलम्।
नाम्ना व्रीहिमुखं सम्यक् तथा चोत्पलपत्रकम्॥
Aśvavaidyaka, XIV. v. 21.

the abdominal parietis of the horse; then a tube is to be pushed through the wound in the operation of paracentesis abdominis[1].

The phlebotome used by the Greeks is nowhere described in their books; but from considerations of all the various operations to which the instrument was put bears out the fact of its being a sharp pointed, double-edged and straight lancet. The phlebotome of the Greeks might have then resembled in shape the utpalapatra of the Hindus. It was used by the Greeks for various operations besides phlebotomy, as for the opening of abscesses such as the parulis or gum boil[2], puncture of cavities containing fluid as in opening the abdomen for ascites[3], incising the tunica vaginalis as in excision of hydrocele sac[4] and for dissecting out warts[5] and sebaceous cysts[6].

It is interesting to note that Pālakāpya[7] mentions utpalapatra and describes it to be eight aṅguli long, one and a half aṅguli broad and double edged. He uses it for puncturing vessels etc.

---

[1] हृदयसंधरे भागे ऊर्ध्वभागे च नाभितः।
अधोवा नाभितः कुर्य्यच्छेदनं चतुरङ्गुले॥
शस्त्रेणोत्पलपत्रेण वामभागे विचक्षणः।
एकमेवाङ्गुलं शस्त्रं कुक्षौचापि प्रवेशयेत्॥
वेधव्रणे ततस्तस्मिन् नालिकां वस्त्रवेष्टिताम्।
प्रक्षिप्य गालयेद्वारि यावद्वैकोष्ठलाघवम्॥

Aśvavaidyaka, LII. vs. 25, 26 and 27.

[2] Paul, VI. xxvii.
[3] Ibid, VI. L.
[4] Ibid, VI. lxii.
[5] Ibid, VI. lxxxviii.
[6] Ibid, VI. xiv.
[7] व्रीहिमुखप्रमाणमुत्पलपत्रं भेदनार्थं।

Pālakāpya, III. xxx.

7. Arddhadhāra.

It is difficult to ascertain the exact shape of this knife. Some translate it as a "single edged knife,"[1] but it really means, as Dallaṇa explains, an instrument which has a sharp edge for half the length[2]. It is also called cakradhāra. Vāgbhaṭa has a variant reading—adhyārddhadhāra—which means an instrument having a sharp edge for more than half the length[3].

It is eight aṅguli long; the blade is two aṅguli long and one aṅguli wide, and the handle six aṅguli long. It is to be used for incision and division of parts of the body.

8. Sūcī or Needles.

Three needles are recommended to be used for applying sutures. They should be strongly made and rounded in shape. At one end they are flattened, grooved and pierced with an eye for the suture. The groove is said to have been intended to be the bed of the suture during stitching to prevent it from doing any harm to the tissue. In fleshy parts such as the thighs, a three ribbed needle, three aṅguli long, is advised to be used. For less fleshy parts and wounds about the joints, a similar straight needle but two aṅguli long should be employed, while for suturing the wounds of the stomach, intestines, scrotum and the vital parts of the body, preference is given to a needle curved like a bow, two and a half aṅguli long and having the pointed end

---

[1] Hœrnle's Translations of Suśruta Saṁhitā, Bibl. Ind. I. viii.

[2] अर्डधारमिति, अर्डं धारा यस्य तत् अर्डधारं, चक्रधारमिति प्रसिद्धं तस्य अष्टाङ्गुलायतं उरसि अङ्गुल विस्तारं द्व्यङ्गुलफलं। अन्ये त्वध्यर्डधारमिति पठन्ति, अधिकमर्डं धारायस्य तत् अध्यर्डधारम्।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[3] See foot-note 5, P. 240.

shaped like a paddy. In thickness, these needles are described to be equal to the stalk of the flower of mālatī (Jasminum grandiflorum). They should have sharp fine points and good shape[1]. The needles are also recommended to be used for extraction of foreign bodies from the soft structures and also for evacuating abscesses[2].

---

[1] देशेऽल्पमांसे सन्धौ च सूची हस्ताङ्गुलक्षयं।
आयता त्र्याङ्गुला वृत्ता मांसले वापि पूजिता॥
धनुर्व्वक्रा हिता मर्म्मफलकोषोदरोपरि।
इत्येतास्त्रिविधाः सूचीस्तीक्ष्णाग्राः सुसमाहिताः।
कारयेन्मालतीपुष्पदलायपरिमण्डलाः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxv.

हस्तागूढ़ दृढ़ाः पार्श्वे चित्राः सूच्योऽत्र सीवने॥
मांसलानां प्रदेशानां वृत्ता त्र्याङ्गुलमायता।
अल्पमांसास्थि सन्धिस्थ व्रणानां द्व्याङ्गुलायता।
व्रीहिवक्त्रा धनुर्वक्त्रा पक्वामाशयमर्म्मसु।
सा सार्द्धद्व्याङ्गुल सर्व्वा हस्तास्त्रायतुरङ्गुला॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

तिसृणां सूचीनां विषयविशेषे आकारभेदानाह मांसलानामित्यादि 'मांसलानां' ऊर्ब्वादीनां शरीर प्रदेशानां सीवनार्थे सूची, 'वृत्ता' चिकोणविशिष्टा तथा त्र्याङ्गुलमायता, अङ्गुलचयदीर्घा कर्त्तव्या, असाम्प्रतत्व मयभागस्यैव न तु सर्व्वावयवस्य। सूच्याः सर्व्वावयवस्य हि साधारणतो हस्ता कारत्वनिर्द्देशादितिगम्यं। अस्या अपि गूढ़ दृढ़ पार्श्वत्वं सामान्योक्त्या कथितमेव अल्पमांसलस्थान संस्थितानां, सन्ध्यस्थि संश्रितानांच व्रणानां सीवने द्व्याङ्गुलायता, अङ्गुलित्रय दीर्घा, सूचीकर्त्तव्या, पक्वाशये, आमाशये तथा 'मर्म्मसु' वस्त्यादिषु संस्थितानां व्रणानां सीवने, व्रीहि वक्त्रा, पाटलादि व्रीहिवन्मुखा, 'धनुर्वक्त्रा' धनुर्वद्वक्राकारा या सूची सार्द्धद्व्याङ्गुला, अर्द्धाङ्गुलाधिक द्व्याङ्गुल दीर्घा योज्येति योज्यं अत्रापि गूढ़ दृढ़ पार्श्वत्वं योजनीयं। सार्द्धद्व्याङ्गुलेत्यनेन च्छेदः। सर्व्वेत्यादि परेण सम्बध्यते॥

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

[2] सूचीकुशपत्राटीमुखशरारीमुखान्तर्मुखचिकूषकानि विस्रावणे।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

In modern times, the surgeons use fully curved, half-curved and straight surgical needles. Waring[1] remarks: "The shape of the needle which ought to be used for closing an incision depends upon the depth and accessibility of the wound. In deep wounds, or wounds which are not readily accessible, curved needles will be found to be most useful, while for shallow cuts straight needles will be most convenient."

Suśruta makes mention of a javamukhī needle[2] (*lit.* having the sharp end shaped like a barley corn) for passing a double ligature smeared with escharotic ointment, across the base of a tumour in opposite directions. Then by cutting through the nooses, and tying togeher the contiguous ends of the ligatures, the whole of the growth is encircled and strangled by them, exactly in the same way as in modern times a nævus is ligatured by means of a nævus needle. Cakradatta also quotes this description of the method of extirpating tumours by ligatures.

Erichsen says[3]: "When the tumour is small, an ordinary double ligature may be passed across its base, by means of a common suture needle; and the noose being cut and the thread tied on each side, strangulation will be effected. When it is of larger size, and of round shape, the most convenient method is that recommended by Liston. It consists in passing, by means

---

[1] Manual of Operative Surgery. By H. J. Waring, M.S., M.B., Third edition, P. 42.

[2] अर्ब्बुदादिषु चोत्क्षिप्य मूले सूत्रं निधापयेत्।
सूचीभिर्यववक्त्राभिराचितं वा समन्ततः।
मूले सूत्रेण बध्नीयाच्छित्त्वा चोपचरेद्व्रणम्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xvii.
Cakradatta, Nāḍīvraṇacikitsā.

[3] Erichsen's Surgery, Vol. II, P. 73.

of long nævus needles, fixed in wooden handles, and having their eyes near their points, double whipcord ligatures in opposite directions beneath the tumour; then cutting through the nooses, and tying together the contiguous ends of the ligatures until the whole of the growth is encircled and strangled by them."

There are many instances of the use of surgical needle by the Greek and Roman Surgeons. Needles of different sizes are recommended. Celsus mentions a large needle in describing the operation of suturing the abdominal parietis[1], and another, evidently a small needle, which is said to have been used in the treatment of staphyloma of the cornea[2]. The needles were either round or three-cornered. "A few three-cornered needles of Roman origin have been found, although they are rare" (Milne[3]). Paul uses a needle in suture of the upper eyelid, and other modes of operating for trichiasis[4], for the repair of wounds of the peritoneum[5], and recommends a large sized needle containing a double thread to close the peritoneum in the operation for enterocele[6].

Pālakāpya mentions sūcī or needles for stitching wounds[7]. They are eight aṅguli long, shaped like the tusk of an elephant and are either three ribbed, or four ribbed, or round, smooth and

---

[1] Celsus, VIII, xvi.

[2] Ibid, VII. vii.

[3] Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments, P. 75.

[4] Paulus Ægneita, VI. viii.

[5] Ibid, VI. lii.

[6] Ibid, VI. lxv.

[7] सूची सेवनार्थं। अष्टाङ्गुलं नागदन्ताकृति। त्रिधा चतुरश्रा वा दृढा समाहिता यथा शलाका व्रणे व्रणविधुत्यर्थम्।

Pālakāpya, III. xxx.

strong. He reserves curved three-cornered needles for fleshy parts and round needles for skin, veins, nerves and arteries[1].

Caraka recommends the use of leeches, knife and needles for extracting blood from the piles[2]. He also advises us to use needles for pricking the patches of leprous spots[3] before the application of leeches for extracting blood.

9. Kuśapatra.

It is a form of knife resembling in shape the leaf of a kuśa grass (Poa cynosuroides)[4]. The instrument should be six aṅguli long (Suśruta) ; the blade measuring two aṅguli (Vāgbhaṭa)[5]

---

[1] याःसूच्यस्त्रिविधाः प्रोक्ताः शस्त्राध्याये संस्थिताः।
नागदन्ताकृतिर्वृत्ता विकोषा चेति निश्चयात्॥
अस्थ्याश्रितं नागदन्तया मांसजं च विकोषया।
त्वक्स्नायु धमनीस्थं च शिराजं चैव वृत्तया।
आहार्य्यं सर्व्वयन्त्राणां सूच्या सीवनमिष्यते॥

Pālakāpya, III. i.

[2] जलौकोभिः तथा शस्त्रैः सूचीभिर्वा पुनः पुनः।
अवर्त्तमानं रुधिरं रक्तार्शोभ्यः प्रवाहयेत्॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. ix.

[3] प्रच्छितमल्पं कुष्ठं विरेचयेद्वा जलौकाभिः।

Ibid, VI. vii.

[4] कुशपत्रमिति, कुशपत्रतुल्यं कुशपत्रं तन्मानमाह :—
अङ्गुलैरुच्चकं विद्यादङ्गुलं फलमुच्यते।
वृत्तं स्यात् वाङ्गुलं मध्ये कुशपत्रसमं लघु॥

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[5] कुशाटी वदने शस्त्रे द्व्यङ्गुलंस्यात्तयोः फलं॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

कुशाटीवदने ये शस्त्रे, शस्त्रे विस्रावण विषये योज्ये। तयोः कुशाटी वदनयोः फलं द्व्यङ्गुलं, अङ्गुलद्वयं परिमितं स्यात्।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī, I. xxvi.

and the handle four aṅguli, but according to Bhoja, the handle is three aṅguli long. It is to be used for draining pus from abscess. The handle has a ring like ornamentation, about one aṅguli in diameter. Another variant reading describes the blade, the ring, and the handle to have the lengths of two, three, and two aṅguli respectively. This would make the total length of the instrument to be seven aṅguli; so evidently there is some lapsus calami in the second reading.

Cakradatta uses kuśapatra as a bleeding lancet and says[1]: "Out of the twelve vessels that lie on the sides and underneath the tongue, select the two large bluish vessels on either sides of the tongue, raise them up by vaḍiśa or hook and puncture them by the kuśapatra knife and then, after bleeding, apply a paste of treacle and ginger to the wound". In the Yogaratnākara[2], the author advises us to adopt this method of bleeding, in the treatment of tumours in the neck.

Pālakāpya mentions kuśapatra and describes it as being shaped like a kuśa grass[3]. It is nine aṅguli long—the handle being

---

[1] जिह्वाया: पार्श्वतोऽधस्तां शिरा द्वादश कीर्त्तिता:।
तासां स्थूलशिरे कृष्णे विध्यात् ते तु शनै: शनै:॥
बड़िशेणैव संगृह्य कुशपत्रेण बुद्धिमान्॥
Cakradatta, Galaganda Cikitsā.

[2] जिह्वाध: पार्श्वयोर्मूलाच्छिरा द्वादश कीर्त्तिता:।
तासां स्थूले शिरे द्वे च च्छिन्द्यात्ते च शनै: शनै:।
बड़िशेणैव संगृह्य कुशपत्रेण बुद्धिमान्।
स्रुते रक्ते व्रणे तस्मिन् दद्यात्तस गुड़माद्रकम्॥
Yogaratnākara, P. 321.

[3] नवाङ्गुलं कुशपत्रं। पञ्चाङ्गुलं हत्तं। चतुरङ्गुलम् पत्रं। अध्यार्धाङ्गुलविस्तृत-मुभयतो धारं। कुशपत्राकृति गम्भीरपाकभेदनार्थं षड़ङ्गुलं हत्तम् अध्यार्धाङ्गुलं पत्रं।
Pālakāpya, III. xxx.

five or six aṅguli and the blade four aṅguli long. The blade is one and a half aṅguli wide and is sharp-edged on both sides (*i.e.*, double-edged). It is used for incising deep abscesses.

10. Āṭīmukha.

This instrument is described to have the shape like the beak of the jalavardhanī bird or āṭī[1] (Turdus ginginiamus),—a bird living in the marshes. It is six aṅguli long; the blade measuring two and the handle four aṅguli. So it is of the same size as the kuśapatra to which it also resembles in function. Bhoja is of opinion that its blade is one and the handle seven aṅguli long.

11. Śarārīmukha.

This instrument is a pair of scissors resembling the face of the long beaked bird called śarārī. Dallaṇa describes two varieties of the bird, one with white shoulders, and the other with a red head. It is the former kind which is referred to here[2]. Suśruta describes its length to be ten aṅguli[3], while Dallaṇa mentions the length to be twelve aṅguli.

---

[1] आटीमुखमिति, आटी जलवर्द्धनी नाम पक्षिविशेषः तन्मुखवन्मुखं यस्य तत् आटीमुखं तथाचोक्तं :—

हन्तं सप्ताङ्गुलं विद्यात् तस्याग्रे फलमिष्यते।
आटीमुख प्रकारं हि फलमङ्गुष्ठमायतम्।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[2] शरारीमुखमिति, दीर्घचञ्चुः पक्षिविशेषः स द्विविधः धवलस्कन्धः रक्तशीर्षश्च धवलस्कन्धस्य शरारीति संज्ञा तन्मुखवन्मुखं तस्य शस्त्रस्य लोके कर्त्तरीति संज्ञा ताञ्च द्वादशाङ्गुलां चलत्पलासां कुर्य्यात्।

Ibid.

[3] दशाङ्गुला शरारीमुखी सा कर्त्तरीति कथ्यते।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

It is recommended to be used for evacuating abscess[1], etc. Suśruta mentions karttarī as a synonym but Vāgbhaṭa counts it as a separate instrument. He describes karttarī as a pair of scissors used by the barbers for clipping hair and is said to have been necessary for dividing the nerves, ligaments and fine hairs[2].

12. Antarmukha.

Suśruta describes another variety of scissors, used principally for evacuating abscesses. It is so named, for its straight cutting edges are within its curved claws[3]. It is said to be six aṅguli long and one and a half aṅguli broad[4]. It seems that the curvature of the blade varied widely; and Vāgbhaṭa describes a variety called

---

[1] स्राव्ये शरार्थास्यविकृर्त्तिके।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

स्रावे विस्रावनविषये कर्म्मणि शरार्थास्या विकृर्त्तके दे शस्त्रे योज्ये:। तत्र शरार्थास्य शरारीमुखं शरारी दीर्घचञ्चु: पक्षिविशेष: तस्य मुखवदास्यं यस्य तत् शरार्थास्यं, तच्च चलत्फलं दशाङ्गुलं दीर्घं कार्य्यं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[2] स्नायु सूक्ष्म कचच्छेदे कर्त्तरी कर्त्तरीनिभा।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

कर्त्तरीशस्त्रमाह स्नायुत्यादि कर्त्तरीनामशस्त्रं कर्त्तरीसदृशं तच्च स्नायुच्छेदने सूक्ष्मकेशच्छेदने च योज्यं। कर्त्तरी काटारी इति यस्य प्रसिद्धि:।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[3] अन्तर्मुखमिति मध्यमुखं तल्लक्षणमाह—

अष्टाङ्गुलप्रमाणेन जिह्मधारेण चायुतम्।
शस्त्रमन्तर्मुखं नाम चन्द्रार्द्धं इव चोद्धृतं।

Nivandha Saṅgraha, I. viii.

[4] तदन्तर्मुखं तस्य फलमध्यर्द्धमङ्गुलं॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

arddhacandrānan[1] or "half-moon faced" scissors in which the blades are curved like the half-moon. It has the length of eight aṅguli, the blade measuring one and a half aṅguli. This is also to be used for letting out pus from abscesses.

Hārīta, however, mentions a śastra, called also arddhacandra or half-moon, but he recommends its use for excising the prolapsed arms of a dead fœtus to effect its delivery[2]. This instrument can not but be a knife, for it seems difficult to cut off the arm, even of a fœtus, with a pair of scissors. Moreover, antarmukha has never been credited with the power of excising the arm.

13. Trikūrccaka.

It has been translated in English as a thin-edged sharp instrument or trocar. Wise, Dutt and Hoernle agree to mean by it a trocar. But it can be better explained if we understand by the term an instrument consisting of three needles fixed on a round

---

अपरञ्च विस्रावण शस्त्रमाह तददित्यादि तद्वत् कुशाटीवदनवत्, अन्तर्मुखं अन्तर्मुख नाम शस्त्रं साध्ये योज्यं तस्य अन्तर्मुखस्यफलं अध्यर्धमङ्गुलं स्यात्। आधि अधिकं अर्द्ध अध्यर्द्ध। सार्द्धैकमङ्गुलमित्यर्थः।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[1] अर्द्ध चन्द्राननं चैत तथाध्यर्द्धाङ्गुलं फले ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

अन्तर्मुखस्य प्रकारभेदमाह अर्द्धचन्द्राननमित्यादि एतत् अन्तर्मुखं, अर्द्धचन्द्राननं अर्द्धचन्द्राकारमुखञ्च भवति, तदपि तद्वत्, कुशाटीवदनवत् साध्ये योज्यं। तच्च फले अर्द्धाङ्गुलं अर्द्धाङ्गुलपरिमाण फलमित्यर्थः। अर्द्धचन्द्राकारमुखत्वात् अस्य शस्त्रस्यापि अर्द्धचन्द्राननमिति संज्ञेति बोध्यं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[2] अथवार्द्धचन्द्रेण शस्त्रेणैव मृतगर्भस्य बाहुयुगलं सन्धिबन्धान्निःसारयेत्।

Hārīta Saṁhitā, III, li.

wooden handle[1]. According to Suśruta, the length of the instrument is six aṅguli. But others describe it as eight aṅguli long, the blade and the handle measuring three and five aṅguli respectively[2]. The distance between the edges is the breadth of a grain of rice. The end of the handle is ornamented with a circular metallic plate as a ring.

It is recommended to be used for evacuating abscesses and for draining blood from the nasal polypus.

Caraka[3] mentions an instrument called kūrcca and says:— "After fomenting and thus softening the rounded nodules (of leprosy) which are fixed and hard, by heated stones and fumigations through tubes, they are to be injured by the kūrcca and the blood that oozes out, should be wiped away."

Two other instruments are described by Vāgbhaṭa as being constructed on a similar principle. One is named kūrcca and the

---

[1] चिकुर्चकमिति चयः कूर्चा यस्य तत् विकूर्चकम्। कूर्चः कूंची इति लोके।
Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[2] विकूर्चकमिति चयः कूर्चा यस्य तत् विकूर्चकम् तच्च तत्त्वान्तरम्:—

अङ्गुलानि तथाष्टौ च शस्त्रं कार्यं चिकूर्चकं।
फलैरन्तर्मुखाकारैरङ्गुलैरन्वितं विभिः।
एकैकस्य फलस्यैषामन्तरं व्रीहिसम्मितम्।
हस्तं पञ्चाङ्गुलायामं कार्यं रुचकभूषितम्॥

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[3] स्थिरकठिनमण्डलानां स्विन्नानां प्रस्तरप्रणाड़ीभिः।
कूर्चैर्विघट्टितानां रक्तात्क्लेशोऽपनेतव्यः॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. vii.

other, khaja. The kūrcca[1], he describes as an instrument "consisting of seven or eight rounded sharp needles, four aṅguli long, nicely bound together by a cord and tightly fixed on a circular wooden handle." He mentions its use in the operation of scratching to cure baldness and the brown and black spots on the face. For scarifying a bald spot, Cakradatta[2] uses needles, rough leaves, etc. "The khaja[3]," Vāgbhaṭa continues, "consists of eight rounded needles having the sharp ends half an aṅguli long. It is to be introduced

---

[1] कूर्चोऽस्त्रैक पीठस्थाः सप्ताष्टौ वा सुबन्धनाः।
संयोज्य नीलिका व्यङ्ग केश शातेषु कुट्टने॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

सम्प्रति कूर्चाख्यं शस्त्रं लक्षयितुमाह सप्तेत्यादि ताः सूच्यः सप्तैव ह्रस्वाः वर्त्तुलाः तथा चतुरङ्गुलाः चतुरङ्गुलदीर्घाः कूर्चः इत्युच्यन्ते। ताः सूच्यः पुनः कीदृशाः? ह्रस्वैकपीठस्थाः ह्रस्वे वर्त्तुले एकस्मिन् पृष्टे संस्थिताः, एकं ह्रस्वाकारं काष्ठफलकं परिवेष्य स्थिता इत्यर्थः। तथा सप्तसंख्यका अष्टसंख्यका वा, तथा शोभनं रज्ज्वादिकृतं बन्धनं यासां तास्तथाविधाः सुबन्धनाः। स कूर्चः नीलिकादिषु रोगेषु कुट्टने कुट्टनार्थं संयोज्यः प्रयोज्य इत्यर्थः। कुट्टनं आँचड़ान इति लोके। नीलिकादयो वक्ष्यमाणा केशशातः केशानां पतनं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[2] अवगाढ़पदञ्चैव पुच्छयित्वा पुनः पुनः।

Cakradatta, Kṣudraroga Cikitsā.

अवगाढ़पदमिति गम्भीरपदं यथास्यात् तथा सूचीनखरत्रन्यादिभिः पुच्छयित्वा * * *

Tattva Candrikā, ibid.

[3] अर्द्धाङ्गुलमुखैर्ह्रस्वैरष्टाभिः कण्टकैः खजः।
पाणिभ्यां मध्यमाभ्यान घ्राणात्तेन हरेदसृक्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

खजसंज्ञकशस्त्रमाह अर्द्धाङ्गुलमुखैरित्यादि अर्द्धाङ्गुलप्रमाणं मुख येषां ते अर्द्धाङ्गुलमुखा सेवर्द्धाङ्गुलमुखैः ह्रस्वैः वर्त्तुलैः अष्टाभिः अष्टसंख्यकैः कण्टकैः कृतं शस्त्रं खज उच्यते। तेन खजाख्येन शस्त्रेण पाणिभ्यां हस्ताभ्यां मध्यमाभ्यां आलोड्यमानेन घ्राणात् नासिकाया असृक्रक्तं हरेत्, निर्हरेदित्यर्थः।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

into the nostrils and turned to and fro with both hands to bleed the nasal polypi."

The Greeks and Romans used a similar instrument for identical purpose. It was called katiádion, measuring a blade of grass, and was used for opening abscesses of the womb and tonsils, drawing blood from the inside of the nose and perforating the fœtal cranium.

In India, the practice of drawing blood from the nasal polypus by blades of grass is still in vogue; and Arœteus mentions it as a common mode of scarification in ancient Greece also[1]. "On the next day we are to abstract blood from the inside of the nostrils, and for this purpose push into them the long instrument named Katiádion, or the one named Toryne, or in want of these we must take the thick quill of a goose, and having scraped the nervous part of it into teeth like a saw, we are to push it down the nostrils as far as the ethmoid cells, then shake it with both hands, so that the part may be scarified by its teeth. Thus we shall have a ready and copious flow of blood; for slender veins terminate there and the parts are soft and easily cut. The common people have many modes of scarification, by rougher herbs and dried leaves of the bay, which they introduce with the fingers and move strongly." Paul[2] opens the vessels in the nostrils with the reed called typha.

14. Kuṭhārikā.

It is a small instrument shaped like an axe, so called from its resemblance to kuṭhāra, an axe which is still used in India

[1] Extant works of Arœteus, P. 460.

[2] Paul, vol. II. Sec. lx.

for cutting wood[1]. Vāgbhaṭa says[2] that "the base of the blade is thicker and broader than the end and is fitted to a handle, seven and a half aṅguli long. The blade which is shaped like the tooth of a cow, has the width of one aṅguli." Bhoja describes the width of the blade to be a half aṅguli[3]. It is recommended to be used for puncturing vessels in the following manner[4]:—"Hold the handle with the left hand and put the blade on the vessel resting on a bone. Raise the instrument a little upwards and then strike over the thick base of the blade with the downward strokes of the middle or index finger, when let go

---

[1] For figure of Kuṭhāra as used in Ancient India, see Pl. xxii in Ferguson's Tree and Serpent Worship.

[2] पृथुः कुठारी गोदन्तसदृशार्द्धाङ्गुलानना।
तयोर्ऽदण्डया विध्येदुपर्यस्थ्नां सिरां स्थितां॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

कुठारिका संज्ञकं शस्त्रमाह पृथुरित्यादि कुठारी पृथुः स्यात्। कुठारिका नामशस्त्रं पृथुः स्थूलमूलं स्यादित्यर्थः। तथा गोदन्तसदृशार्द्धाङ्गुलानना गवां दन्तः गोदन्त सत्सदृशं तुल्याकारं अर्द्धाङ्गुलायतं आननं मुखं यस्याः सा तथा विधया तया कुठार्या ऊर्ऽदण्डया अस्थ्नां उपरिस्थितां सिरां विध्येत्। तदूर्ध्वं वामहस्तेनोच्चीकृत्य कुठार्यामुखं शिरोपरि संस्थाप्य दक्षिनाङ्गुष्ठतर्ज्जनीभ्यां कुठारिकामस्तकमभिहत्य सिरां विध्येत्।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[3] कुठारिकेति कुठारतुल्या कुठारिकाः—

कुठारिकाया दन्तं स्यात् सार्ऽसप्ताङ्गुलायतं।
फलमर्द्धाङ्गुलायामं गोदन्तसदृशं समम्॥

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[4] तथा मध्यमयाङ्गुल्या वैद्योऽङ्गुष्ठ विमुक्तया।
ताड़येदुत्थितां ज्ञात्वा स्पर्शादवाङ्गुष्ठ पीड़नैः॥
कुठार्यां लक्षयेन्मध्ये वामहस्त ग्रहीतया।
फलोर्ध्वे सुनिष्कम्पं शिरां तदच मोक्षयेत्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

forcibly from the under surface of the thumb". Cakradatta[1] also advises us to use it in a similar manner. To open the veins in fleshy parts, Vāgbhaṭa recommends the vrīhimukha knife, while the kuṭhārīkā is advised to be used in venesection on bony structures.[2]

Pālakāpya[3] mentions the kuṭhāra and describes its shape to be like an axe. It is to be used for excision and scarification. He describes another śastra called vatsadanta (*lit.*, the calf's tooth); it is ten aṅguli long; and the mouth of the instrument is one and a half aṅguli broad. It is also to be used for excision.

"Bleeding from the jugular vein, he (Albucasis) describes much in the same way that it is now practised by veterinary surgeons, namely, by placing a sort of scalpel bent at the point, which he calls fissorium, upon the vein, and striking the instrument with a hammer or some such body. He gives drawings of variously shaped lancets for opening the veins of the arm."[4]

"Ferriers bleed with a fleam, which, though apparently a clumsy method of operating, is certainly safer than the lancet in

---

[1] वामहस्तेन विन्यस्य कुठारीमितरेण तु।
ताड़येन्मध्यमाङ्गुल्याङ्गुष्टविष्टब्धमुष्टया॥

Cakradatta Śīrāvyādhādhikāra.

[2] मांसले निक्षिपेद्वैद्यो व्रीहास्यं व्रीहिमात्रकम्।
यवाङ्गमस्थ्नामुपरि शिरां विध्यन् कुठारिकाम्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[3] कुठाराकृति कुर्य्यात्। कुठारी शस्त्रपक्षेदनार्थं। वत्सदन्ताकृति वत्सदन्तं दशाङ्गुलम्। एकैकमध्यर्धाङ्गुलमुखम्। एवमेतानि च त्रीण्यपि यथायोगं प्रच्छनार्थं।

* * * * * *

कुठाराकृतिशस्त्रेण ततस्तं प्रच्छयेद्भिषक्।
नातिगाढं न च लघु न घनं विरलं न च॥

Pālakāpya, III. iii.

[4] Albucasis Chirrug. ii. 97; also see Adam's Commentary on Paul, VI. lx. 323.

unknown hands." "In bleeding with a fleam, the near side is most convenient. In skilful hands, there is no occasion for a blood stick, as the fleam may be struck with the right hand if it is made broad and round at the back. It also may be made much smaller and neater than that generally employed". There is a drawing of such an improved fleam which much resembles in appearance the kuṭhārī of the Hindus. "A fleam is rather more convenient instrument in bleeding, either from the arm or thigh, as the vein is somewhat apt to roll when a lancet is used."[1]

15. Vrīhimukha.

It is described as a kind of trocar[2], the sharp end being pointed and shaped like a grain of paddy. It is six aṅguli long, the handle being two and the blade four aṅguli (Bhoja). But Vāgbhaṭa[3] describes the length of the blade to be one and a half aṅguli.

It is advised to be used for paracentesis abdominis in abdominal dropsy. Suśruta says :[4] "The friends of the patient should

---

[1] White's Compendium of the Veterinary Art, 1851, 18th ed. P. 342.

[2] व्रीहिमुखमिति व्रीहिमुखमिव मुखमस्य व्रीहिमुखं तत्र भोजः—

शस्त्रं व्रीहिमुखं कार्य्यमङ्गुलानि षडायतम्।
द्वाङ्गुलं तस्य हन्तं स्यात् तत्फलं चतुरङ्गुलम्।
तन्मुखं व्रीहिविस्तारं तनुसंगूढकण्टकम्॥

Nivandha Saṅgraha, I. viii.

[3] * * * तथाध्यर्द्धाङ्गुलं फले।
व्रीहिवक्त्रं * * *

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛday Saṁhitā, I. xxvi,

[4] उदकोदरिणस्तु वातहरतैलाभ्यक्तस्वेदोदकस्विन्नस्य स्थितस्याधः सुपरिगृहीतस्याकचात्परिवेष्टितस्याधो नाभेर्व्यामतयतुरङ्गुलमपहाय रोमराज्या व्रीहिमुखेनाङ्गुष्ठोदर प्रमाणमवगाढं विध्येत्॥

Suśrutā Saṁhitā., IV. xiv.

hold him under the axilla. Then the abdomen is to be tapped by the vrīhimukha knife at a point, four aṅguli distant on the left side from the median line, underneath the navel." Vāgbhaṭa[1] advises us to surround a broad bandage round the abdomen before tapping it by the instrument, which he recommends to be introduced up to one aṅguli. Cakradatta[2] refers to works on surgery for the surgical treatment of ascites. A small incision is directed to be made before the puncture.

In the Aśvavaidyaka, for this operation, the utpalapatra knife is recommended; an incision four aṅguli long is directed to be made above or below the navel of the horse, and then the end of the knife is to be plunged into the abdominal cavity up to one aṅguli.[3] The vrīhimukha is also advised to be similarly used.[4]

Hippocrates speaks of evacuating the fluid in paracentesis abdominis with an instrument which Camper thinks must have been a kind of trocar.[5]

---

[1] सजले जठरे तैलैरभ्यक्तस्यानिलापहैः।
स्विन्नस्योष्णाम्बुना कक्षमुदरे परिवेष्टिते॥
वङ्क्षिद्रोदितोस्थाने विध्येदङ्गुलमाचकम्।
निधाय तस्मिन्नाड़ीञ्च स्रावयेदमभसः॥
अथास्य नाड़ीमाकृष्य तैलेन लवणेन च।
व्रणमभ्यज्य बद्धा च वेष्टयेद वाससोदरम्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, IV. xv.

[2] जातं जातं जलं स्राव्यं शास्त्रोक्तं शस्त्रकर्म्म च।

Cakradatta, Udaracikitsā.

[3] See foot-note, 1. p. 242.

[4] See foot-note. 4. p. 241.

[5] See the Commentary on Paul. By Adams, vol. II, P. 338.

It is also to be used for puncturing the vessels in phlebotomy (Vāgbhaṭa)[1] especially in the fleshy parts of the body.[2] Cakradatta uses vrīhimukha in phlebotomy and says: "The sharp end of the vrīhimukha should be kept under the palm between the thumb and index finger and is to be thrust into the seat of puncture."[3]

Suśruta directs us to use it in tapping the hydrocele:[4] "Then the hydrocele is to be wrapped round with a bandage. The fluid is next to be drained by tapping it with a vrīhimukha on the lower part of the scrotum, little externally to the suture." Similar directions are given in the Yogratnākara.[5] Cakradatta also gives a similar discription.[6]

---

[1] व्रीहिवक्त्रं प्रयोज्यञ्च तत्सिरोदरयोर्वेध्ये:।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxvi.

व्रीहिमुखाख्यं शस्त्रं आह व्रीहिवक्त्रमित्यादि व्रीह्यर्वक्त्रमिव वक्त्रं यस्य तत् व्रीहिवक्त्रं। व्रीहिमुखं यत्शस्त्रं तत्सिरानां व्यधे व्यधने तथा उदरस्य जलोदरस्य व्यधे स्रावणार्थं योज्यं।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī. IV. xxvi.

ताड़यन् पीड़येच्चैनां विध्येद व्रीहिमुखेन तु।

Aṣṭāṅga, Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] मांसले निःक्षिपेद्भैषे व्रीहास्यं व्रीहिमाचकम्।

Ibid.

मांसलेष्ववकाशेषु यवमात्रं शस्त्रं निदध्यादतोऽन्येष्वर्द्धयवमात्रं व्रीहिमात्रं वा व्रीहिमुखेन।

Suśrutā Saṁhita. IV. viii.

[3] ततो व्रीहिमुखं व्यध्यप्रदेशे न्यस्य पीड़येत्।
अङ्गुष्ठतर्ज्जनीभ्यन्तु तलप्रच्छादितं भिषक्॥

Cakradatta Śīrāvyādhādhikāra.

[4] See foot note 5. P. 123.

[5] संस्वेद्य मूत्रप्रभवं वस्त्रखण्डेन वेष्टयेत्।
सीवन्या पार्श्वतोऽधस्ताद्विध्येत् व्रीहिमुखेण वै॥

Yogaratnākara.

[6] संस्वेद्य मूत्रप्रभवां वस्त्रपट्टेन वेष्टयेत्।
सीवन्याः पार्श्वतोऽधस्ताद्विध्याद्व्रीहिमुखेण वै॥

Chakradatta Vṛddhi Cikitsā.

Paul describes the operation but he recommends a sharp-pointed knife or lancet instead of a trocar. He says: "Wherefore we must make the patient stand erect; or if this can not be done, we must cause him to be seated; * * * . We give orders to the assistants standing behind to press with their hands and push downwards the swelling to the pubes. Then taking a sharp-pointed knife or lancet, if dropsy be among the intestines, in the perpendicular line of the navel, and about three fingers' breadth distance from it we divide the hypogastrium as far as the peritoneum."[1] Celsus mentions that some perform it at a spot four fingers' breadth below the navel in the left side, and recommends us to use a perforator, the point of which should be about the size of the third part of a fingers' breadth.[2] Vegetius, the veterinary surgeon, recommends paracentesis for the dropsy of cattle.[3] The Arabic authors Avicenna,[4] Serapion,[5] Albucasis,[6] Haly Abbas,[7] and Rhases,[8] give similar descriptions.

In modern times, we perform the operation in the same way. "It is necessary in certain conditions to tap the abdomen in order to withdraw fluid which has accumulated there and this is usually done by means of a special trocar and canula. The site for tapping is selected, the usual spot being in the middle line, half-way between the umbilicus and the pubes. A

---

[1] Paulus Ægineta, Bk. VI. l. Syd. Soc. Ed.
[2] Celsus. vii. 15; ii. 10.
[3] Vegetius. Mulom. iii. 25.
[4] Avicenna, iii. 14; iv. 13.
[5] Serapion. iv. 7.
[6] Albucais: Chirrug. ii. 54.
[7] Haly Abbas, Pract. ix. 41.
[8] Rhases, Cont. xix.

small puncture about one-third of an inch long is made with the knife at the spot selected. The trocar and canula to which the rubber tubing is attached, are then thrust through the abdominal wall into the peritoneal cavity."[1]

The Greeks did not describe the operation of tapping the hydrocele. They always preferred the open incision to puncture. Paul uses a knife for making the skin incision, but when the tunica vaginalis is laid bare, he divides it through the middle with a lancet for bleeding.[2] Some of the Arab authors mention the operation of puncturing the scrotum for hydrocele. If the patient be timid, and do not choose to submit to open incisions, Albucasis advises the surgeon to let out the water either with a scalpel or the instrument used for tapping in dropsy. He states, however, that the water will collect again after this operation.[3] Rhases also describes this operation.[4]

In modern times, trapping for hydrocele is still practised. "When trapping a hydrocele the patient should be sitting up in a chair * * * . The scrotum, having been cleansed, is grasped from behind by the left hand * * * . A spot, free from any large veins, is selected on the anterior and lower part of the swelling, and the trocar and canula introduced with sharp stabbing movement."[5]

Pālakāpya[6] describes vrīhimukha as shaped like a grain of paddy and recommends it for scission and excision of muñja.

---

[1] Operations of General Practice. By Corner and Pinches. P. 109, 2nd ed.

[2] Paulus Ægineta, VI. lxii.

[3] Albucasis. Chrug. ii. 62.

[4] Rhases. Cont. xxiv.

[5] Operations of General Practice, P. 145.

[6] स्रवणं पाटनं चैव कुर्याद्रीहिमुखेन तु ।

Pālakāpya, III.

16. Ārā or awl.

It is a long sharp needle in handle, so called from its resemblance to the shoe-maker's instrument known as awl. "It has a total length of sixteen aṅguli, with a sharp end of the size of a sesamum seed. The handle is tapering like a cow's tail and is equal in circumference to the young stem of Dūrvā (Unodon Dactylon)" (Bhoja)[1]. Suśruta mentions its length to be six aṅguli. Vāgbhaṭa describes the length to be one aṅguli, the basal half being round, and the terminal half, four cornered and sharp pointed. The terminal part is introduced into the inflammatory swellings to confirm the diagonosis of suppuration. It is also to be used to drain the congested blood vessels in the matrix of the nails as a result of traumatism[2].

---

[1] आरेति, आरेव आरा असिः चर्म्मकाराणां शस्त्रं। तत्र तल्लान्तरम् :—

आरा द्व्यष्टाङ्गुलयामा कर्त्तव्या तु विशाम्पते।
तिलप्रमाणन्तु फलं तस्याः कार्य्यं समाहितं।
दुर्व्वाङ्कुरपरीणाहं हन्तं गोपुच्छसन्निभं।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[2] व्यधने कर्णपालीनां युथिका सुकुलानना।
आराङ्गुल हत्तास्या तत्प्रवेशी तथोद्धृतः॥
चतुरस्रा तया विध्येच्छोथं पक्वाम संशये।
कर्णपालीञ्च बहलां बहलाया न च शस्यते॥
सूचा विभागगुधिरा वाङ्गुला कर्णवेधनी।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdya Saṁhitā. I. xxvi.

सम्प्रति कर्णपालि व्यधन योग्यानि शस्त्राणि वक्तुमाह व्यधने इत्यादि कर्णपालीनां कर्णलतानां व्यधने व्यधनविषये युथिका युथिका नाम शस्त्रं योज्यं। कीदृशी? सुकुलानना सुकुलवत् प्रकृतत्वात् युथिका सुकुलवत् आनन सुखं यस्याः सा तथाविधा। आरेत्यादि अर्द्धाङ्गुलं परिमानं हत्तं वर्त्तुलं आस्यं मुखं यस्याः सा तथा अर्द्धाङ्गुलहत्तास्या, तथा स एव अर्द्धाङ्गुलप्रमाणः प्रवेशः प्रवेशनं यस्याः सा तथाविधा तत् प्रवेशा तथा ऊर्द्धतः हत्ताद्धाङ्गुलादुपरिष्टात् तथा अर्द्धाङ्गुल परिमाणैव चतुरस्रा चतुष्कोणा सा आरा कथ्यते।

It is also said to have been used for perforating a thick lobule of the ear, though for this purpose another instrument called karṇa-vedhanī or ear-perforator—a needle specially meant for perforating the lobules of the ears,—is mentoined. It is three aṅguli long, having a slit or eye in the three-fourths of its length. The barbers used a similar needle to perforate the ears on the ceremony of tonsure.

For piercing the lobule of the ear, another instrument is mentioned. It is called jūthikā, from its end resembling in shape the conical bud of jūthikā flower (Jasminum Auriculatum).

Suśruta uses ārā or pāṇimantha to perforate the bone in diseases of the medullary canal caused by the obstructed and deranged air[1]. He next introduces one end of a tube open at

---

एतेन आराया: फलं एकाङ्गुलपरिमितमिति फलति तव प्रथमार्द्धाङ्गुलं ङत्तंमपरार्द्धाङ्गुलं चतुरस्रं तयोरुभयभागयोर्मध्ये अयस्थयतुरस्रो भाग: प्रवेशयोग्य इति सूचितं। तया आरया पक्वाम संशये अयं शोथ: पक्व आमोवेति संशये सति तादृशं शोथं विधेयात्, तथा वहलां अतिमांसलां कर्णपालीच्च तया विधेयादिति योज्यं। वहलामित्यन्तेन च्छेद:। वहलाया-मित्यादि वहलाया: अतिमांसलाया: कर्णपाल्या: व्यधने कर्णवेधनी नाम्नी सूची च शस्यते। कीदृशी? त्रिभागशुषिरा, त्रिभाग: शुषिरं शून्यं यस्या: सा तथाविधा त्रिभागशुषिरा तथा वाङ्गुला अङ्गुलवयदीर्घा। न केवलमारा वहलाया: कर्णपाल्या व्यधने शस्यते अपि तु कर्णवेधनी नाम्नी सूची च शस्यते इत्यर्थ:। कर्णवेधनीं सूचीं अस्मदेशीया नरसुन्दरा कर्णवेधनार्थे व्यवहरन्ति। अतोऽयं वाङ्गुल्यवर्णनेति।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī. I. xxvi.

[1] निरूढेऽस्थनि वा वायौ पाणिमन्थेन दारिते।
नाड़ीं दत्वास्थनि भिषक् चूषयेत् पवनंवली॥

Suśruta Samhitā. IV. iv.

निरूढे इत्यादि। त्वङ्मांसं शस्त्रेण विपाट्य अस्थि पाणिमन्थेन अराशस्त्रेण विद्धा तत्र रन्ध्रे द्विमुखीं नाड़ीं प्रणिधाय सुखमारुतं चूषणेन लवनापकर्षणं करणीयमिति।

Nivandha Saṁgraha. IV. iv.

both ends into the canal through the hole in the bone, while through the other end the surgeon sucks out the air by his mouth.

For perforating the ears of the elephants, a similar needle is recommended by Pālakāpya. It is known as karmāra or nālī.

17. Vetasapatraka.

It is a long sharp cutting instrument shaped like the leaf of the rattan (Calamus Rotang). Its edge is finely serrated and very sharp. The blade and handle are equal in length, measuring four aṅguli. Bhoja says: "The blade is one aṅguli wide"[1]. It is said to have been used for puncturing vessels in phlebotomy[2].

18. Vaḍiśa or sharp hook.

In shape it is described to resemble the ordinary fish-hook. Bhoja describes the total length to be six aṅguli, its hook being half an aṅguli and its handle five and a half aṅguli long. The end is bent; the curvature varies and may be shaped like a half-moon[3].

---

[1] वेतसपत्रमिति, वेतसपत्रमिव वेतसपत्रमत्र भोजः—

तीक्ष्णमङ्गुल विस्तारं चतुरङ्गुलायतं।
अङ्गुलानि तु चत्वारि हन्तं कार्यं विजानता॥

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[2] वेतसं व्यधने।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

वेतसपत्रादि शस्त्रमाह वेतसमित्यादि वेतसं वेतसपत्रं नामशस्त्रं सिरादीनां व्यधन कर्म्मणि-योज्यं। वेतसपत्रवद्दन्तुरत्वात्तस्य वेतसं वेतसपत्रं वेत्ति संज्ञा।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[3] वड़िशमिति वड़िशतुल्यं वड़िशं मत्स्यावेधनीमाहुः। तत्र तल्लान्तरं :—

वड़िशे चापि कर्त्तव्ये प्रमाणे तु षड़ङ्गुले।
स्यानतन्तु तयोरेकमेकं नात्यायतं भवेत्।

Suśruta says[1]: The end of the hook is sharply edged and is said to have resembled the new leaf of Java (Hordeum vulgare).

It is recommended by Suśruta[2] to be used for extraction of foreign bodies, *e.g.*, the extraction of stone from the urethra. Its use is also mentioned for transfixing the membranous expansion in the operation for pterygium[3] and for fixing and dragging the uvula and tonsil before the performance of any operation on these parts[4]. Cakradatta[5] mentions its use for fixing a growth, before its excision by the knife.

अर्द्धापचाङ्गुलं हन्तं शेषं कार्यं मुखं तयोः।
अर्द्धचन्द्राकृति वक्त्रं कार्यं नात्यानतस्य तु।
स्यानतं नामयेत् तत्र वड़िशञ्चाभिपग्वरः।
हन्तायोरन्तरं स्याद् यावदर्द्धाङ्गुलं मतं।

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[1] वड़िशोदन्तशङ्कुश्चानताग्रे तीक्ष्णकण्टक प्रथमयवपत्रमुखे।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I, viii.

[2] यदृच्छया वा मूत्रमार्गप्रतिपन्नामन्तरासक्तां शुक्राश्मरीं शर्करां वा स्रोतसा अपहरेत् एवं चाशक्यं विदार्य्य वा नाड़ीं शस्त्रेण वड़िशेनोद्धरेत्।

Suśrutā Saṁhitā, IV. vii.

[3] यद्वणेगुण्डिकार्म्मादेर्वड़िशः सुनताननः॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi

वड़िशशस्त्रमाह यद्वणे इत्यादि सुष्ठु नतं अङ्कुशवत् नम्रकृतं आननं मुखं यस्य स तथाविधः सुनताननः वड़िशं मत्स्यवेधनवत् वड़िशोनाम शस्त्रं स्यात्। स च गुण्डिकार्म्मादेर्यद्वणे योज्यं। आदिपदेण उपजिह्विकादि परिग्रहः।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[4] पिड़कामुत्तमाख्याञ्च वड़िशेनोद्धरेद्भिषक्।
उद्धृत्य मधुसंयुक्तैः कषायैरवचूर्णयेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxi.

[5] उत्तमाख्यान्तुपिड़कां संक्षिप्य वड़िशोद्धृताम्।

Cakradatta, Śukradoṣa Cikitsā.

It was also used for fixing any growth in the eye, previous to its excision by the maṇḍalāgra[1]. For this purpose the Greeks used the vulsellum (myzon). Aetius says: "If there is a large and malignant excrescence in the angle of the orbit, the enlarged part must be seized with vulsella and cut off."[2]

Evidently vaḍiśa was used on many occasions when in modern times we use the dissection forceps to steady a part before excision.

Vaḍiśa is described in the Aśvavaidyaka[3] to have been similarly used during the operation of pterygium in horses.

Pālakāpya[4] mentions vaḍiśa which is described as eight aṅguli long, the end being rounded like a wheel. It is to be used for raising the membranes of the eye globe.

Sharp hooks were used by the Greeks and Romans, for similar purposes. The use of the sharp hook for fixing the pterygium is mentioned by Celsus[5], Aetius[6], Paul[7] and Albucasis[8].

Its use in the excision of the tonsil is mentioned by Paul[9]. After the patient being placed in the proper position, he narrates: "We take a hook (tenaculum) and perforate the

---

[1] See foot notes 1, 2 and 3, P. 227.

[2] Aetius. vi. 74.

[3] चितौ निपात्य तुरगं ततोनेत्रं प्रसारयेत्।
कृतकर्म्मा भिषग्विद्वान् वड़िशेनाक्षिवर्त्म नि॥
Aśvavaidyka, XXX. v. 32.

[4] वड़िशं चक्रायमष्टाङ्गुलप्रमाणमक्ष्णोः पटलोद्धरनार्थं चेति।
Palakāpya, III. xxx.

[5] Celsus. VII. vii.

[6] Aetius. Tet. ii, iii, 60.

[7] Paul. VI. xiii.

[8] Albucasis. Chirrug. ii, 16.

[9] Paul. VI. xxx.

tonsil with it, and drag it outwards as much as we can without drawing its membranes along with it, and then we cut it out by the root with the scalpel suited to the hand, called ancylotomus, for there are two such instruments, having opposite characters".

19. Danta śaṅku or tooth-scaler.

Its head is half an aṅguli long. It is quadrangular in shape and has a sharp edge. Suśruta [1] describes the end as slightly bent, sharp and shaped like the fresh leaf of Java. Bhoja [2] describes the end to be like that of the vrīhimukha.

Vāgbhaṭa[3] describes a similar instrument called dantalekhana or tooth-scaler. It is also quadrangular in shape, one side being sharp-edged and the opposite side little lengthened. It is

---

[1] See foot note 1. P. 265.

[2] एवं हि क्रियते एतौ दशशङ्कुर्विजानता ।
शङ्कु यच्च मुखं तस्य कार्यमङ्गुलायतम् ॥
चतुरस्रं समञ्चैव तीक्ष्णधारं समाहितं ।
इत्ताग्रं तस्य कर्त्तव्यं शस्त्रं व्रीहिमुखाकृति ।
कपालिकां शर्करांञ्च दन्तस्थान्नेन शोधयेत् ॥

Nivandha Saṁgraha, I. viii.

[3] एकधारं चतुष्कोणं प्रहृद्वाकृति चैकतः ।
दन्तलेखनकं तेन शोधयेद्दन्तशर्करान् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

दन्तलेखन शस्त्रमाह एक धारमित्यादि एका धारा यस्य तत् एकधारं चत्वारः कोणा यस्य तत् चतुष्कोणं कोणः कोणा इति यस्य प्रसिद्धिः तथा एकतः एकदेशात् प्रहृद्वा वर्द्धनशीला ग्राकृतिः ग्राकारो यस्य तत्तथाविधं प्रहृद्वाकृति दन्तलेखनं दन्तलेखनाख्यं शस्त्रं स्यात् तेन दन्तलेखनाख्येन शस्त्रेण दन्तशर्करान् दन्तनिबद्धान् शर्कराख्यान् लेखयेत् कर्शयेदित्यर्थः । दन्तालिख्यन्ते अनेनेति दन्तलेखनं दन्तशर्करा पाथरि इति लोके ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

recommended to be used for the extraction of sordes and tartar from the teeth [1].

The procedure of the operation of tooth-extraction is not described in detail in the medical books of the Hindus. But the operation seems to have been well known, for Suśruta distinctly advises the students to practise the operation of extraction on the fruits of Panas (Atrocarpus Integrifolia), Vimbī (Cephalandra Indica), Vilva (Ægle Marmelos) and on the teeth of the dead animals [2]. He also advises us to extract the wisdom teeth and to apply cautery to their sockets [3]. Also when a tooth becomes loose he directs us to extract it and apply cautery to the socket [4]. In the treatment of sinus caused by carious tooth, he advises us to extract the tooth, otherwise the sinus would extend down to the inferior maxillary bone [5].

---

[1] शस्त्रेण दन्तवैदर्भे दन्तमूलानि शोधयेत् ।

* * * *

अहिंसन् दन्तमूलानि शर्करासु हरेद् भिषक् ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxii.

[2] See foot note 2. P. 280.

[3] उद्धृत्याधिकदन्तन्तु ततोऽग्निमवचारयेत् ।
कृमिदन्तक-वच्चापि विधिः कार्य्यो विजानता ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxii,

[4] चलमुद्धृत्य च स्थानं विदहेच्छुषिरस्य च ।

Ibid.

[5] यन्दन्तमधिजायेत नाड़ी तंदन्तमुद्धरेत् ।
छित्वा मांसानि शस्त्रेण यदि नोपरिजीभवेत् ॥
शोधयित्वा दहेद्वापि क्षारेण ज्वलनेन वा ।
भिनत्त्यु पेचिते दन्ते हनुकास्थि गतिध्रुवं ॥
समूलं दशनं तस्मादुद्धरेद भग्नमस्थि च ॥
उद्धृतेतूत्तरे दन्ते सशल्ये स्थिरवत्त्यजेत् ॥

Ibid.

Pālakāpya[1] mentions the extraction of tooth of the elephant by means of enīpada which is an iron bar, thirty-two aṅguli long and equal to the tooth in circumference.

Paul says[2] : "The laminæ which unite to them (the teeth) we may remove as may appear proper, with the concave part of a specillum, a raspatory, or a file." The operation of tooth-extraction was however, not liked by the ancient Greeks as cases in which the operation proved fatal, occurred in their practice. Cælius Aurelianus, Herophilus, and Galen disapprove in general of the operation, except in extreme cases.

It would, no doubt, be interesting to know that in ancient India, the Hindus knew how to make false teeth to be used by men who have lost them either by accident or by extraction by the dentists. In 1194 A.D., Sahabuddin defeated Jayacandra in battle, "and the incident of the body of the rāja being recognised by his false teeth[3]—a circumstance which throws some light on the state of manners" is well known.

20. Eṣaṇī or sharp probes.

"The probes", says Caraka [4], "are of two kinds, the hard or

---

[1] द्वात्रिंशदङ्गुलायतदशनपरिनाहेन लौहदण्डेन ।
एनीपदेन कुर्य्याद्व्रणं तयोः सम्यक् ॥
व्रीहिसुखेन च परिशोध्य सर्व्वसश दन्तमूलेषु ।
उष्णोदकधौतेषु मधुसर्पिः पूरणं दद्यात् ॥

Pālakāpya, III. xviii.

[2] Paul. VI. xxviii.

[3] Elphinstone's History of India, P. 365, 5th Ed.

[4] द्विविधामेषणां विद्यान्मृदीञ्च कठिनामपि ।
उद्दिशेदुभिनालेर्लोहानां वा शलाकया ॥
गम्भीरमांसगे देशे पार्श्वे लौहशलाकया ।
एषणं विद्याद व्रणं नालेविपरीतमतो भिषक् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xiii.

metallic probes, and the soft probes such as the young stems of plants. The hard probes are required for deep sinuses in the fleshy parts and the sides of the body, while the softer varieties are used for probing the superficial sinuses". The ends of the probes are generally shaped like the head of the earth-worms[1]. Suśruta[2] describes them to be eight aṅguli long. They are to be used as probes to ascertain the direction of sinuses.[3] The blunt probes have been described before under the śalākās.[4]

The sharp probes have the shape of a needle and are six aṅguli long. The other end carries an eye through which is put one end of a caustic thread (*i.e.*, thread soaked in caustic lotion and then dried). The probe is to be used for piercing the tissues through the blind end of the sinus. The end of the thread is next to be withdrawn from the eye of the probe and a tight knot applied with the other end. The intervening bridge of tissues is thus gradually cut and the sinus opened. If the cord be found inefficient for the purpose, a second thread is to be tied similarly.[5]

---

[1] एषणी गण्डुपदाकारमुखी ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[2] तत्र नखशस्त्रैषण्यावष्टाङ्गुले ।

Ibid.

[3] गतेरन्वेषणे श्रेष्ठा गण्डुपदमुखैषणी ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

एषाण्यख्यं शस्त्रमाह गतेरित्यादि एषणीनाम शस्त्रं गते: नाड़ीव्रणस्य पूयादिपथस्य अन्वेषणे अन्ववेक्षणे योज्यं । सा चैषनी श्रेष्ठा कोमलस्पर्शा, तथा गण्डुपदमुखा, मण्डलिता मुखाकार मुखा च भवति ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[4] See page 155-7.

[5] क्षतदुर्व्वलभीरूणां नाड़ीमर्म्मस्थिताच या ।
क्षारसूत्रेण तां छिन्द्यान्न तु शस्त्रेण बुद्धिमान् ॥

This method of treatment is recommended for the weak and timid patients. The needle-shaped probe is also to be used in the extirpation of new growths by means of caustic threads. Cakradatta[1] also describes this operation; evidently he copies it from Suśruta. In the Yogaratnākara[2] the verses describing the operation are also quoted. Vāgbhaṭa also mentions a needle-shaped probe for the same purpose.[3]

In treating of fistula-in-ano, Paul quotes from Hippocrates and says[4] :—"For Hippocrates directs us to pass a raw thread,

---

एषणी गतिमन्विष्य चारसूत्रानुसारिणीम् ।
सूचीं निदध्याद्गत्यन्ते तयोन्नम्याग्र निर्हरेत् ॥
सूत्रसान्तं समानीय गाढबन्धं समाचरेत् ।
ततः क्षार वलं बीत्य सूत्रमन्यत् प्रवेशयेत् ॥
क्षाराक्तं मतिमान् वैद्यो यावन्नच्छिद्यते गतिः ।
भगन्दरेऽप्येष विधिः कार्यः वैद्येन जानता ॥
अर्ब्बुदादिसु चोत्क्षिप्य मूले सूत्रं निधापयेत् ।
सूचीभिर्यावक्त्राभिराचितं वा समन्ततः ।
मूले सूत्रेण वध्नीयाच्छिन्ने चोपचरेद्व्रणः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xvii.

[1] These verses are quoted in the Cakradatta, Nāḍivraṇa Cikitsā.

[2] Also quoted in the Yogaratnākara, P. 346.

[3] भेदनार्थेऽपरा सूचीमुखा मूलनिविष्टखा ।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

अपरमन्वेषणी शस्त्रमाह । भेदनार्थं इत्यादि भेदनार्थं नाड़ीव्रणानां गतिभेदनार्थं अपरा पूर्व्वोक्ताया एषण्या अन्या सूचीमुखा सूच्याकार मुखा स्यात् तथा मूले मूलदेशे निविष्टं, सूत्रनिवेश योग्यं खं छिद्रं यस्याः सा मूलनिविष्टखा सच्छिद्रमूलमित्यर्थः । अस्या एषण्यामूले छिद्रकरणं क्षारक्तसूत्रनिबन्धनार्थं । तेन प्रभिन्न द्वारनिष्काशितेन दृढ़बन्धेन क्षारसूत्रेण नाड़ीव्रणः प्रकाश्यते ।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī, I. xxvi.

[4] Paul. VI lxxviii.

consisting of five pieces, through the fistula by means of a probe having a perforation, or a double headed specillum; and to tie the ends of the thread and tighten it every day until the whole intermediate substance between the orifices be divided and the ligatute fall out". Hippocrates [1] describes minutely the apolinose and recommends it for those who from timidity avoid a surgical operation. Celsus recommends the thread to be smeared with some escharotic ointment. The process, he says, is slow but free from pain[2]. Albucasis [3] also approves of the operation according to circumstances. The operation called apolinose *i.e.*, by the ligature, is very celebrated. Ambrose Pare, Foubert, Camper, Giudo de Cauliaco and Rogerius approve of the ligature. It has been recommended by some of the modern surgeons[4]. The operation is still practised in India by the Madrasi specialists for fistula-in-ano.

Vāgbhaṭa [5] describes copper probes having the sharp ends shaped like the buds of Kuravaka (Baleria Cristata) to be used in

---

[1] Hippocrates. 'De Fistulis'.

[2] Celsus. vii. 4.

[3] Albucasis. Chirrug. ii. 80.

[4] Lancet. vol. 1. 1845, new series.

[5] तास्री शलाका द्विमुखा मुखे कुरवकाकृतिः।
लिङ्ग नाशं तथा विध्येत्॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxvi.

शलाका शस्त्रं अङ्गुलि शस्त्रवच्चाह तास्रीत्यादि द्विमुखा, द्विधारा, मुखे, मुखप्रदेशे कुरवकाकृतिः, रक्तझिण्टीपुष्प मुकुलकारा, तास्री, तामसयी, शलाका, शलाका शस्त्रं स्यात्। तया शलाकया लिङ्गनाशं, कफीत्थं पटल संज्ञकं चक्षुरोग विशेषं विध्येत्। विध्येदित्यनेन च्छेदः।

Vagbhatārtha Kaumūdī I. xxvi.

the operation of cataract. Suśruta[1] describes such a probe to be eight aṅguli long, made of copper, or iron, or gold, the ends being shaped like buds. A thread is spirally twisted round the middle of the instrument for a length of a thumb's breadth, to afford a firm grasp by the surgeon's fingers. This instrument must not be rough, thick or very sharp, for then there would be a greater chance of the eye being injured more than is necessary and at many places. So also in couching of cataract, Celsus says: "Then a needle is to be applied, sharp so as to penetrate, but not too fine."[2]

Pālakāpya[3] mentions eṣaṇī in the surgical treatment of diseases of the elephants. He describes three probes,—smooth and shaped like the collyrium rods. They are recommended to be ten, twenty and thirty aṅguli long respectively.

---

[1] शलाका कर्कशाशूलं खरा दोषपरिप्लुतं ।
व्रणं विशालं स्थूलाग्रा तीक्ष्णा हिंसादनेकधा ॥
जलास्रावन्तु विषमा क्रियासङ्गमथास्थिरा ।
करोति वर्जिता दोषैस्सस्रादिभिर्हिता भवेत् ॥
अष्टाङ्गुलायता मध्ये सूत्रेण परिवेष्टिता ।
अङ्गुष्ठ पर्व्वसमिता वक्त्रयोर्म्मुकुला कृतिः ॥
तास्रायसी शातकौम्भी शलाका सद्मदनिन्दिता ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xvii.

[2] Celsus. VII. viii.

[3] स्थिरा सद्मी च कर्त्तव्या व्रणानामेषणी भवेत् ।
हस्ता गण्डुपदमुखी प्रमाणे विंशदाङ्गुली ॥
सुवर्णरूप्यताम्राणामायसी यङ्गजाऽपि वा ।
दन्तास्थिवेनुदारूणामेषणी दारुणा भवेत् ॥

Pālakāpya, III. i.

एषणी दशाङ्गुला विंशत्यङ्गुला विंशदङ्गुला यथायोगमञ्जनशलाकाकृति मुखतः श्लक्ष्णा समा चैवमेताश्चिस्र एषणयः प्रमाणतः कार्य्याः ।

Ibid, III. xxx.

The operation of couching for cataract is essentially an Indian operation; and Suśruta describes the operation minutely as follows :—

The operation of couching for cataract.

Suśruta says[1] : "Now we shall describe the treatment of cataract caused by phlegm. If inside the crystalline lens, anything is seen like a half-moon-shaped drop of water or pearl, hard, irregular

---

[1] श्लैष्मिके लिङ्गनाशे तु कर्म्म वक्ष्यामि सिद्धये ।
नचेदर्द्धेन्दुघर्म्माम्बुविन्दुमुक्ताकृतिः स्थिरः ॥
विषमो वा तनुर्म्मध्ये राजिमान्वा बहुप्रभः ।
दृष्टिस्थो लक्ष्यते दोषः सरुजा वा सुलोहितः ॥
स्निग्धस्विन्नस्य तस्याथ काले नात्युष्णशीतले ।
यन्त्रितस्योपविष्टस्य स्वान्नासां पश्यतः समं ॥
मतिमान् शुक्लभागौ द्वौ कृष्णाम्बुक्ताभपाङ्गतः ।
उन्मील्य नयने सम्यक् शिराजाल विवर्ज्जिते ॥
नाधो नोर्द्ध च पार्श्वाभ्यां छिद्रे देवकृते ततः ।
शलाकया प्रयत्नेन विश्वस्तं यवबक्रया ॥
मध्य प्रदेशिन्यङ्गुष्ठस्थिरहस्त गृहीतया ।
दक्षिणेन भिषक् सव्यं विध्येत् सव्येन चेतरत् ॥
वारिविन्दागमः सम्यक् भवेच्छब्दस्तथा व्यधे ।
संसिच्य विद्धमात्वन्तु योषित्स्तन्येन कोविदः ॥
स्थिरे दोषे चले वापि स्वे दयेदचि वाह्यतः ।
सम्यक् शलाकां संस्थाप्याभ्यङ्गैर निलानाशनैः ॥
शलाकायेण तु ततो निर्लिखेद्दृष्टिमण्डलं ।
विध्यतो योऽन्य पार्श्वं ऽक्षस्तं रुद्धा नासिकापुटं ॥
उच्छ्वसनेन क्षुत्तव्यो दृष्टिमन्डलजः कफः ।
निरस्त इव घर्म्मांशुर्य्यदा दृष्टिः प्रकाशते ॥
तदासौ लिखिता सम्यग् ज्ञेया याचापि निर्व्यथा ।
ततो दृष्टेषु रूपेषु शलाकामाहरेच्छनैः ॥

or thin, striated or shinning, painful or red, caused by the deranged humours, the oleaginous applications and fomentations are to be tried first at a time when it is neither hot nor cold; then he (patient) is to be ligatured after having him seated conveniently, and should be directed to look towards his own nose. The intelligent (surgeon), then seperating the white part from the black part and the external canthus of the eye after opening it, avoiding the vascular network, and leaving the parts above and below intact, is to pass a yavamukhī śalākā (or sharp needle having its end resembling a wheat) through a natural opening on the side, steadily holding the rod with the thumb, index and middle fingers. If the operation be required on the right eye, the left hand, and if on the left eye, the right hand of the surgeon should use the needle in puncturing. A successful puncture is known by the escape of a drop of fluid and an audible sound. The experienced surgeon is to sprinkle woman's milk just after the puncture, and keeping the needle there, whether the deranged humour be movable or not, should apply fomentations externally by means of oily remedies for the deranged air. The crystalline lens is next to be scarified by the sharp end of the needle. Then keeping the needle fixed in the side of the eye, the patient should be directed to sniff so as to destroy the phlegm of the lens. The proper scarification will be indicated when the lens appears brilliant as the sun uncovered by clouds. Then the vision being clear, the needle in the side of the eye, is to be removed; and the eye is to be well

---

घृतेनाभ्यज्य नयनं पक्ष्मपट्टेन वेष्टयेत्।
ततो गटे निरावाधे शयीतोत्तान एव च॥

Suśrutā Samhitā, VI. xvii.

soaked with ghee (melted butter) and bandaged properly." Vāgbhaṭa also discribes the operation similarly.[1]

To this we may compare the account of the operation as given by Celsus. He "lays it down as a rule, that when the suffusion is small, immovable, and of the colour of sea water, or of shinning iron, and if a small degree of light can be percieved at the side, there is reason to hope well of the case. He forbids us to operate until the disease has attained a proper consistence. He directs us to place the patient opposite the operator, who is to sit on a higher seat, while the patient's head

---

[1] अथ साधारणे काले शुद्धसंभोजितात्मनः ।
देशे प्रकाशे पूर्व्वाह्णे भिषग् जानुच्च पीठगः ॥
यान्तितस्योपविष्टस्य स्निग्धाक्षस्य सुखानिलैः ।
अङ्गुष्ठ सदिते नेत्रे दृष्टी दृष्टोत्प्लुतं मलम् ॥
स्वनासां प्रेक्षमाणस्य निष्कम्पं मुर्ध्नि धारिति ।
कृष्णादर्द्धाङ्गुलं मुक्त्वा तदर्द्धाभमपाङ्गतः ॥
तर्ज्जनीमध्यमाङ्गुष्ठैः शलाकां नियतं धृताम् ।
दैवच्छिद्रं नयेत् पार्श्वादूर्द्धमामस्थयन्निव ॥
सव्यं दक्षिणहस्तेन नेत्रं सव्येन चेतरत् ।
विध्येत् सुविद्धे शब्दः स्यादरुक चाम्बुलवस्रुतिः ॥
सान्त्वयन्नातुरं चानु नेत्रं स्नग्धेन सेचयेत् ।
शलाकायास्ततोऽग्रेण निर्लिखेन्नेत्रमण्डलं ॥
अबाधमानः शनकैर्नासां प्रतिनुदंस्ततः ।
उच्छिखनाच्चापहरेद् दृष्टिमण्डलगं कफम् ।
स्थिरे दोषे चले चापि स्वे दयेदक्षिवाह्यतः ॥
अथ दृष्टेषु रूपेषु शलाकामाहरेच्छनैः ।
घृताप्लुतं पिचुं दत्त्वा बद्धाक्षं शाययेत्ततः ॥
विद्धादन्येन पार्श्वेन तमुत्तानं द्वयोर्व्यधे ।
निवाते शयनेऽभ्यक्तशिरः पादं हितेरतम् ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, VI, xiv.

is held by an assistant. The sound eye is to be previously covered up with wool. If the left eye is affected, the operator must use his right hand, and *vice versa*. A needle which is sharp and not too slender is to be passed direct through the two coats at a place intermediate between the temporal angle and the black of the eye, and towards the middle of the cataract. When the needle has perforated far enough, which is readily known by the abscence of resistance, it is to be turned so as gradually to remove the cataract below the region of the pupil and this object being attained it is to be strongly pressed to the lower part. If it remain there the operation is completed, but if it return, it is to be cut and torn by the needle into many pieces, in which state they are easier depressed, and prove less troublesome. The needle is then to be drawn out direct and soft wool smeared with white of an egg, and other anti-inflammatory applications are to be used. Quiet, restricted diet, and soothing treatment will be proper. [1]" Paul [2], Mesue [3], Albucasis [4], Rhazes [5] and others also describe the operation of couching in similar terms. Albucasis gives figures of these needles.

The operation is still practised in India by the māls who consider themselves specialists in diseases of the eyes.

21. Sarpāsya.

Vāgbhaṭa describes an instrument having its end resembling

---

[1] Celsus. vi. See Adam's Commentary to Paul VI. xxi.
[2] Paul. VI. xxi.
[3] Mesue. De Aegr. oculi, 15.
[4] Albucasis. Chirrug, ll. 23.
[5] Rhazes. Ad mansor.

the mouth of a snake [1]. The blade is said to be half an aṅguli long. It is advised to be used for excision of the nasal and aural polypi.

The fact that it was able to work inside the nose and the auditory canal shows that it could not have been of any great breadth, possibly less than a quarter of an inch at the most. The exact shape of the sarpāsya can not be determined with certainty. The Greeks however used for the same purpose, "a polypus scalpel, having its extremity shaped like a myrtle leaf," which was a double instrument, the other end being a scoop [2].

Gold or Silver knife.

To cut the navel cord, Caraka [3] recommends the use of a knife, made of gold, or silver, or iron. To make gold and silver knives of sharp edges seems absonous to our reason, but we must remember that to cut the navel cord, a very keen edge is not required, and even now the purpose is often served by the native dhāis with a piece of split bamboo.

---

[1] सर्पास्य घ्राणकर्णार्शच्छेदनेऽर्धाङ्गुलं फले ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxvi.

सर्पास्यं नाम शस्त्रमाह। सर्पास्यं इत्यादि सर्पास्य नाम शस्त्रं नासिका कर्णार्शसां छेदने योज्यं तच्च फले अङ्गुलार्धपरिमितं अर्धाङ्गुलपरिमित फलकमित्यर्थः। असा सर्पमुखसदृश मुखत्वात् सर्पास्यमिति संज्ञा।

Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumūdī. I. xxvi.

[2] Paul. VI. xxv.

[3] See foot-note 4. P. 65.

Pratuda.

Suśruta mentions it as a knife to be used for making scarifications on the body of a lunatic.[1]

The mode of holding the sharp instruments.

Suśruta says[2]: "The vṛddhipatra is to be held at the junction of the handle and the blade; and all instruments used for incision should be held similarly. The vṛddhipatra and maṇḍalāgra, if used for scarification, should be held with the hand raised a little; when used for evacuating abscesses, they, as well as all other instruments, should be held by the fore part of the handle. But in the case of children, old or delicate or timid persons, women, and kings and princes, abscesses should be evacuated with the trikūrccaka. The vrīhimukha is to be held with the thumb and forefinger, its handle being covered within the palm. The kuṭhārikā is to be held in position with the left hand, and struck with the middle finger when let go forcibly from the under surface of the thumb of the right hand. The ārā, karapatra and eṣaṇī should be held at their extremities.

---

[1] प्रतुदैर्दारयेत्चैनं मर्म्मघातं विवर्ज्जयेत्।
सपिंधाने जरत्कूपे सतत वा निवासयेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. liii.

[2] तेषामयथायोग ग्रहण समासोपाय: कर्म्मसु वक्ष्यते। तत्र ऋजिपत्रं ऋजफलसाधारणे भागे ग्रहीयाद्वेदनान्येवं सर्व्वाणि। ऋजिपत्रं मण्डलायच्च किञ्चिदुत्तानपाणिना लेखने वक्रयोऽवचार्य्यं ऋजाये विस्रावणानि। विशेषेण बालऋजुसुकुमार भीरु नारीणां राज्ञां राजपुत्राणाच्च विकूर्चकेन विस्रावयेत्। तत्र प्रच्छादित ऋजमङ्गुष्ठ प्रदेशिनीभ्यां व्रीहिमुखं। कुठारिकां वामहस्तन्यस्तामित-रहस्त मध्यमाङ्गुल्याङ्गुष्ठ विष्ठभ्याभिहन्यात्। आराकरपत्रैषण्यो मूले। शेषाणि तु यथायोगं ग्रहीयात्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. viii.

The other instruments are to be held as required in particular cases." Vāgbhata also gives similar directions [1].

The practical training in surgical operations.

Suśruta says [2] : "Even after a pupil has mastered the whole of the medical treatises, the preceptor should instruct him practically how to perform surgical operations and how to administer oils and other medicines. However learned he may be in books, he cannot be fit for surgical practice, unless he has acquired the practical training. Therefore the preceptor should show his pupils the methods of operations, of incision, excision and division, upwards and downwards on the pumpkin, bottle-gourds, water-melons, and the three varieties of cucumbers—Trapuṣa (Cucumis Sativus), Ervārūka (Cucumis Utillissimus), and Karkarūka (Cucumis Melo).

---

[1] छेद भेदेन लेख्यार्थं शस्त्रं हस्त फलान्तरे ।
तर्जनी मध्याङ्गुष्टैर्ग्रहीयात् सुसमाहितः ।
विस्रावणादि हस्तायें तर्जन्यङ्गुष्ठके न च ।
तल प्रकन्न हस्तायं याह्यं व्रीहिमुखं मुखे ।
मूलेष्वाहरणार्थानि क्रिया सौकर्य्यतोऽपरं ॥

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā. I. xxvi.

[2] अधिगत सर्व्वशास्त्रार्थमपि शिष्यं योग्याङ्कारयेत् । छेद्यादिषु स्नेहादिषु च कर्म्मपथमुपदिशेत् । सुबहुश्रुतोप्यकृत योग्यः कर्म्मस्वयोग्यो भवति । तत्र पुष्पफलालाबू कालिन्दकवपुषैर्व्वारुककर्कारुक प्रभृतिषु छेद्य विशेषान् दर्शयेदुत्कर्त्तनपरिकर्त्तनानि चोपदिशेत् । इति वस्ति प्रसेवक प्रभृतिषूदकपङ्क पूर्णेषु भेद्य योग्यां । सरोम्नि चर्म्माण्यातते लेख्यस्य । मृत पशुसिरासूत्पलनालेषुच वेध्यस्य । घुणोपहत काष्ठवेणु नलनालीशुष्कालाबुमुखेष्वेष्यस्य । पनसविम्बीबिल्वफलमज्जमृतपशुदन्तेष्वाहार्य्यस्य । मधुच्छिष्टोपलिप्ते शाल्मलीफलके विस्राव्यस्य । सूक्ष्मघनवस्त्रान्तयोर्म्मृदुचर्म्मान्तयोश्च सीव्यस्य । पुरुषमय पुरुषाङ्गप्रत्यङ्ग विशेषेषु बन्धयोग्यां । मृदुमांसपेशीमृत्पलनालेषु च कर्णसन्धिबन्धयोग्यां । मृदुषु मांसखण्डेष्वग्निचारयोग्यां । उदक पूर्णघटपार्श्व स्रोतस्यलाबूमुखादिषु च नेत्रप्रणिधानवस्तिव्रण वस्ति पीड़न योग्यामिति ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā. I. ix.

The operation of puncturing or tapping may be demonstrated on leather bags, bladders and pouches, filled with slush; scarifications, on stretched pieces of leather covered with hair; opening on the veins of dead animals or on stalks of water-lily; probing on worm-eaten wood, bamboo, reed, tube or dried bottle-gourd; extraction, on the pulp of jack fruit, the Bael fruit (Ægle Marmelos), Vimbī fruit (Cephalandra Indica) or on the teeth of dead animals. Evacuation on a lump of wax applied to a board of Śālmali wood (Bombax Malabaricum); sewing, on the two ends of a thick piece of cloth or soft leather; bandaging on the limbs of a dummy (human figure made of cloth and clay), bandaging the root of the ear, on a piece of soft flesh, or the stalk of a water-lily; application of cauteries, on pieces of flesh; introduction of tubes for clysters (urethral, rectal and vaginal) and wound-syringe, on the spout of an earthen vessel filled with water, or on the mouth of a bottle-gourd or similar objects."

CHAPTER VII.

THE ANUŚASTRA.

The anuśastra means substitutes for cutting instruments. They are the following[1] :—

1. Bamboo. 2. crystal. 3. glass. 4. ruby. 5. leeches. 6. fire. 7. caustics. 8. the nails. 9. leaves of Goji (Elephantobus Scaber), 10. Śephālikā (Nyctanthe Arbortristris), and 11. Śākhā (Tectona Grandis). 12. young stems of plants. 13. hair 14. finger.

These are advised to be used in case of infants or timid persons or when the proper instruments are not available.[2]

1. Bamboo.

A piece of split bamboo is said to have been used for cutting through and cutting into some parts of the body. It is still used by the native dhāis or midwives for cutting the funis.

A piece of bamboo is directed to be used for applying pressure on small boils to cure them by subsidence [3]. For the same purpose, the pressure of the thumb is also recommended [4].

---

[1] अनुशस्त्राणि तु त्वक्सारस्फटिककाचकुरुविन्दजलौकाग्निचारनखगोजीशेफालिका-शाकपत्र करीरवालाङ्गुलय इति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā. I. viii.

[2] शिशुनां शस्त्रभीरूणां शस्त्राभावे च योजयेत्।
त्वक्सारादि चतुर्व्वर्गं छेद्ये भेद्ये च बुद्धिमान्॥

Ibid.

[3] हृतेषु दोषेषु यथानुपूर्व्वं यत्नी भिषक् श्लेष्म समुत्थिते तु॥
स्विन्नस्य विस्रापनमेव कुर्य्यादङ्गुष्ठलोहोपलवेण दक्षैः।

Ibid. IV. xviii.

[4] अभ्यज्य स्वेदयित्वा च वेणुनाद्या ततः शनैः।
विस्रापनार्थं मृद्नीयात् तर्जनाङ्गुष्ठकेन वा॥

Cakradatta, Vraṇaśothā Cikitsā.

Bamboo is also mentioned to have supplied largely the materials of splints for treatment of fractures and dislocations. For this purpose it is to be split into thin layers[1]. Split bamboo is still used for the treatment of fractures by the kavirājes and might advantageously be used by the modern surgeons as a cheap and easily available material for splint.

Dissection.

It is generally supposed that the practice of dissection of the human body for anatomical studies was unknown to the ancients. But the practice of human dissection is unmistakably referred to in the Suśruta Saṁhitā.[2] Brushes made of bamboo, barks of trees, grass roots, and hairs are mentioned as instruments of dissection. "Thus a body should be secured which is complete in all the parts and which is of a person who was not more than 100 years old, nor who died from the effects of poison or of a chronic disease. Having cleared the intestines of any fæcal matter, the body should be well wrapped either in Muñja (Saccharam Munja), or grass, or barks of trees or hemp etc., put inside a cage which should be firmly fastened, in a solitary spot, in a calm river and thus allowed to decompose. After seven nights, having taken out

---

[1] विभग्नञ्च नरं दृष्ट्वा वेणुखण्डेन बन्धयेत्।
सचयेन्नवनीतनैरण्डपत्रैश्च वेष्टयेत्॥

Hārita Saṁhitā, II.I lvi.

[2] तस्मात्समस्तगात्रमविषोपहतमदीर्घव्याधिपीडितमवर्षशतिकं निःसृष्टाल्पपुरीषं पुरुषमबहुन्यामापगायां निवद्धं पञ्जरस्थं सुश्लक्ष्णवल्कलकुशशणादीनामन्यतमेनावेष्टिताङ्गमप्रकाशे देशे कोथयेत् सम्यक् प्रकुथितञ्चोद्धृत्य ततो दृढं सप्तरात्रादुशीर वालवेणु वल्कल कूचीनामन्यतमेन शनैः शनैरवघर्षयं स्त्वगादीन् सर्व्वानेव बाह्याभ्यन्तराङ्गप्रत्यङ्ग विशेषान् यथोक्तान् सचयेत्तथा।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. v.

the thoroughly decomposed body, it should be slowly rubbed with a brush made either of Uṣīra (Andropagon Muricatus) or hair, or bamboo, or barks of trees, examining at the same time with the eyes, every division and sub-division of the body, external or internal, beginning with the skin, as delineated in the śāstras." Animal anatomy was also thoroughly understood as each part of the body had its own distinctive name.

Hoernle[1] says : "Probably it will come as a surprise to many as it did to myself, to discover the amount of anatomical knowledge which is disclosed in the works of the earliest medical writers of India. Its extent and accuracy are surprising, when we allow for their early age—probably the sixth century before Christ—and their peculiar methods of definition.***Of the practice of such dissection in ancient India we have direct proof in the medical compendium of Suśruta, and it is indirectly confirmed by the statements of Caraka. It is worthy of note, however, that in the writings of neither of these two oldest Indian medical writers is there any indication of the practice of animal dissection."

The Greeks did not practise disection of the human body. "The anatomical knowledge of the Hippocratists was derive chiefly from dismemberment of animals, experience in slaughtering and sacrifices, and from the observation of surgical cases. Systematic dissection of the human body was out of the question owing to the religious precepts which strictly enjoined immediate burial, and to the superstitious horror of the dead which then prevailed. The supposition that outstanding individual investigators, upon rare occasions, did not hesitate to examine

[1] Hoernle. Osteology. Preface. iii.

human bodies or parts of bodies (particularly) bones, in order to correct prevailing opinions, is one which, if not susceptible of direct proof, is at least probable. This supposition, besides being borne out by many statements on the part of ancient writers, is the more probable since tho bodies of savages, traitors and criminals were outside the pale of religious ordinances and were therefore available, as were also accidentally obtained portions of the body, to satisfy the curiosity of scientific investigators. No one of the oft-quoted extracts from the Hippocratic writings, supposed by individual historians to refer to human dissection, is quite conclusive, whilst nowhere is there in the pathology of the day any definite trace of anatomical research upon the bodies of those dead of disease. On the other hand comparisons are frequently instituted by the Hyppocratists referring to facts acquired through zootomy or to anatomico-pathological discoveries such as might have been made in the slaughtering of beasts."[1]

The study of anatomy received its impetus from the Alexandrian School. "Herophiilus improved the technique and developed the terminology of anatomy and enriched it by valuable discoveries made in the dessection of human bodies, particularly in the knowledge of nerves, vessels and viscera, but also in that of the eye. With his works, systematic anatomical investigation may in fact be said to begin."[2]

"Like Herophilus, Erasistratos made a successful study of anatomy, even surpassing the former in knowledge of details, and in a series of observations upon the cadavers of men and

[1] History of Medicine. Neuberger. P. 150.

[2] Ibid. P. 177-8.

animals, corrected his own mistakes as well as those of others. His greatest achievement was in the study of nerves and vessels."[1]

2, 3 AND 4. CRYSTAL, GLASS AND RUBY.

These are recommended to be used for cutting through and cutting into some parts of the body.

Glass vessels for preparing medicines are often mentioned. Śārṅgadhara[2] used it for purifying mercury.

5. LEECHES.

Leeches are described to be the mildest of all means for extracting blood, and are recommended for princes, childern, women, and timid people[3].

Twelve kinds of leeches are described[4]; six of them are poisonous and six, non-poisonous.

---

[1] History of Medicine. Neuberger. P. 181.

[2] काचकूप्यां विनिक्षिप्य ताच्च सहस्रमुद्रया।
विलिप्य परितो वक्त्रं मूद्रां दत्त्वा च शोषयेत्॥

Sārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, II. xii.

[3] नृपाञ्चबालस्थविर भीरुदुर्ब्बलनारी सुकुमाराणामनुग्रहार्थं परमसुकुमारोऽयं शोणितावसे च नोपायोऽभिहितो जलौकसः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xiii.

[4] जलमासामायुरिति जलायुका जनमासामोक इति जलौकसः। ता द्वादश तासां सविषाः षट् तावत्य एव निर्व्विषाः। तत्र सविषाः कृष्णा कर्ब्बुरा अलगार्दा इन्द्रायुधा सामुद्रिका गोचन्दना चेति। तासञ्जनचूर्णवर्णा पृथुशिराः कृष्णा। वर्म्मिमत्स्यवदाभुग्ना छिन्नोन्नतकुक्षिः कर्ब्बुरा। रोमशा महापार्श्वा कृष्णमुख्यलगर्दा। इन्द्रायुधवद्दुर्द्दुराजिभिश्चित्रिता इन्द्रायुधा। ईषदसितपीतिका विचित्र पुष्पाकृतिचित्रा सामुद्रिका। गोवृषवदधोभागे द्विधाभूताकृतिरणुमुखी गोचन्दनेति। ताभिर्दष्टे पुरुषे दंशे श्यावरुतिमावं कण्डूमूर्च्छा

The poisonous leeches are :—

1. Kṛṣṇā :—it is of the colour of black collyrium and has a broad head.

ज्वरोदाहस्फुर्हिमद: सदनमितिलिङ्गानि भवन्ति। तत्र महागद: पानालेपननस्य कर्म्मादियूपयोज्य:। इन्द्रायुधादष्टमसाध्यमित्येता: सविषा: सचिकित्सिता व्याख्याता:। अथ निर्व्विषा:। कपिला पिङ्गला शङ्कुमुखी मूषिका पुण्डरीकमुखी सावरिकाचेति। तत्र मन:शिलारञ्जिताभ्यामिव पार्श्वाभ्यां पृष्ठे स्निग्धमुद्गवर्णा कपिला। किञ्चिद्रक्ता ह्रस्वकाया पिङ्गायुगाच्च पिङ्गला। यकृद्वर्णा शीघ्रपायिनी दीर्घतीक्ष्णमुखी शङ्कुमुखी। मूषिकाकृति वर्णाऽनिष्टगन्धा च मूषिका। मुद्गवर्णा पुण्डरीकतुल्यवक्त्रा पुण्डरीकमुखी। स्निग्धा पद्मपत्रवर्णाष्टादशाङ्गुलप्रमाणा सावरिका साच पञ्चधैं। इत्येता अविषा व्याख्याता:।

तासां प्रग्रहणमार्द्रचर्म्मणान्यैर्व्वा प्रयोगैर्ग्रहीयात्। अथैनां नवे महति घटे सरस्तड़ागोदकपङ्कमावाप्य निदध्यात्। भक्ष्यार्थं चासामुपहरेच्छैवलं वल्लूरमौदकांश्च कन्दांयूषौंक्त्वा शय्यार्थं तृणमौदकानि च पत्राणि। द्वाहात्राहाच्चान्यज्जलं भक्ष्यञ्च दद्यात्। सप्तरात्रात् सप्तरात्राच्च घटमन्यं संक्रामयेत्। भवति चात्र।

स्थूलमध्या: परिक्लिष्टा: पृथ्वी मन्दविचेष्टिता:।
अयाहिण्यो ऽल्पपायिन्य: सविषाश्च न पूजिता:॥

अथ जलौकोऽवसेकसाध्यव्याधितमुपवेश्य संवेश्य वा विरुह्य चास्य तमवकाशं मृद्वीमयचूर्णैर्यदरुज: स्यात्। गृहीताश्च ता: सर्षपरजनीकल्कोदक प्रदिग्धगात्रो: सलिलसरकमध्ये मुहूर्त्तस्थिताविगतक्लमा ज्ञात्वा ताभीरोगं याहयेत्। सूक्ष्मयुक्तार्द्रपिचुप्रोतावच्छन्नां कृत्वा मुखमपाहरणयादगृह्णन्त्यै क्षीरबिन्दुं शोणितबिन्दूं वा दद्याच्छस्त्रपदानि वा कुर्वीत यद्येवमपि न गृह्णीयात्तदान्यां याहयेत्। यदा च निविशतेऽग्रमुखवदाननं कृत्वोन्नम्य च स्कन्धं तदा जानीयाद गृह्णातीति गृह्णन्तीं चार्द्रवस्त्रावच्छन्नां धारयेत् सेचयेच्च। दंशे तोदकन्डूप्रादुर्भावैर्ज्ञानीयाच्छुद्धमियमादत्त इति युक्तमाददानामपनयेत्। अथ शोणितगन्धेन न सुद्येन्मुखमस्या: सैन्धवचूर्णेनावकिरेत्। अथ पतितां तण्डुलकण्डनप्रदिग्धगात्रीं तैललवणाभ्यक्तमुखीं वामहस्ताङ्गुष्ठाङ्गुलीभ्यां गृहीतपुच्छां दक्षिणहस्ताङ्गुष्ठाङ्गुलीभ्यां शनै: शनैरनुलोममनुमार्ज्जयेदासुखादामयेत्तावद्यावत्सम्यग्वान्तलिङ्गानीति। सम्यग्वान्ता सलिलसरकस्यास्या भोक्तुकामा सती चरेत्। या सीदति न चेष्टते सा दुर्व्वान्ता तां पुन: सम्यग्वामयेत्। दुर्व्वान्ताया व्याधिरसाध्यइन्द्रमदो नाम भवति। अथ सुवान्तां पूर्व्ववत् सन्निदध्यात् शोणितस्य च योगायोगानवेक्ष्य जलौकोव्रणान्मधुनावघट्टयेच्छीताभिरद्भिश्च परिषेचयेदवचीत वा व्रणं कषाय मधुर स्निग्धशीतैश्च प्रदेहै: प्रदिह्यादिति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xii.

2. Karvūrā:—it is as long as an eel with elevated stripes across the abdomen.

3. Alagarddā:—it looks as if covered with hair and has large sides and black mouths.

4. Indrāyudhā:—or rain-bow coloured; it has rain-bow coloured longitudinal stripes on the back.

5. Sāmudrikā:—it is of dark yellow colour and has variegated flower like spots on its body.

6. Gocandanā:—it has a bifurcated tail like the scrotum of a bull and a small mouth.

The non-poisonous ones are—

1. Kapilā or the greenish one;—it has its two sides of the colour of orpiment, and on its back, it is smooth and of the colour of a green pea.

2. Piṅgalā or twany;—it is of a reddish-brown colour, has a round body and moves quickly.

3. Śaṅku-mukhī or bluish-red;—it is of the colour of the liver, sucks quickly and has a long sharp mouth.

4. Mūṣikā or rat-like;—it has the shape and colour of a rat's tail and emits a disagreeable smell.

5. Pundarika-mukhi or lotus-faced;—it is of the colour of a green pea and has a mouth liks a lotus.

6. Savarikā;—it is slimy, coloured green like a lotus-leaf and eight angulil long; it is to be used in veterinary practice.

The non-poisonous leeches generally live in meadows and fresh water. They are to be caught with a piece of wet leather and

kept in a new large earthen pot filled with mud, water, green fungi, dry flesh, etc. The water is to be changed every third day and the pot every seventh day.

To apply leeches, the patient is directed to lie down and the part is to be rubbed dry with powdered cow dung and earth. The leech is then to be smeared with a paste containing turmeric, mustard and water, to excite them, washed thoroughly with water and then applied, its body being covered with a piece of wet cloth. To fix it quickly, a drop of milk or blood is to be applied over the diseased part, scarification of which is also recommended instead. When the leech has removed the necessary quantity of blood, a small quantity of salt is advised to be sprinkled upon its head to make it drop off. Then the leech is to be put upon some powdered rice and its mouth is advised to be smeared with oil and salt.

Then it is to be stripped and put in fresh water, and should be used again, if it moved, but if languid, thrown away.

The leech-bites are to be smeared with honey, cold water and astringent substances, or poulticed.

Vāgbhaṭa also gives similar directions for the application of leeches.[1]

---

[1] जलौकसस्तु सुखिनां रक्तस्रावाय योजयेत् ।
दुष्टाम्बुमत्स्य भेकाहि शवकीथसलोद्भवाः ।
रक्ताः श्वेता भृशं कृष्णाश्चपलाः स्थूलपिच्छिलाः ॥
इन्द्रायुधविचित्राभैरराजयो रोमशाश्च ताः ।
सविषा वर्ज्ययेत्ताभिः कण्डूपाक ज्वरश्वसाः ॥
विषपित्तास्रनुत् कार्य्यं तव शङ्खाम्बुजाः पुनः ।
निर्विषाः श्यावलश्यावा ह्रस्वा नीलैरराजयः ॥

Dr. Ray has clearly shown that "the discription of leeches as given by Rhazes agrees almost word for word with that of Suśruta (Sanasrad) in many places". He describes the parallelism at length and comes to the conclusion "of the use of a chapter of the Susruta or some such work[1]".

6 AND 7. FIRE AND CAUSTICS.

The use of cauteries in surgery has been described before under the head of the accessory blunt instuments [2].

कषाय पृक्षास्तन्वक्ष: किञ्चित् पीतदराश्च या: ॥
ता अप्यसम्यग् वमनात् प्रततञ्च निपातनात् ।
सीदन्ती: सलिलं प्राप्य रक्तमत्ता इति त्यजेत् ॥
अथेतरा निशाकल्क युक्ते ऽम्भसि परिप्लुता: ।
अवन्तिसोमे तक्रेवा पुनश्चाश्वासिता जले ॥
लागयेद घृतसक्ताङ्ग शस्त्र रक्त निपातने: ।
पिबन्तीरुन्नहत स्कन्धान्छादयेन्मृदुवाससा ॥
संपृक्ताङ्गुष्ट युग्मास्राज्जलौका दुष्टशोणितम् ।
आदत्ते प्रथमं हंस: क्षीरं क्षीरोदकादिव ॥
दंशस्य तोदे कण्डूं वा मोचयेद्वामयेच्च ताम् ।
पटुतैलाक्तवदनां श्लक्ष्ण कण्डन रूक्षिताम् ॥
रक्तन् रक्तमदाद् भुय: सप्ताहं वा न पातयेत् ।
पूर्ववत् पटुता दार्ढ्यं सम्यग् वान्ते जलौकसाम् ।
क्लमोऽतियोगान्मृत्युर्वा दुर्व्वान्ते स्तब्धता मद: ॥
अन्यवान्यच्च ता: स्थाप्या घटे सत्स्वाम्बुगर्भिनि ।
लालादिकोथ नाशार्थं सविषा: सास्रदन्वयात् ॥
अशुद्धौ स्रावयेद्दंशान् हरिद्रा गुड़माक्षिकै: ।
शतधौताज्यपिचवस्तो लेपाश्च शीतला: ॥

Aṣṭaṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā, I. xxvi.

[1] History of Hindu Chemistry, Introduction P. lxviii.

[2] See Page 213-9.

8 AND 14. FINGERS AND NAILS.

The uses of surgeon's fingers and nails in surgical operations has been described before[1].

9,10 AND 11. LEAVES.

Rough leaves such as those of Fig trees (Ficus Indicus), Goji (Elephantopus Scaber), Śephālikā (Nyctanthes Arbor-tristis) and Śaka (Tectonia Grandis) are recommended for scarifying abscesses if they do not heal up after repeated opening by the knife. If there is any formation of pus in the mouth or eyelids, it may be evacuated with these leaves (Susruta)[2]. These leaves are also to be used for bleeding the gums in gingivitis.

To cover the wounds, Suśruta gives a list of leaves to be used according to the nature of the wound and season of the year[3] :—

For air-deranged wounds;—use leaves of Eraṇda (Ricinus Communis), Bhūrjapatra (Betula Bhojpatra), Pūtika (Caesalpinia Bonducella) and Haridrā (Curcuma Longa).

---

[1] See Page 199–202, and 204–5.

[2] संशोध्योभयतः कार्यं शिरस्योष कुशे तथा।
काकोडुम्बरिका गोजीपत्रैश्चावचूर्णयेत्॥
Suśrutā Saṁhitā, IV. xxii.

[3] एरण्ड भूर्ज्जपूतीक हरिद्राणान्तु वातजे।
पत्रमाम्बलं यच्च काश्मरी पत्रमेव च॥
पत्राणि क्षीरवृक्षाणामौदकानि तथैव च।
दूषिते रक्तपित्ताभ्यां व्रणे दद्यादिचक्षणः॥
पाठामूर्व्वागुडूचीनां काकमाचीहरिद्रयोः।
पत्रञ्च शुक्लनाशाया योजयेत् कफजे व्रणे॥
Ibid, IV. i.

For bile or blood-deranged wounds;—use leaves of Āśvabala (Basella Rubra), Kāśmarīpatra, (Gmelina Arborea), Vata (Ficus Bengalensis) and Kumuda (Nymphae Lotus).

For phlegm-deranged wounds—use leaves of Pāṭhā (Cisamphelos Hexandra), Mūrvā (Sansevieria Zeylanica), Guḍucī (Tinospora Cordifolia), Kākamācī (Solanum Nigrum), Haridrā (Curcuma Longa) and Śuknāśā (Oroxylum Indicum).

For similar purpose Caraka[1] recommends us to use the leaves of Kadamva (Anthocephalus Cadamba), Arjuna (Terminalia Arjuna), Nimva (Azadirachta Indica), Pātalī, Pippala (Ficus Religiosa) and Arka (Calotropis Gigantea).

The leaves of the padma or nymphæ are to be used for handling the eyeballs and the intestines, to replace them in their proper position when prolapsed by injury[2] (Suśruta) Caraka recommends lotus leaves and plantain leaves as coverings to the bleeding piles,[3] Cakradatta[4] mentions the use of

---

[1] कदम्बार्ज्जुननिम्बानां पाटल्याः पिप्पलस्य च ।
व्रण प्राच्छादने विद्वान् पत्राण्यर्कस्य चादिशेत् ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. xiii.

[2] भिन्नं नेत्रमकर्म्मण्यमभिन्नं लम्बते तु यत् ।
तन्निवेश्य यथास्थानमत्याविद्धशिरं शनैः ।
पीड़येत् पाणिना सम्यक् पद्मपत्रान्तरेण तु ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. ii.

[3] कदलीदलैरभिनवैः पुष्कर पत्रैश्च शीतजलसिक्तैः ।
प्रच्छादनं मुहुर्म्मुहुरिदं पद्मोत्पलदलैश्च ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, VI. ix.

[4] गोजीशैफालिका पत्रैरर्शः संलिख्य लेपयेत् ।
धारेण वाक्शतं तिष्ठेद यत्नद्वारं पिधाय च ॥
Cakradatta, Arśa Cikitsā.

Gojī and Śephālikā leaves for scratching the piles before the application of caustics to them. He also directs us to rub the small tumours with the rough leaves before the application of various ointments.[1] Śivodāsa also mentions the use of such leaves for rubbing the eyelids in the pillva disease.[2] Suśruta[3] mentions the use of rough leaves for scratching any part.

Paul[4] mentions the use of fig leaves, for rubbing down the hard granulations of granular lids.

12. Young stems of plants.

The young shoots are described to have served the purpose of a probe. Caraka[5] calls them the soft variety, the metallic ones being called the hard probes. These shoots are to be used for superficial sinuses. Suśruta directs us to use the young shoots

---

[1] विघृष्य चोडुम्बरशाकगोजी-
पत्रैर्भृशं क्षौद्रयुतैः प्रलिम्पेत्।

Cakradatta, Granthyarvuda Cikitsā.

[2] वर्त्मावलेखं बहुशस्तदच्छोणितमोक्षणम्।
पुनः पुनर्विरेकञ्च पिल्लरोगातुरो भजेत्॥

Cakradatta, Netraroga Cikitsā.

वर्त्मावलेखमिति। कर्कशशाखोटकादि पत्रेण वर्त्मघर्षणम्।

Tattva Candrikā. Ibid.

[3] क्षौमं श्रोतं पिचुं फैनं यावशूकं ससैन्धवं।
कर्कशानि च पत्राणि लेखनार्थं प्रदापयेत्॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā. IV. i.

[4] Paul, III. xxii.

[5] See foot-note 4. P. 269.

of the pot-herbs called Cuñca and Upādikā (Basella Rubra) as probes in sinuses on the eyelids and arround the anus.[1]

If in young people the teeth become loose as the result of some injury, the patient should be directed to live upon milk only, sucking it through the stalk of lily; and thus affording the teeth rest and a chance of being firmly fixed again.[2]

To excite emesis, Śārṅgadhara,[3] advises us to introduce a tube of Eraṇda (Ricinus Communis) into the throat of the patient. The vomiting is also said to have been excited by thursting a finger or a stalk of lily down the throat.

---

[1] नाड़ी व्रणान् शल्यगर्भानुन्मार्ग्युत्सङ्गिनः शनैः।
करिरवालांगुलिभिरेषणा वैषयेद्भिषक्॥
नेत्रवर्त्म गुदाभ्यासनाड्योऽवक्काः शशोणिताः।
चुचुपोदकजैः शल्यैः करीरैरेषयेऽत्तु ताः॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. i.

[2] अभग्नांश्चलितान्दन्तान् सरक्तानवपीड़येत्।
तरुणस्य मनुष्यस्य शीतैरालेपयेद्बहिः॥
सिक्ताम्बुभिस्ततः शिते: सन्धानीवैरुपाचरेत्।
उत्पलस्य च नालेन क्षीरपानं विधीयते॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā. IV. iii.

[3] अजीर्णं कोष्णपानीयं सिञ्चु पीत्वा वमेत् सुधीः।
वमनं पाययित्वा च जानुमात्रासने स्थितम्॥
कण्ठमेरण्डनालेन स्पृशन्तं वामयेद्भिषक्।
ललाटं वमतः पुंसः पार्श्वौ द्वौ च प्रबोधयेत्॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. iii,

CHAPTER VIII.

HYGIENIC APPLIANCES AND HOSPITAL REQUISITIES.

Tooth-Brush.

The ancient Hindus used branches of trees as tooth-brush. They should have the length of twelve aṅguli and the circumference equal to that of the little finger. Suśruta directs us to use a straight and plain branch of such trees as have an astringent, or sweet, or bitter, or sour taste[1]. Amongst these classes of trees, the twigs of Khadira (Acacia Catechu), Madhuka (Brassia Latifolia), Nimva (Melia Azadirachta), Karñja (Pongamia Glabra) are the best. The end of the stick is to be chewed first to form a brush and the teeth are then to be rubbed with it. He recommends us to use some tooth-powder.[2]

---

[1] तत्रादौ दन्तपवन मादशाङ्गुल मायतं।
कनिष्ठिका परिणाह मृज्वग्रथितमव्रणं॥
अयुग्मगन्धि यच्चापि प्रत्यग्रं शस्तभूमिजं।
अवेल्यघृष्टं च दोषघ्न रसं वीर्य्यघ्न योजयेत्॥
कषायं मधुरं तिक्तं कटुकं प्रातरुत्थितं।
निम्बश्च तिक्तके श्रेष्ठः कषाये खदिरस्तथा।
मधुको मधुरे श्रेष्ठः करञ्जः कटुके तथा॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv

[2] क्षौद्र व्योष विवर्गाक्तं सतैलं सैन्धवेन च।
चूर्णेन तेजोवत्याश्च दन्तान्नित्यं विशोधयेत्॥
एकैकं घर्षयेद्दन्तं मृदुना कूर्चकेन च।
दन्तशोधन चूर्णेन दन्तमांसन्यवाधयन्॥

Ibid.

Bhāvamiśra mentions the names of other trees which may be used for the purpose,[1] and also gives us a list of trees to be avoided.[2] The use of the tooth-brush is contra-indicated in the various diseases of the mouth, ears, &c.[3] Caraka[4] advises us to use the tooth-brush twice a day.

---

[1] अर्के वीर्य्यं वटे दीप्तिः करञ्जे विजयो भवेत् ॥
प्लक्षे चैवार्थसम्पत्तिर्वदर्य्यां मधुरोध्वनिः ।
खदिरे मुखसौगन्ध्यं विल्वेतु विपुलं धनम् ॥
उदुम्बरे तु वाक्सिद्धिरार्द्रेल्वारोग्यमेव च ।
कदम्बे तु धृतिर्मेधा चम्पके च दृढ़ामतिः ॥
शिरीषे कीर्त्तिसौभाग्य मायुरारोग्यमेव च ।
अपामार्गे धृतिर्मेधा प्रज्ञाशक्तिस्तथाध्वनिः ॥
दाड़िम्यां सुन्दराकारः ककुभे कुटजे तथा ।
जातीतगरमन्दारैर्दन्तःस्वप्नश्च विनश्यति ॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[2] गुवाकस्तालहिन्तालौ केतकश्च ह्रहत्तृण ।
खर्जुरं नारिकेरश्च सप्तैते तृणराजकाः ॥
तृणराज समुत्पन्नं यः कुर्य्याद् दन्तधावनम् ।
नरश्चाण्डाल योनिः स्यादयावद्भूतान्न पश्यति ॥

Ibid.

[3] नखादैदगलतालौष्ट जिह्वारोग समुद्भवे ॥
अथास्यपाके श्वासेच कासहिक्का वमीषु च ।
दुर्व्वलो जीर्ण भक्तश्च मूर्च्छार्त्तोमिदपीड़ितः ॥
शिरोरुगार्त्तस्तृषितः श्रान्तः पानक्लमान्वितः ।
अर्द्दितौ कर्णशूलीच दन्तरोगीच मानवः ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv

[4] आपोथिताग्यं ह्रीं कालीं कषायं कटुतिक्तकम् ।
भक्षयेद्दन्तपवनं दन्तमांसान्यबाधयन् ॥
निहन्ति गन्धवैरस्यं जिह्वादन्तास्यजं मलम् ।
निष्कृष्य रुचिमाधत्ते सद्यो दन्तविशोधनम् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

Suśruta mentions the use of a tooth-brush to extract a fish-bone from the throat.[1]

After cleansing the mouth with water after meals, I'Tsing ordains[2] "Chew tooth-wood in the mouth; let the tongue as well as the teeth be carefully cleaned and purified." Again he says: "It is surely not seemly for any one to spend his time after meals chaffing and chattering, nor is it right to remain impure and guilty all day and night, without preparing water in a clean jar or without chewing a tooth-wood."

He continues[3]: "Every morning one must chew tooth-woods, and clean the teeth with them, and rub off the dirt of the tongue as carefully as possible. Only after the hands have been washed and the mouth cleansed is a man fit to make a salutation; if not, both the saluter and the saluted are at fault. Tooth-wood is Danta-kāṣṭha in Sanskrit—danta, tooth, and kāṣṭha, a piece of wood. It is made about twelve finger-breadths in length, and even the shortest is not less than eight finger-breadths long. Its size is like the little finger. Chew softly one of its ends, and clean the teeth with it. If one unavoidably come near a superior, while chewing the woods, one should cover the mouth with the left hand.

Then breaking the wood, and bending it, rub the tongue. In addition to the tooth-wood, some tooth-picks made of iron or copper may be used or a small stick of bamboo or wood, flat as the surface of the little finger and sharpened on one

---

[1] मृदुना वा दन्तधावनकृष्टेनापकर्षेत्।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xxvii.

[2] I'Tsing. Records of the Buddhist Religion.—Takakusu. P. 26-7.

[3] Ibid. ch. viii. Use of Tooth-woods. P. 33.

end, may be used for cleaning the teeth and tongue ; one must be careful not to hurt the mouth. When used, the wood must be washed and thrown away.

Whenever a tooth-wood is destroyed, or water, or saliva is spit out, it should be done after having made three fillips with the fingers or after having coughed more than twice ; if not, one is faulty in throwing it away. A stick taken out of a large piece of wood, or from a small stem of a tree or a branch of an elm, or a creeper, if in the forest ; if in a field, of the paper mulberry, a peach, a sophora japonica (Huai), willow tree, or anything at disposal, must be prepared sufficiently beforehand. The freshly cut sticks (lit. wet ones) must be offered to others, while the dry ones are retained for one's own use.

The younger priest can chew as he likes, but the elders must have the stick hammered at one end *and made soft* ; the best is one which is bitter, astringent or pungent in taste, or one which becomes like cotton when chewed. The rough root of the Northern Burr-weed (Hu Tai) is the most excellent ; this is otherwise called Tsâng-urh or Tsae-urh, and strikes the root about two inches in the ground. It hardens the teeth, scents the mouth, helps to digest food, or relieves heart-burning. If this kind of tooth-cleaner be used, the smell of the mouth will go off after a fortnight. A disease in the canine teeth or toothache will be cured after a month. Be careful to chew fully and polish the teeth cleanly, and to let all the mouth-water come out ; and then to rinse abundantly with water. That is the way. Take in the water from the nose once. This is the means of securing a long life adopted by Bodhisattva *Nágárguna*. If this be too hard to put in practice, to drink water is

also good. When a man gets used to these practices he is less attacked by sickness. The dirt at the roots of the teeth hardened by time must all be cleaned away. Washed with warm water, the teeth will be freed from the dirt for the whole of life. Tooth-ache is very rare in India owing to their chewing the tooth-wood."

Tooth-Pick.

Suśruta advises us to use sticks of grass as tooth-pick after meals to extract particles of food lodged between the teeth, otherwise these will decompose and the mouth would be smelling badly.[1] Bhāvamiśra gives similar directions but adds that if any particles of food cannot be easily extracted by the tooth-pick, one must not use any force to extract them.[2] "After eating they cleanse their teeth with a wilow stick, and wash their hands and mouth."[3]

Jihvā Nirlekhana or Tongue Scraper.

Suśruta says: "To scrape the tongue, a golden, or silver, or

---

[1] दन्तान्तरगतं चान्नं शोधनेनाहरेच्छनैः।
कुर्यादनाहृतं तद्धि मुखस्यानिष्टगन्धतां ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xlvi.

[2] एवं भुक्त्वा समाचामेद्गूचयद्दण पूर्व्वकम्।
भोजने दन्तलग्नानि निर्हृत्याचमनं चरेत् ॥
दन्तान्तरगतं चान्नं शोधनेनाहरेत् शनैः।
कुर्यादनिर्हृतं तद्धि मुखस्यानिष्ट गन्धताम् ॥
दन्तलग्नमनिर्हार्य्यं लेपं मन्येत दन्तवत्।
न तत्र बहुशः कुर्याद यत्नं निर्हरणं प्रति ॥

Bhava Prakasa, I. i.

[3] Beal's Records of the Buddhist Religion. Trans. from Hiuen Tsiang, vol. I, p. 77.

wooden scraper is to be used. It should be ten aṅguli long and must be pliant and polished"[1]. Caraka[2] mentions tongue-scraper of copper, lead or brass. Bhāvamisra[3] also gives a similar discription. It is to be used for scraping the deposit on the tongue. It is still commonly used in India.

Razor and Shears. The Practice of Shaving.

Every one is recommended by Suśruta to have his beard shaved, hair trimmed and nails pared.[4] Caraka[5] also advises

---

[1] जिह्वानिर्लेखनं रौप्यं सौवर्णं वार्द्दमेव च ।
तन्मलापहरं शस्तं मृदुयुक्तं दशाङ्गुलं ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[2] सुवर्णरूप्यताम्राणि त्रपुरीतिमयानि च ।
जिह्वानिर्लेखनानि स्युस्तीक्ष्णान्यनृजूनि च ॥
जिह्वामूलगतं यच्च मलमुच्छ्वासरोधि च ।
सौगन्ध्यं भजते तेन तस्माज्जिह्वां विनिर्लिखेत् ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

[3] जिह्वानिर्लेखनं हैमं राजतं ताम्रजं तथा ॥
पाटितं मृदु तत् काष्ठं मृदुपत्रमयं तथा ।
"तत्काष्ठं" दन्तशोधनयोग्यं काष्ठम् ।
दशाङ्गुलं मृदु स्निग्धं तेन जिह्वां लिखेत् सुखम् ।
तज्जिह्वा मलवैरस्य दुर्गन्ध जड़ता हरम् ॥
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[4] पापोपशमनं केशनखरोमापमार्ज्जनं ॥
हर्षलाघव-सौभाग्य-करमुत्साह वर्द्धनं ।
वाणवारं सजावर्ण तेजोबल विवर्द्धनं ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

तवादित एव नीचनखरोमा * *
Ibid.

[5] पौष्टिकं ह्रष्यमायुष्यं शुचिरूपविराजनम् ।
केशश्मश्रुनखादीनां कल्पनं संप्रसाधनम् ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

us to shave regularly, that is thrice in a fortnight.[1] Bhāvamiśra says that this practice conduces to health, beauty, longevity and purity, and should be observed every fifth day[2]. Razor is mentioned in the Ṛgveda[3] and in the Kaṭhopaniṣad of the White Yayu.[4] In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, we find the method of shaving well described.[5] "Then (in shaving) are used a porcupine quill spotted in three places and a copper razor; that three-spotted porcupine's quill resembles the three-fold science and the copper razor resembles the Brāhmaṇa; for Brahmā is fire, and fire is of reddish (lohita) colour, hence a copper (loha), razor is used".

Again we read[6]:—"For impure, indeed, is that part of man where water does not reach him. Now at the hair and beard, and at the nails the water does not reach him; hence when he shaves his hair and beard, and cuts his nails, he does so in order that he may be consecrated after becoming pure.

---

[1] तिः पक्षस्य केशश्मश्रुलोमनखान् संहारयेत्।

Carakas Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[2] पक्षरात्रान्नख श्मश्रुकेशरोमाणि कर्त्तयेत्।
केशश्मश्रु नखादीनां कर्त्तनं सम्यसाधनम्।
पौष्टिकं धन्यमायुष्यं शौचकान्तिकरं परम्॥
"सम्यसाधनम्" शोभाजनकम्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[3] सं नः शिशीहि भुरिजोरिव क्षुरंरास्वरायो विमोचन।

Ṛgveda, 8 M. 4 S, 5 A. 7 A. 16 V.

[4] क्षुरस्य धारा निशिता दुरत्यय दुर्गम्पथस्तत् कवयो वदन्ति।

Kaṭhopaniṣad, I. iii.

[5] Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, II. 6. 4. 5.

[6] Ibid. III. 1.2.2.

3. Now some shave themselves all over, in order that they may be consecrated after becoming pure all over; but let him not do this. For even by shaving the hair of his head and his beard, and by cutting his nails he becomes pure; let him therefore shave only the hair of his head and his beard, and cut his nails.

4. In the first place he cuts his nails, first of the right hand, for in human (practice) those of the left hand (are cut) first, but with the gods in this manner. First he cuts those of the thumb—for in human practice those of the little fingers are cut first, but with the gods in this manner.

5. He first passes (the comb) through his right whisker—for in human (practice they comb) first the left whisker, but with the gods in this manner.

6. His right whisker he moistens first with the text "may this divine water be propitious unto me".....

There upon be lays a stalk of sacrificial grass on (the hair of the whisker) with the text "O plant, protect me".....Thereto he applies the razor, with the text "O knife, injure him not".

8. Having cut off (part of the stalk and hair), he throws it into the vessel of water. Silently he moistens the left whisker; silently he lays the stalk of grass on it; and having silently applied the razor thereto and cut through (it and the hair) he throws them into the vessel of water.

He then hands the razor to the barber, and the latter shaves off the hair and beard. When he has shaved the hair and beard.....

10. He bathes.....

12. He steps out (from tha water) towards the north-east, with the text "cleansed and pure I go forth from them ;".....

13. He then puts on (a linen) garment etc."

"The Atharva-veda relates how, when the ceremony of shaving off his beard was performed on king Soma, Váyu brought the hot water and Savitṛī skillfully wielded the razor."[1]

In para. 3, quoted above, we have evidence of the practice of depilation of the pubes which is here forbidden. There are six imortant rules and six minor rules of ordination for the female members or Śramaneris of the Buddhist order. One of the six minor rules is : A female must not shave the hair in any place but the head.[2] "Aristphanes, a contemporary of Hippocrates,[3] Persius[4] and Juvenal[5] refers to the depilation of the pubes as being common among certain classes, and the early Christian Fathers deplore the practice. See also the remarks of Seutonius on the conduct of Domitan"[6]. Prosper Alpinus (16th century) "found the custom still prevalent among the Egyptian women"[7]. "The custom survived in France, and Italy in the 16th century"[8].

Keśa Prasādhanī or Comb.

Sušruta directs us to comb the hair to free the head from dust,

---

[1] Macdonnel's Sanskrit Literature, p. 164.

[2] See I'Tsing, P. 97, Foot-note 3. Vinaya Saṁgraha. Chap. xii.

[3] Hippocrates, Ran. 516, Lys 89, 151.

[4] Persius, iv. 37.

[5] Juvenal, vii. 114.

[6] Sentonius, xxii.

[7] Medicina Aegyptiorum, III. xv.

[8] Milne, Surgical Instruments &c., p. 90-91.

louse and dandruff.[1] Bhāvamiśra advises us to comb the hair every day to keep it clean, as it stimulates the growth of hair.[2] Caraka[3] also recommends us to keep the hairs clean. The practice of combing the hair is very ancient; the Atharva-veda mentions a comb with a hundred teeth.

Looking-glass.

The looking-glass should be constantly used as thereby the complexion is said to be improved and life prolonged[4]. For an account of the looking-glass of the ancient Hindus, see Mitra's Indo-Aryans[5].

Dress.

Silk, chintz and red clothes are good for the winter, for they are said to be useful for derangement of air and phlegm. Thin silk is cooling and is efficacious for biliary disorders; so it should be used during the summer. It should be coloured twany or red. White clothes are auspicious and are neither hot

---

[1] केशप्रसाधनी केश्या रजोजन्तु मलापहा।

Suśruttā Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[2] केशपाशे प्रकुर्व्वीत प्रसाधन्या प्रसाधनम्।
केश प्रसाधनं केश्यं रजोजन्तु मलापहम्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[3] साधुवेश: प्रसाधितकेशो * *

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. viii.

[4] आदर्शालोकनं प्रोक्तं साङ्ग्ल्यं कान्तिकारकम्।
पौष्टिकं वल्यमायुष्यं पापलक्ष्मी विनाशनम्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[5] The Indo-Aryans Vol. 1, p. 240.

nor cold; therefore they should be worn during the rains[1]. Caraka says that pure dress conduces to longevity, happiness and fortune[2].

Uṣṇīṣa or head dress.

Suśruta[3] advises us to use a cap on our head which is thus protected from injury. Bhāvamiśra says that the habitual use of some form of covering for the head stimulates the growth of hair, increases beauty of the head and protects it from dust, draughts and accumulation of phlegm. Only light caps should be used as the heavy varieties derange bile and cause diseases of the eyes.[4] For the diagrams of the various forms of turbans used by the ancient Hindus, see Mitra's Indo-Aryans.[5]

---

[1] कौशेयौर्णिक वस्त्रञ्च रक्तवस्त्रन्तथैव च।
वातश्लेष्म हरन्तत्तु शीतकाले विधारयेत्॥
"कौशेयं" पट्टाम्बरं चसरवस्त्रञ्च।
मेध्यं सुशीतम्पित्तघ्नं कषायं वस्त्रमुच्यते।
तद्धारयेदुष्णकाले तवापि लघु शस्यते॥
कषायङ्कोकटी इति लोके, कषाय रागरक्तं वा।
शुक्लन्तु शुभदं वस्त्रं शीतातप निवारणम्।
नचोष्णनचवा शीतन्तत्तु वर्षासु धारयेत्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[2] काम्यं यशस्यमायुष्यमलक्ष्मीघ्नं प्रहर्षणम्।
श्रीमत् पारिषदं शस्तं निर्म्मलाम्बरधारणम्॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[3] पवित्र केशसुश्लीषं वातातपरजोऽपहं।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[4] उष्णीषं क्लान्तिकृत्केश्यं रजोवात कफापहम्।
लघु तच्छस्यते यस्माद् गुरु पित्तशिरोगकृत्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[5] The Indo-Aryans, Vol. 1, p. 220.

Chatra or umbrellas.

Suśruta says: Umbrellas are useful for protecting men from the rains, draughts, glare of the sun, exposure to cold, and dust. They are auspicious and are beneficial to the eyes[1]. Caraka[2] advises us to use it as it protects us from the sun, rain &c. Bhāvamiśra[3] also describes its efficacy similarly. Umbrella is one of the insignia of royalty in India, and is always held over the heads of kings as shown in the Sanchi and Amarāvatī sculptures[4]. It is still commonly used in India.

Yaṣṭi or sticks.

Caraka[5] directs us to use a stick as a support. Suśruta says: "By using sticks, a man gains in strength, prowess and manliness. He becomes courageous, patient and forbearing. He can stand erect and is not troubled by any fear"[6]. It

---

[1] वर्षानिलरजोघर्म्म हिमादीनां निवारणं।
वख्य चक्षुष्य मौजस्यं शङ्करं कुचधारणं॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[2] ईतेर्विधमनं वल्यं गुप्तावरणशङ्करम्।
घर्म्मानिलरजोऽम्बुघ्नं कुचधारणमुच्यते॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

[3] कुचस्य धारणं वर्षातपवात रजोऽपहम्।
हिमघ्नं हितमक्ष्णोश्च माङ्गल्यमपि कीर्तितम्॥
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[4] See Indo-Aryans, I, p. 266.

[5] खलतः संप्रतिष्ठानं श्रवृष्याच्च निसूदनं।
श्रवष्टम्भनमायुष्यं भयघ्नं दण्डधारणम्॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

[6] श्रमः सरीसृपव्याल विषाणिभ्योभयापहं।
श्रमस्खलन दोषघ्नं स्थविरेच प्रशस्यते॥
सत्त्वौजोबलवैर्य्य धैर्य्यवीर्य्य विवर्द्धनम्।
श्रवष्टम्भकरत्वापि भयघ्नं दण्डधारणं॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

protects a man from dogs, snakes &c. Bhāvamiśra[1] apparently quotes these verses from Suśruta.

Upānaha or shoes.

The ancient Hindus used two kinds of shoes, made of wood and leather. The wooden pāduka is recommended to be used before and after dinner[2]. The good effects claimed by its use are, an increase of the power of vision, strength and longevity.[3] When travelling, the upānaha or leather shoes are to be used. Besides the advantages mentioned above, shoes are very comfortable to the travellers and prevent many diseases of the feet[4]. If any one often travels barefooted, he feels out of sort, his senses fail, vision becomes impaired and his expectation of life is reduced.[5]

---

[1] Bhāva Prakaśa, I. i.

[2] पादुकारोहणङ्कुर्यात् पूर्व्वं भोजनतः परम् ।
पादरोग हरं हृद्यं चक्षुष्यञ्चायुषो हितम् ॥
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[3] चक्षुष्यं स्यर्दनहितं पादयोर्व्यसनापहम् ।
बल्यं पराक्रमसुखं हृद्यं पादवधारणम् ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, I. v.

[4] पादरोगहरं हृद्यं रक्षोघ्नं प्रीतिवर्द्धनं ।
सुखप्रचारमोजस्यं सदापादवधारणं ।
अनारोग्य मनायुष्यं चक्षुषोरुपघातकृत् ।
पादाभ्यामनुपानद्भ्यां सदा चंक्रमणं नृणां ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[5] उपानद्धारणं नेत्रामायुष्यं पादरोगहृत् ।
सुखप्रचारमोजस्यं हृद्यञ्च परिकीर्त्तितम् ॥
पादाभ्यामनुपानद्भ्यां सदा चंक्रमणं नृणाम् ।
अनारोग्य मनायुष्यमिन्द्रियघ्न मदृष्टिदम् ॥
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

The Hindus wore sandals like the ancient Greeks. They also used boots, which look like the modern boots used by Europeans. Buddha gave the Bhikkhus permission to wear boots or shoes, with thick lining[1]. Hiuen Tsiang[2] says that "here (Avantī) Tathagatha gave permission to the Bhikkhus to wear kih-fu-to (boots)." For an account and figures of ancient boots used by the Hindus, see Indo-Aryans.[3]

VYĀJANĪ AND CĀMARA. THE FAN.

The fan was used for airing the patients to drive away flies.[4] Suśruta mentions the cāmara *i.e.*, the tail of the Thibetan yolk (Bos grunnius) to be used as a fan. "It soothes the inflammation of boils and also acts as a fly-brush to prevent infection of the open wound"[5]. The cāmara is also one of the insignia of royalty and as such we have many representations of it in the sculptures of ancient India[6]. For diagrams of the ancient fan, see Indo-Aryans[7].

Caraka directs us to use a kulā or fan to winnow corn, prepared from the kāśa (Saccharum Spontamum) to resuscitate a still-born child[8].

---

[1] Mohāvagga, varga 13 ff 6. S. B. E. vol. xvii. p. 35.

[2] Beal's Records. of Buddhist Religion, vol. II. p. 280.

[3] Indo-Aryans, Vol. 1, p. 123-6.

[4] वालव्यजन मौजस्यं मक्षिकादीनपोहति ।
शोषदाह श्रमस्वेद मूर्च्छाघ्नो व्यजनानिलः ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[5] व्यज्येत वालव्यजनैर्व्रणं नच विघट्टयेत् ।
Ibid, I. xix.

[6] See Indo-Aryans, vol. II, p. 267-70.

[7] For diagrams, see Indo-Aryans, vol. I, p. 263.

[8] तथा संक्लेशविह्वलान प्राणान् पुनर्लभेत क्षणकपालिकायूषेण चैनमभिःनिषुनीयाद्-यच्चेष्टं स्यात् यावत् प्राणानां प्रत्यागमनं तत्तत्सर्व्वमेवकुर्य्यः ॥
Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

Bhāvamiśra[1] mentions fans made of the following materials:—palm leaf, bamboo, yolk's tail, cloth, peacock's feather and cane. He attributes peculiar properties to each fan.

Rājavallabha says[2] that "the palm-leaf fan overcomes disturbances of all the three humours, and is light and agreeable; the bamboo fan causes heat and irritablity, and promotes inordinate secretion of the two humours—air and bile; the cane, cloth and peacock's feather fans, overcome disturbances of the three humours; the hair fan is invigorating etc."

The Buddhist Bhikṣus used the palm-leaf fan. "Not unfrequently there is added a lotus-leaf shaped fan, made from a single frond, with an edging of bamboo or light wood, and furnished with a handle fashioned like the letter "S". The palm from which the leaf is taken, is also that used for the mss., namely the Talipot; hence the name Talponi given to the Bhikkhus by the early Portuguese adventurers in Burma. When he attended a meeting at which women are likely to be present, every Bhikkhu must have the fan."[3]

---

[1] व्यजनस्थानिलो दाह स्वेदमूर्च्छा श्रमापहः।
तालवृन्तभवो वातस्त्रिदोषशमको मतः॥
वंशव्यजनजस्तूष्णी रक्तपित्तप्रकोपणः।
चामरो वस्त्रसम्भूतो मायूरो वैवजस्तथा॥
एते दोषजिता वाताः स्निग्धा हृद्याः सपूजिताः।

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[2] तालव्यजनगुणः—त्रिदोषशमनत्वम्। लघुत्वञ्च॥ वंशव्यजनगुणः—रूक्षत्वम्। उष्णत्वम्। वायुपित्तकारित्वञ्च॥ वैववस्त्रमयूरपुच्छव्यजनगुणः—त्रिदोषनाशित्वम्। बालव्यजनगुणः—तेजस्करत्वम्। मक्षिकादि निवारकत्वञ्च।

Rājavallabha.

[3] The Way of Buddha, p. 53-54.

Filters.

Filters were used by the Hindus and are recommended to be made of an earthen or metallic vessel, the mouth being closed by a piece of cloth tied round its neck.

If the water be filthy, Suśruta[1] advises us to purify it by boiling it or by exposure to the sun; or by throwing hot iron balls, sand or clay balls into the water and then allowing it to cool. Such purified water should be scented with the flowers of Nāgakeśara (Mesua Ferrea), Campaka (Michelia Champaca), Utpala (Nymphœa Stellata) and Patala (Bignonia Snaveolens).

Suśruta mentions seven means of purifying polluted water[2], *viz.*,

1. Kataka phala or nirmālaya or seeds of Strychnos Potatorum.
2. Gomedaka or a kind of gems.
3. Viṣagranthi, or root of Nelumbium Speciosum.
4. Śaivālamūla or root of Vallisneria Spiralis.
5. A piece of cloth.
6. Pearls.
7. Precious Stones and crystals.

---

[1] व्यापन्नानामग्निक्वथनं सूर्य्यातपप्रतापनं तप्तायःपिण्डसिकतालोष्ट्राणां वा निर्व्वापनं प्रसादनञ्च कर्त्तव्यं नागचम्पकोत्पलपाटलापुष्पप्रभृतिभिश्चाधिवासनमिति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xlv.

[2] तत्र सप्तकलुषस्य प्रसाधनानि भवन्ति। तद्यथा। कतकगोमेदकविषग्रन्थिशेवालमूलवस्त्राणि मुक्तामणिश्चेति। पञ्चनिक्षेपणानिभवन्ति। तद्यथा। फलकं वाष्टकं मुक्तवलय उदकमञ्चिकाशिक्यञ्चेति। सप्तशीतिकरणानि भवन्ति। प्रवातस्थापनमुदकप्रक्षेपणं यष्टिकाभ्रामणं व्यजनं वस्त्रोद्धरणं वालुका प्रक्षेपणं शिक्यावलम्बनञ्चेति।

Ibid.

He mentions five kinds of means for preventing contact of the water vessel with the earth[1] :—

1. Phalaka or planks as of Śālmali wood.
2. Tryastaka or octogonal tripod of wood.
3. Muñjvalaya or circular pad of Saccharine Muñja.
4. Udakamañcikā or a raised framework of cane and bamboo.
5. Śikya or a loop suspended by three strings.

He mentions seven ways of cooling water :—

1. Exposure to air.
2. Sprinkling water on the vessel.
3. Stirring the water with a rod.
4. Fanning the water.
5. Filtration through cotton fabrics.
6. Putting the vessel of water on a sand bed.
7. Suspension of the vessel in a loop.

He advises us to use rain water filtered through a broad piece of white and clean cloth[2]. In collecting water from the rivers and ponds, the Hindu females still use a kalasī or earthen vessel, the mouth being closed by a piece of cloth.

---

[1] In the English translations of the Suśruta Saṁhitā, Bibliotheca Indica, Dr. Cattopādhāya translates the passage incorrectly. He misunderstood the terms phalaka, &c. to be remedial agents, necessary in the prorification of water.

[2] गाङ्गं पुनः प्रधानं तदुपाददीताश्वयुजे मासि शुचिशुक्लवित तपटेकदेशच्युतमथ वा हर्म्यातलपरिषेकसन्धौर्वा शुचिभिर्भाजनैर्ग्रहीतं।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xlv.

Suśruta[1] deprecates impure water as injurious to the human system and advises us not to drink or bathe in such water as there is always the risk of being speedly affected with many diseases.

"It (filter) forms one of the eight sacred utensils necessary for a sramana of the Buddhist order. It is a strainer or water-dipper—an appratus for filtering the water which he drinks, so that he may not, even unwillingly, take animal life"[2]

One of the six requisites of a Bhikṣu is Parisrāvana, a water-strainer[3].

Water vessel.

To store water, Suśruta mentions vessels of gold, or silver, or earth[4].

"The clean water is kept separately from water for cleansing purposes (*lit.* 'touched' water), and there are two kinds of jars (*i.e.* kundi and kalasa) for each. Earthenware or porcelain is used for the clean jar, and the jar, for water for cleansing purposes (*lit.* touched water) is made of copper or iron. The clean water is ready for drinking at any time, and the 'touched' water for cleansing purposes after having been to the urinal.

---

[1] व्यापन्नं वर्जयेन्नित्यं तोयं यद्वाप्यनार्तवं ।
दोषसङ्जननं ह्यं तन्नाददीताहितन्तु तत् ॥
व्यापन्नं सलिलं यस्तु पिवतीहा प्रसाधितं ।
श्वयथुं पाण्डुरोगञ्च लभ्दोषमविपाकतां ॥
श्वासकासप्रतिश्यायग्रहणगुल्मोदरानि च ।
अन्यान् वा विषमान् रोगान् प्राप्नुयात् क्षिप्रमेवच ॥
Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xlv.

[2] The way of Buddha, p. 53.

[3] I'Tsing, ch. x.

[4] सौवर्णे राजते मृन्मये वा पात्रे निदध्यात् तत्सार्वकालमुपयुञ्जीत तस्यालाभे भौमम् ।
Ibid.

The clean jar must be carried in a clean hand, and be placed in a clean place, while the jar for the 'touched' water should be grasped by the 'touched' (or 'unclean') hand and be put in an unclean (or 'touched') place. The water in a pure and fresh jar can be drunk at anytime; the water in any other jar is called 'special water' (more *lit.* seasonable water *i.e.* water to be used at certain prescribed times, probably kâlodaka)."[1]

Bathing.

The Hindus in their daily life do not eat without having first washed themselves in a bath. They always use a bathing-sheet and this ancient practice is still followed.

Bhāvamiśra says[2] : "Bathing stimulates the appetite, virile power and strength, prolongs life, allays thirst and burning sensation, cures eczema, and washes out dirt and perspiration."

Besides the ordinary bath, there is some evidence of the use of a medical bath to cure diseases. I'Tsing says[3] : "The World-honoured One taught how to build a bath room, to construct a brick pond in an open place, and to make a medical bath in order to cure a disease. Sometimes he ordained the

---

[1] I'Tsing, ch. vi.

[2] दीपनं बृंहणं स्नानमोजो बलप्रदं।
कण्डूमलश्रमःस्वेदतन्द्रा दाहत्वड्दाह पापनुत्॥
बाह्यांग सेकैः शीतार्द्रैः श्रमान्नर्याति पीड़ितः।
नरस्य स्नातमात्रस्य दीप्यते तेन पावकः॥
शीतेन पयसा स्नातं रक्तपित्तप्रशान्तिकृत्।
तदेवोष्णेन तोयेन बल्यं वातकफापहम्॥
शिरः स्नानमवृष्यं मत्युष्णेनाम्बुना सदा।
वातश्लेष्म प्रकोपित्वं हितत्वञ्च प्रकीर्त्तितम्॥

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

[3] I'Tsing, ch. xx.

whole body to be anonited with oil, sometimes the feet to be rubbed with oil every night, or the head every morning; for such a practice is very good for maintaining clear eyesight and keeping off the cold." "Bathing should always take place when one is hungry. Two kinds of benefits are derived by having meals after bathing. First, the body is pure and empty, being free from all dirt, second, the food will be well digested, as the bathing makes one free from phlegm or any disease of the internal organs. Bathing after a good meal is forbidden in the 'Science of Medicine'" (Kikitsā-Vidyā).

Drinking vessel.

Scented water is advised to be drunk out of cups made of gold, or silver, or copper, or bell-metal, or lapis lazuli or earth.[1] Bhāvamiśra[2] also mentions cups of the same materials.

"To drink from a jar holding it upright in front is no fault; but drinking in the afternoon is not permissible. A jar must be made to fit one's mouth; the top of the cover should be two fingers high; in it a hole as small as a copper chopstick is made.

Fresh water for drinking must be kept in such a jar. At the side of the jar there is another round hole as large as a small coin, two fingers higher than the drinking-mouth. This hole is used for pouring in water; two or three gallons may be put in it. A small jar is never used.

---

[1] See foot-note 2, P. 65.

[2] जलपावन्तु ताम्रस्य तदभावे मृदोहितम्।
पवित्रं शीतलं पात्रं गठितं स्फटिकेन यत्॥
काचेन रचितन्नहृत्तथा वैदूर्य्य सम्भवम्।

Bhāva Prakāśa, I. i.

If one fear that insects or dust may enter in, both the mouth and the hole may be covered by means of bamboo, wood, linen, or leaves. There are some Indian priests who make jars according to this style. In taking water the inside of the jar must be first washed in order to get off any dirt or dust, and then fresh water must be poured in.

A priest who travels, carries his jars, bowl, necessary clothes, by hanging them from shoulders over his cloak, taking an umbrella in his hand. This is the manner of the Buddhist priests in travelling[1]."

Dinner service.

Suśruta[2] advises us to use different kinds of vessels for distributing the various kinds of food:—

Iron vessels for ghee or clarified butter.

Silver vessels for drinks, soups and gruels.

---

[1] I'Tsing, ch. vi.

[2] घृतं कार्ष्णायसे देयं पेया देयातु राजते ॥
फलानि सर्व्वभक्ष्यांश्च प्रदद्याद्दलेषु च ।
परिशुष्कप्रदिग्धानि सौवर्णेषु प्रकल्पयेत् ॥
प्रद्रवाणि रसांश्चैव राजतेषूपहारयेत् ।
कट्वराणि खडां श्चैव सर्व्वान् शैलेषु दापयेत् ॥
दद्यात्तास्रमये पात्रे सुशीतं सुश्रृतं पयः ।
पानीयं पानकं मद्यं मृन्मयेषु प्रदापयेत् ॥
काचस्फटिकपात्रेषु शीतलेषु शुभेषु च ।
दद्याद्दूष्यपात्रेषु रागषाडवसट्टकान् ॥
पुरस्तादिमले पात्रे सुविस्तीर्णे मनोरमे ।
मृदः सुपीदनं दद्यात् प्रदेहांश्च सुसंस्कृतान् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xlvi.

Plantain leaf vessels for fruits and sweetmeats.

Gold vessels for flesh.

Stone vessels for whey.

Copper vessels for milk.

Earthen vessels for water, sherbets and wines.

Glass, crystal, lapis lazuli vessels for rājṣāḍava and saṭṭaka.

In the Bhāva Prakāśa[1] we have a detailed description on the subject—"A dinner service of gold is the best from a medicinal point of view, and it is supposed to be the best tonic for the eye. Eating out of silver is equally efficacious for promoting hepatic functions. A service of zinc improves the intelligence and appetite. Food served in brass utensils promotes wind and heat, but cures phlegmatic disorders and expells worms. The use of steel or glass vessel cures chlorosis, jaundice and intumescence. A stone or clay service brings on poverty. Wooden plates are good appetisers, but help the secretions of phlegmatic humour. The use of certain leaves as plates acts as an antidote against poisons. When at dinner, a water jug with a cup should be placed on the right hand. A copper vessel is the best for the purpose. The next best is an earthen pot. Vessels made of crystal and lapis lazuli are also pure and cooling".[2]

---

[1] आयसे काचपात्रे च भोजनं सिद्धिकारकम्।
शोथ पाण्डुहरं वल्यं कामलापहमुत्तमम्।
शैलेये स्फाटिके पात्रे भोजनं श्रीनिवारणम्।
दारुजे विशेषेण रुचिदं श्रेष्ठकारितु।
पात्रं पवमयं रुच्यं दीपनं विषपापनुत्॥

Bhava Prakāśa, I. i.

[2] History of Aryan Medical Science, p. 64-5.

Spoons.

I'Tsing says[1] : "As to the mode of eating in the West, they use only the right hand, but if one has had an illness or has some other reason, one is permitted to keep a spoon for use."

Spittoons.

Spittoons were commonly used by the ancient Hindus, and Caraka[2] mentions it as one of the things necessary for the sick room. It is also mentioned in the Mohāvagga[3]: "And the sethe's wife spat it out into the spittoon." Fa-Hian[4] noticed a "stone spitting vessel in this country (Kie-sha) belonging to Buddha."

Bedpans and urinals.

The bedpan and urinal were also used by the patients in ancient times. Caraka metions them to be necessary in a sick room.[5]

Pus basins.

Metallic basins marked with different measures were used for holding discharges after operations. In the Aśvavaidyaka[6]

---

[1] I'Tsing. ch. xvi.

[2] चोपन्यस्तभाङ्गार प्रतिग्रहादि ।

* * * *

प्रतिग्रहांश्चोपचारयेत् ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, I. xv.

[3] Sacred Books of the East. VIII. i. ll.

[4] Beal's Records, vol. I. Introduction, xxviii.

[5] See Page 36 and foot-note 1, P. 34.

[6] पदेशे लोमशे नित्यं लोमान्युत्पाद्य वेधयेत् ।
प्रमाणार्थञ्च पात्रेण रक्तं गृह्णाति बुद्धिमान् ॥

Aśvavaidyaka, XV. verse 30.

blood let out in the operation of phlebotomy, is recommended to be collected in a basin, so that the quantity may at once be determined.

Pestle and mortar.

Pestle and mortar are mentioned in the Ṛgveda for preparing the Soma juice.[1] And their use in pharmacy was well-known to the ancients.

Besides the pestle and mortar of pharmacy, we find mention of a large wooden pestle used in reducing dislocation by Suśruta.[2] Caraka says that two pestles and motars should be kept in a lying-in-room, the object being to allow the woman some kind of work; and then she will not lie down idly on her bed if there be any delay in the delivery of the child[3]. Suśruta also recommends it[4]. "The mortar (ulukhala) and pestle (muṣala) are to be made of very hard wood, *viz.*, both of Varana wood (Crataiga Roxburghii), or the mortar of Palāśa wood (Butea Frondosa), and the pestle of Khadira wood (Acacia Catechu). The former

---

[1] उलूखलसुतानामवेविंद्र जल्गुलः ॥

* * * *

यचिद्धि त्वं गृहे गृह उलूखलक युज्यसे ।

Ṛgveda, 1 M. 28 S. 1 &. 2 R.

[2] See foot-note 6, P. 172.

[3] See P. 39, and foot-note 1, P. 40.

सा चेदावीभिः संक्लिश्यमाना न प्रजायेतार्थैनां ब्रूयात् उत्तिष्ठमूषलमन्यतरञ्च गर्भौषानेनेतद्-दृखलं धान्यपूर्णं मुहुर्मुहुरधिजहि मुहुर्मुहुरवजृम्भस्व चंक्रमस्व चान्तरान्तरा इत्येवमुपदिश्यन्यकै ।

Caraka Saṁhitā, IV. viii.

[4] कालातीतस्थायिनि गर्भे विशेषतः सधान्यमुदूखलंमूषलेनाभिहन्यादिषमे वा यानासने सेवेत ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. x.

is to be of the height of the knee and the latter three aratnis (cubits) long[1]."

On the inner face of the left pillar in the eastern gate of Sanchi Tope, there is a beautiful representation of a kitchen scene, in which the ancient mortar and pestle are shown. "The mortar and two-handed pestle same as those in use at the present day in India. The mortar (okhli) is exactly the same as the Greek ἴγδη, and the Roman pila; and the pestle (musar) is the same as the Greek Κόπανον, and the Roman pilum"[2]

The pestle and mortar used in pharmacy was called aśmabhālam. It is still used to pulverise medicaments, and is made of iron or brass.

In the Mahāvagga[3] we find a reference to the pestle and mortar. "I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a chunam as a medicine by whomsoever has the itch, or boils, or a discharge or scabs, or whose body is ill smelling, and to those in health the use of dry dung, and of clay, and of coloring matter. I allow, the use, O Bhikkhus, of a pestle and mortar" (udukhalam nusalañ ka).

Sieves, strainers and filters.

There is evidence that cloth seive was used by the Hindus in ancient days, we find it mentioned in the Ṛgveda[4]. The purpose of straining and filtering solid and liquid medicines respectively is mentioned to have been served by two or

---

[1] Schol. on Katy. 1.3.3.6. footnote, Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (Sacred Books of the East, 1.1.4.8.)

[2] Cunningham's Bhilsa Topes, p. 207.

[3] Mohāvāgga VI. 9. 2.

[4] Ṛgveda, 10m. 71s. V 2

three layers of a piece of cloth. And we know that in the prehistoric Soma rites, it "was pressed, passed through a seive, mixed with milk, and offered as the main oblation".

The reference to a cloth sieve, we find in Mohāvagga[1]: "Now at that time the Bhikkhus who were sick had need of sifted chunam as medicine.

They told this thing to the Blessed One.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a chunam sieve".

They had need of the chunam very fine.

"I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a cloth sieve".

Pavitra was used in the Vedic times[2]. It was a filter. Wilson translates it: "Trough the purifying filters".

Cold and hot applications.

To relieve colic pains, vessels made of silver, copper or precious stones, containing cold water, are directed to be placed upon the part or better upon the navel[3]. Besides these, leather vessels containing cold water are also directed to be used for reducing the temperature in dilirium tremens.[4]

---

[1] Mohāvagga VI. 10. 1.

[2] मध्व: पुनाना: कविभि: पवित्रैर्द्युभिर्हिन्वंत्यक्तुभिर्धनुत्री: ॥

Ṛgveda, 3m. 31 s. 16 Rk.

अंशुं दुहन्ति हस्तिनो भरित्रैर्मध्व: पुनन्ति धारया पवित्रै: ॥

Ibid, 3m. 36s. 7Rk.

[3] मणिराजत ताम्राणि भाजनानि च सर्व्वश: ।
वारिपूर्णानि तान्यस्य गुल्मस्योपरि निक्षिपेत् ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xlii.

[4] हैमराजत कांस्यानां पात्राणां शीतवारिभि: ।
पूर्णानां हिमपूर्णानां हृतानां पवनाहृता: ॥

Caraka Saṁhitā, VI, xii.

Heat is directed to be applied to the patient's body in various ways[1] :—

I. Tāpasveda :—palm of the hand, brass dish, sand, cloth, potsherd &c. are the means mentioned for applying heat to the body.

II. Uṣṇasveda :—potsherds, stone, bricks, or iron balls are to be heated to redness and then water is to be sprinkled upon them. The part to be fomented is covered by a wet piece of thick lint and then the heated materials are to be applied over it. Or heat may be applied by means of a narrow vesssel containing hot decoctions. The vessel is to be surrounded by a piece of

---

[1] चतुर्विधः स्वेदस्तद् यथा। तापस्वेद उष्णस्वेद उपनाहस्वेदोद्रव स्वेद इति। अत्र सर्व्वस्वेद विकल्पावरोधः॥

तत्र ताप-स्वेदः। पाणि कांस्यकन्दकपाल वालुकावस्त्रैः प्रयुज्यते शयानस्याङ्गतापो वहृगः खादिराङ्गारैरिति। उष्ण-स्वेदस्तु कपाल पाषाणेष्टकालोह-पिण्डानग्निवर्णानग्नि रामिश्रैदस्य द्रव्यैर्वातै राद्रालक्तक परिवेष्टितमङ्ग-प्रदेशं स्वेदयेत्। मांस रस पयोदधि धान्याम्लवातहर पत्रभङ्ग काथ पूर्णां वा कुम्भीमनुतप्तां प्राहृत्योष्णं रुद्धौयात्। पार्श्व छिद्रेण वा कुम्भेनाधो-मुखेन तस्य मुखमभिसन्धाय तस्मिन् छिद्रे हस्ति शुण्डाकारां नाड़ीं प्रणिधाय तम् स्वेदयेत्।

सुखोपविष्टं स्वभ्यक्तं गुरु प्रावरणावृतं।
हस्तिशुण्डिकया नाड्या स्वेदयेदात-रोगिणं॥
सुखा सर्व्वाङ्गगा स्त्रीषा नच क्लिश्नाति मानवं।
त्र्यामाईमात्रा सिर्व्वका हस्ति हस्त समाकृतिः॥
स्वेदनार्थं छिता नाड़ी कैलिङ्गी हस्ती शुण्डिका।

* * * * * *

उपनाह स्वेदस्तु वातहरमूलकक्षेरस्य पिष्टैर्लवण प्रगाढैः सस्निग्धैः सुखोष्णैः प्रदिग्ध स्वेदयेत्। एवं काकोल्यादिभिः सुरसादिभिस्तिलातसी सर्षप कल्कैः कुशरा पायसोत्कारिका-भिर्व्वेसवारैः शाल्वणैर्व्वातघ्नवस्त्रावनद्धैः स्वेदयेत्।

द्रव स्वेदस्तु-वातहर द्रव्यकाथ पूर्णे कोष्ण कटाहे द्रोण्यां वावगाह्य स्वेदयेत्। एवं पयोमांस-रस-घृष-तैल-धान्याम्ल-घृत-वसा मूत्रेष्ववगाहेत सुखोष्णैः कषायैः परिषिञ्चेदिति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. xxxii.

cloth to prevent the skin from being burnt. Or heat may be applied by the following device:—an earthen vessel or kalasī containing hot decoctions is to be closed; and the vessel is then to be inverted. Then a hole should be bored on its side, and a tube shaped like an elephant's proboscis is fitted to it; the vapour issuing from the tube is allowed to play on the part.

To apply vapour bath:—put the hot infusion of medicinal substances into an earthen vessel and close its mouth. Drill a hole into the side of the vessel and adapt a tube to it. The tube may be either metallic or wooden. The tube should be two hands (forearm and hand) long and made of three pieces; the end of the tube which should taper like a cow's tail must be six aṅguli long. The patient should be seated on a stool and well covered with cloth. The tube is then introduced inside the blanket, and thus the issuing vapours heat the whole body. (Śārṅgadhara[1]).

Suśruta says that the tube should be half byām (*i.e.*, the distance between the two hands when extended) long, bent thrice and shaped like an elephant's proboscis. Sometimes a large stone slab is to be heated with burning wood of Acacia Catechu. Then after removing the ashes, the patient is directed to lie upon it. A tent or cloth-cover having four doors is sometimes required for the patient to sit in, and heat is applied by burning wood outside it.

---

[1] अथवा वातनिर्नाशिद्रव्यक्काथरसादिभिः।
उष्णैर्घटं पूरयित्वा प्राग्वे छिद्रं विधाय च॥
विमुद्राख्यं विखण्डाख्य धातुजां काष्ठजां तथा।
षड्ङ्गुलाख्यां गोपुच्छां नाडीं युञ्जात् द्विहस्तिकां॥
सुखोपविष्टं स्वभ्यक्तं गुरुप्रावरणावृतम्॥
हस्तीयण्डिकया नाड्या स्वेदयेदातरोगिणम्॥

Śārṅgadhara Saṅgraha, III. ii.

III. Upānahasveda or poultices :—roots of medicinal plants are to be pressed and formed into a paste with mustard, sesame etc. This is to be heated, put on a thin cloth and so applied.

IV. Dravasveda or hot bath :—the patient is to sit in a tub or vessel of hot water. Iron pails or tubs are recommended to be used by patients to take bath in some infusions. Śārṅgadhara says[1]: The tub (droṇī) should be made of gold, or silver, or copper, or iron, or wood. The height and length of the tub should measure thirty-six aṅguli each. When the patient sits inside, the height of water should stand six aṅguli above the navel. A droṇī filled with oil is to be used for placing an unconscious patient in it to overcome the shock caused by fall, blows, fractures and other injuries.

Cakradatta[2] describes the four methods of applying heat, Bhāvamiśra also describes them similarly[3]. Hārita, however, mentions seven methods of heat-application[4].

---

[1] सौवर्णं राजतं वापि तास्रमायसञ्च दारुजम् ।
कोष्ठकं तच्च कुर्व्वीतोच्छ्राये षट्त्रिंशदङ्गुलम् ॥
आयामेन तदेवस्याच्चतुर्थं मग्नणं तथा ।
नाभेः षड़ङ्गुलं यावन्मग्नः क्वाथस्य धारया ॥
Śārṅgadhara Saṅgraha, III. ii.

[2] तप्तैः सैकतपाणिकांस्यवसनैः स्वेदोऽथवाङ्गारक-
लेपादातहरैः सहास्ललवणक्षेहैः सुखोष्णैर्भवेत् ।
एवं तप्तपयोऽम्बुवातशमनक्वाथादिभैकादिभि-
स्तप्तैस्तोयनिषेचनोऽवहहाप्यैः शिलाद्यैः क्रमात् ॥
Cakradatta, Svedādhikāra.

[3] स्वेदश्चतुर्विधः प्रोक्तस्तापोष्मस्वेदसंज्ञितः ।
उपनाहो द्रवः स्वेदः सर्व्वे वातार्त्तिहारिणः ।
तापस्वेद उष्मस्वेदश्च ताभ्यां संज्ञितः ।
Bhava Prokāśa, I. i.

[4] स्वेदः सप्तविधः प्रोक्तो लोष्टस्वेदो वाष्पस्वेदोऽग्निज्वालास्वेदः ।
घटस्वेदो जलस्वेदो फलस्वेदो वालुकास्वेदश्च ।
Hāritā Saṁhitā, V. iv.

Balance or Mānadaṇda.

For weighing medicinal substances, the scales and balance are often mentioned. They mention a set of weights and measures to be used in weighing substances. Alberuni[1] describes the Hindu balance thus:—"The balance with which the Hindus weigh things, are χαρισ τίωνξες of which the weights are immovable, whilst the scales move on certain marks and lines. Therefore the balance is called tūla. The first lines mark the unit of the weight from 1 to 5, and further on to 10; the following lines mean the tenths, 10, 20, 30, &c. In Fergusson's Tree and Serpent Worship we have a diagram of steel-yard, where a man is represented as stepping in the scale, apparently to weigh himself[2]. The ordinary balance is still in common use amongst the kavirājes of the present day.

Collyrium Pots.

The Hindus used to apply collyrium to their eyes, from a very early time. It is said to stimulate the growth of eye-lashes, brighten the lusture of the eye-balls and clean the pupil[3].

Bhāvamiśra[4] recommends us to use collyrium as it improves the visual power and cures many diseases of the eye. It is

---

[1] Alberuni's India. Trans, by Sachau, vol. 1, p. 146.

[2] The Tree and Srpent Worship, the pl. lxxxiii. fig. 1.

[3] पक्ष्मलं विशदं कान्तममलोज्ज्वल मण्डलं ॥
नेत्रमञ्जन संयोगादभवेच्चामल तारकं ।
Suśrutā Saṁhitā, IV. xxiv.

[4] सौवीरमञ्जनं नित्यं हितमक्ष्णोस्तो भजेत् ।
लोचने भवतस्तेन मनोज्ञे सूक्ष्मदर्शने ॥
"सौवीरं" श्वेत सुरमा इति लोके प्रसिद्धम् ।
स्रोतोऽञ्जनं मतं श्रेष्ठं विशुद्धं सिन्धुसम्भवम् ॥

contra-indicated in patients suffering from fever, emesis, exhaustion, &c.

Suśruta mentions collyrium pots of different metals intended for different kinds of collyrium then in use —

gold	pots	for	sweet	collyrium.
silver	pots	for	acid	collyrium.
horn	pots	for	salt	collyrium.
copper & iron	pots	for	astringent	collyrium.
lapis lazuli	pots	for	sour or acid	collyrium.
bell-metal	pots	for	bitter	collyrium.

He also mentions pots of ivory, or crystal, or coral, or horn, or conch-shell, or stone, or gold, or silver[1].

He also mentions a piece of bamboo for storing collyrium[2] A bamboo is still used by the poor for keeping oil in India. For a similar purpose the wood of Khadira (Accacia Catechu) is also

---

दृष्टे: कण्डूमलहरं दाहक्लेद रुजापहम् ।
अक्ष्णोरुपावहञ्चैव सहजेमारुतातपौ ॥
नेत्ररोगा न जायन्ते तस्मादञ्जन माचरेत् ।

"श्रीतोऽञ्जनं" कृष्णसुरमा इति लोके प्रसिद्धं ॥ "विगडं" शोधनं विनापि ।
"सिन्धुसम्भवम्" सिन्धुनाम पर्व्वतस्तत्र सम्भवम् ।

रात्रौ जागरित: श्रान्त: कर्दितो भुक्तवांस्तथा ।
ज्वरातुर: शिरस्नाती नाक्षोरञ्जनमाचरेत् ।

Bhāva Prokāśa, I. i.

[1] See foot-note 3, P. 67.

[2] कुवलकाशोकशाल्मलिपियङ्गुनलिनोत्पलै: ॥
पुष्पैरेषक्वाथापथ्यामलक संयुते: ।
सर्पि र्मधुयुतैर्मृण्मयगुणाद्यामवस्थिते: ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xvii.

recommended[1]. For storing oil, Dṛḍhavala[2] mentions the use of vessels of stone or the horn of a lamb or iron.

Medicine Glass.

Sukti or shell of mussell was used as medicine glass. The shell of the fresh water mussels unionacea is mentioned to be used for holding a dose of medicine for administering it to a patient[3]. They generally have equivalve, though not equisided, shells which are covered externally with a smooth brown epidermis and internally by a mother-of-pearl layer. Such a shell "is said to have been formerly much used in Engliand by painters for holding their colour and so the commonest variety is termed unio pictorua. To apply oleaginous errhines, Suśruta[4] recommends us to use metallic pots or the shell of mussel. It is still used in India for feeding the babies with milk and also for administering medicines to the patient. Heyne[5] (1814) says that "according to the nature of the disender, the medicines should be taken out of gold, silver or brass vessels. But if these should not be at hand you may use iron or even earthen vessel."

---

[1] सैन्धवोपहितं युक्त्यान्निहितं वेणुगह्वरे ।
मेदीयकृदघृतक्षौद्रं पिप्पल्यः सैन्धवं मधु ॥
रसमामलकस्यापि पक्वं सम्यङ् निधापयेत् ।
कोशे खदिरनिर्य्याणे तद्वत् क्षुद्राश्मनं हितं ॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, VI. xvii.

[2] See foot note, 4. P. 67.

[3] तत उपसंस्कृतशरीरः प्रातः प्रातरुत्थाय पाणियुक्तिमात्रं चौद्रेण प्रतिसंसृज्योपयुञ्जीत ।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. x.

[4] वामहस्त प्रदेशिन्य योन्नामितनालायाय विगुह्य स्रोतसि दक्षिण हस्तेन स्नेहमुष्णान् तत्र रजत सुवर्ण ताम्रस्तत्पात्र शुक्तिनामन्यतम यं शक्त्या पित्तना वा सुखोष्णं स्नेहमद्रुतमासिञ्चेद व्यवच्छिन्न-धारं यथानेत्रेनैं प्राप्नोति ।

Ibid. IV. xl.

[5] Dr. Heyne's Indian Tracts,

Dropper.

The Hindus used a tent of cotton as a drop conductor. Cakradatta[1] advises us to drop medicines into the eyes thus:—the patient should be made to lie down in a place free from draught; the surgeon is to open his eye with the left hand, while with the right, he allows 10 or 12 drops of medicine to fall from a height of two aṅguli on the eye from a tent of cotton, immersed in medicine contained in a clean vessel.

Grind-stone.

Grind-stone to pulverise medicaments is mentioned. In the Mahāvagga[2] we find a reference to it. "I allow, O Bhikkhus, the use of a grind stone, and of another stone to grind upon" (pisana-śilâ ka pisana poto ka—Buddhaghosha).

Stone and iron muller.

For similar purpose a stone slab and iron muller are necessary to make pastes and powders of medicines. On the inner face of the left piller in the eastern gate of Sanchi Topes, the kitchen scene is represented, in which "a fourth woman is seated grinding spices or condiments on the sil, or flat stone, with a bant or round muller[3]".

Khal or elliptical mortar of stone and pestle.

To prepare medicines to be exhibited to the patients, a small

---

[1] निवातस्थस्य वामेन पाणिनोन्मील्य लोचनम् ।
शक्तीप्रलम्बयानेन पिचुवर्त्या कनीनिके ।
दश द्वादश वा बिन्दून् द्राङ्गुलादवसेचयेत् ।
Cakradatta, Āśotancyāmann Adhikāra.

[2] Mahāvagga vi. 3.2.

[3] Cunninham Cunningham's Bhilsa Topes, p. 206.

elliptical mortar is generally used when the medicines require to be thorougly mixed with some excipient.

The following appliances, besides those mentioned before, become necesary in pharmacy :—

1. Iron pails of various sizes.
2. Vessels of iron, copper, silver, brass and earth for storing medicines.
3. Spoons of wood or darvi; large metallic spoon or hata.
4. Iron sandaṁśa or pinchers.
5. Rods of wood or iron.
6. Blacksmith's bellows.
7. Ankuśa or hooks like the elephant driver's goad.
8. Iron hammer.
9. Earthen crucibles of different sizes.

CHAPTER IX.

THE CONCLUSION.

In the recent edition of the System of Medicine, Prof. Albutt[1] begins his article on the History of medicine with the following observations: "The medicine of Egypt and the East, extensive and intricate as it was, in so far as it was not Greek did not contain even the rudiments of science. To it Western medicine owes virtually nothing, and in this article at any rate, it may be disregarded". Prof. Osler[2] also speaks in the same strain: "Crude and bizzare among the primitive nations, these ideas of disease received among the Greeks and Romans a practical development worthy of these peoples. There have been systemes of so-called divine healing in all the great civilizations, but for beauty of conception and for grandeur of detail in the execution, all are as nothing in comparison with the cult of the son of Appolo, and of Æsculapius, the god of healing." "Scientific medicine, the product of a union of religion with philosophy, had its origin in a remarkable conjunction of gifts and conditions among the Greeks in the sixth centuries".

Such opinions remind us of an assertion of Sir William Jones[3] "that there is no evidence that in any language of Asia there exists one original treatise on medicine considered as science". About a century has elapsed since the time of Sir William but we see that the same misconception still prevails in the minds of

---

[1] Albutt and Rolleston. System of Medicine, vol. I, p. 1.

[2] Oslar and Mcrae's System of Medicine.

[3] Discourse xi. Sir William Jone's Works, Vol. I. p. 161.

the scholars. Macdonell[1] gives us a succint account of the intellectual debt of Europe to the various branches of science and art of the Hindus but regrets that the genetic connection of Indian medicine with that of Greece can not at present be definitely settled. "The question as to whether Indian medical science in its earlier period was affected by that of the Greeks can not be answered with certainty, the two systems not having hitherto been compared with sufficient care." The European mind is quite naturally in the habit of tracing all knowledge to Greece, the fountain of all their knowledge in philosophy and science. But impartial writers are not wanting to vindicate the claims of the Hindus. So Wise remarks as follows[2] :—"Facts regarding the ancient history of medicine have been sought for only in the classical authors of Greece and Rome and have been arranged to suit a traditional theory which repudiated all systems which did not proceed from á Greecian source. We are familiar from our youth with classical history and love to recall events illustrated by the torch of genius and depicted on our memories; and it requires a thorough examination of a subject, a careful weighing of new evidence, and a degree of ingenuousness not always to be found to alter early impressions. Still candour and truth require us to examine the value of new facts in history as they are discovered, so as to arrive at just conclusions". Royle maintains[3] that "from the mixture, however, of much ignorance and absurdity with what is valuable, many will be apt to despise altogether the medicine of the East. But if it be recollected how long in Europe prevailed the influence of Galen,

[1] History of Sanskrit Literature, ch. xvi.
[2] Review of the History of Medicine. Introduction.
[3] Antiquity of Hindu Medicine, p. 61.

as well as how many absurd formulas still figure in some continental pharmacopœas, as also how comparatively recent is the time since our own was so greatly improved; some feeling of humiliation will control the pride with which we now view the medical sciences". Neuberger says[1]; "The medicine of the Indians, if it does not equal the best achievements of their race, at least nearly approaches them. and owing to its wealth of knowledge, depth of speculation and systematic construction, takes an outstanding position in the history of oriental medicine." It is no doubt unsatisfactory to find that such notions are still allowed to stand in the way of impartial conclusions by eminent men of science especially by those who write history of medicine. But it is not the fault of the historians alone, the fault lies with us for not having supplied them with adequate materials. Something has been done in this field of research by men like Wilson, Heyne, Ainsle, Royle, Dutt, Thacore Shaheb, Jolley, Hoernle and others, but it is nothing when compared to what is required to be done. To supply this want partially, we have endeavoured in this monograph to describe the surgical instruments of the Hindus, with a comparative study of the instruments of the Greek, Roman and Arab surgeons, and of the surgeons in modern times. By a careful study of this subject, we can not avoid the conclusion that the medicine of India though it was not Greek, contained the requirements of science and has a fair claim to be considered in the history of medicine. To it western medicine really owes something and so the subject has been studied and investigated thoroughly.

[1] Neuberger. History of Medicine. Trans. by Playfair. Vol. I. p. 437.

Apart from the usefulness of the study for collecting materials for the history of medicine, there are good reasons for a critical examination of the subject. The knowledge of the Hindus in medical science was by no means rudimentary. There is evidence to show that they were inferior to none in the quality or quantity of the knowledge of the science at that early age. Hoernle says:[1] "Its extent and accuracy are surprising when we allow for their early age—probably the sixth century before Christ—and their peculiar methods of definition." They practised dissection of human bodies and their anatomical studies have the mark of high order. "We have seen that they used various forms of surgical instruments. The Hindus cut for stone couched for the cataract and extracted the fœtus from the womb". They performed abdominal section, practised cranial surgery successfully and no region of the body was thought sacred to the knife. They repaired nose and ears by plastic operations, treated fractures and reduced dislocations, and were experts in performing amputations. They reduced hernia, cured piles and fistula-in-ano by surgical technique, and inoculated and vaccinated for small-pox. Field surgery was thoroughly understood and arrows were extracted with skill. They were acquainted with the circulation of the blood,[2]

---

[1] Hoernle's Osteology, Preface. P. iii.

[2] याभिरिदं शरीरमाराम इव जलहारिणीभिः केदार इव च कृल्याभिरुपस्निग्धते-ऽनुगृह्यतेचाकुचन प्रसारणादिभिर्विशेषैः। द्रुमपत्रसेवनीनामिव च तासां प्रतानास्तासां नाभिर्मूलं ततश्च प्रसरन्त्यूर्ध्वमधस्तिर्यक् च।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. vii.

दृष्टस्योत्पत्तिरसृजो दृष्टेनैव धार्य्यते।
रक्तं जीवस्य चाधारस्तस्मादृचेदसृग्बुधः॥

Bhāva-Prakāśa, I. ii.

the distinction between the artery and vein,[1] the use of anæsthetics, the means of arresting hæmorrhage and the proper treatment of surgical wounds. They enumerated 107 vital parts of the body to be avoided, if possible, by the surgeon in practising his handicraft.[2]

In medicine they first propounded the humoural pathology. Though it seems fanciful in the light of modern culture, it must be admitted that no other theory has been attempted to explain the causation of disease in recent times. "They were the first nation who employed minerals internally and to them we owe the therapeutic use of mercury and arsenic in intermittents". They introduced massage, postural treatment and magnet in therapeutics. They excelled in chemistry and contrived many instruments for the preparation of chemical compounds. Atomic theory was discovered by Kaṇāda; and "they knew how to prepare sulphuric acid, nitric acid and muriatic acid, the oxide of copper, iron, lead (of which they had both the red oxide and litharge),

---

विस्रता द्रवता रागश्चलनं विलयस्तथा।
भूम्यादिपञ्चभूतानामेते रक्ते गुणाः स्मृताः॥
रक्ते दुष्टे भवेच्छोथो रक्तमण्डलमेव च।
व्यथा दाहश्च पाकश्च कण्डूश्च पीड़कोद्गमः।
हर्षे रक्ताङ्ग नेत्रत्वं शिराणां पूर्णता तथा।
गात्राणां गौरवं निद्रा मेहो दाहश्च जायते॥

Sārṅgadharā Saṁgraha, III. xii.
Bhāva Prakāśa, I. ii.

[1] इन्द्रगोपप्रभं श्रेयं प्रकृतिस्थसमंहतम्।

Sārṅgadhara Saṁgraha, III. xii.

गूढ़ाः समस्थिताः स्निग्धा रोहिण्यः शुद्धशोणितम्।

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdayā Saṁhitā, II. iii.

[2] सप्तोत्तरं मर्म्मशतं।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. vi.

tin, and zinc ; the sulphuret of iron, copper, mercury, antimony and arsenic ; the sulphate of copper, zinc and iron ; and carbonates of lead and iron[1]". The processes of solution, calcination and distillation were discovered by them.

They understood the action of drugs and no less than 500 classes of medicinal agents are enumerated and arranged according to their virtues in curing diseases, and their remedial agents have been collected from the vegetable, animal and mineral kingdoms. There are 41 different forms in which the medicaments may be exhibited to the patient. We have the earliest notice respecting zoology and botanical geography in their works. They had a complete nomenclature of diseases which are described minutely as regards their ætiology, symptomatalogy, diagnosis, pathology, prognosis and treatment.

Veterinary science was well known to them, and treatises on horses and elephants—Aśvavaidyaka and Pālakāpya[2] are still extant, and will repay perusal. Even there is a treatise on the treatment of plants and trees[3]. Thus we see that the Hindu medical science must not be condemned offhand and requires a careful and sympathetic research by scholars, before it can be excluded from the history of the science.

But I must be careful not to allow my enthusiast admiration carry me too far. It is quite true that the Ayurvedic system has its faults. It has been remarked that "it consisted of erroneous

---

[1] Elphinistone's History of India, 8th ed. p, 160.

[2] Another book on the medicine of elephants is quoted by Alberuni. See Sachau's Preface to Indica, p. xl.

[3] For the bibliography of the Āyurvedic books, see my work "Materials, Biographical and Bibliographical, for the History of Hindu Medicine". (In the press).

doctrines founded upon a most fanciful anatomy, physiology and pathology. Much indeed could hardly be expected of a science based upon an anatomy which taught that the navel "constituted a centre from which a vascular system, including 40 principal vessels originated[1]; upon a physiology which declared that these vessels were destined to convey blood, air, bile and phlegm to all parts of the body, and upon a pathology which maintained that disease depended either upon derangements of one or more of these humours or "upon the influence of good or evil spirits".[2] It must however be remembered that this criticism refers to a theory elaborated some 3000 years before. The idea that the navel formed the centre of the vascular system apparently had its origin in the fœtal circulation[3]. The position of the heart was well-known and its function as a profeelling organ is

---

[1] यावत्यस्तु सिराः काये सम्भवन्ति शरीरिणां।
नाभ्यां सर्व्वा निबद्धास्ताः प्रतन्वन्ति समन्ततः॥
नाभिस्थाः प्राणिनां प्राणाः प्राणान्नाभिर्वृपाश्रिता।
सिराभिराहृता नाभिश्चक्रनाभिरिवारकैः॥

तासां मूलसिरायत्वारिंशत्तासां वातवाहिन्यो दश पित्तवाहिन्यो दश कफवाहिन्यो दश दश रक्तवाहिन्यः।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. vii.

तस्यान्तरेण नाभिस्तु ज्योतिःस्थानं ध्रुवं स्मृतं।
तदा धमति वातस्तु देहस्तेनास्य वर्द्धते॥

Ibid. III. iv.

[2] A course of lectures on the Principles and Practice of Medicine delivered at Calcutta Medical College. By Francis. 1868.

[3] मातुस्तु खलु रसवहायां नाड्यां गर्भनाभिनाड़ी प्रतिबद्धा सास्य मातुराहाररस-वीर्य्यमभिवहति। तेनोपसेहेनास्याभिवृद्धिर्भवति।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, III. iii.

described in the ancient books[1]. In the later Tantras the origin of the nerves from the spinal cord and the brain is distinctly stated[2]. The ancient Hindus, like the Babylonians, thought the heart to be the seat of the understanding, and the liver as the central organ of the blood. The Greeks were the most cultured nation at that age, and the knowledge of the two nations can be compared to our advantage. The Hindus did not share with the Greeks the belief that the uterus is "an animal within an animal" and that it can be attracted by pleasant smells and repelled by pungent substances"[3]. The humoural pathology was also the keystone of the Greecian system. The belief in the good and evil spirit was the only alternative to the pathologists when the microscope and the germ theory of diseases were unknown. It is highly creditable to the classical Greek physicians for banishing superstition from the practice of the art; but we know that the later Greek writers Aetius, Alexander and Paulus, and the Latin medical literature, were not free from its baneful influence. The belief in charms and miracles in the cure of diseases seems to be universal and is

---

[1] स रस: इत्युच्यते। तस्य च हृदयं स्थानं स हृदयाच्चतुर्विंशती: धमनीरनुप्रविश्योर्ध्वगा दश दश चाधोगामिन्यश्चतस्रस्तिर्य्यग्गा: कृत्स्नं शरीरमहरहस्तर्पयति वर्द्धयति धारयति यापयति जीवयति चाहृष्टहेतुकेन कर्म्मणा।

Suśruta Saṁhitā, I. xiv.

[2] द्वे द्वे तिर्य्यक्गते नाड्यौ चतुर्विंशति संख्यया।
मेरुदण्डेस्थिता: सर्व्वे सूत्रे मणिगणाइव॥
* * * *
ऊर्ध्वमूलमध:शाखं हृच्चाकारं कलेवरं।
यथाश्वत्थदले तद्वत् शरीरे नाड्यस्थिता:॥

Tantra.

[3] Paulus Ægineta, Adam's Commentary, Vol. I. P. 636.

working even at the present time. Adams says[1] that "considering the faith which many educated persons now repose in the virtues of galvanic rings and garters, the present generation has little ground for laughing at the credulity of our forefathers, with respect to amulets and other phylacteries".

In later times, attempts have been made to substitute other theories in the place of the humoural, and we know with what results. "Paracelsus substituted an equally baseless hypothesis, that the fundamental element of the human body were three principles : sal, the solid element; quicksilver, the liquid; and sulphur, the aerial. This formula was the badge of the Paracelsist school up to the end of the 17th century." Sylvius and Willi (17th century) of the Iatro-chemical school "referred most diseases to morbid matters or "acrimonies" produced by perverted secretions, and these being sometimes too alkaline, sometimes too acid, the antithesis of acid and alkali became the badge or catch word" of their system. Friedrich Hoffman (1660-1742) constructed another system which "supposed life to be a universally diffused ether, which entering the animal body, became transformed in the brain into Pneuma or nervous fluid. "George Ernest Stahl (1660-1734) believed in the hypothesis of Animism, and "the symptoms of disease were regarded as the conscious efforts of the soul to overcome the morbid influences". William Cullen (1712-90) "propounded a new system of medicine, intended to reconcile the opposing views of his predecessors. Its main feature was the importance attached to the nervous system in the causation of disease." Lastly the "Brunonian" system of John Brown, based on

[1] Adam's Commentary on Paul.

the doctrine of stimulus, and Hahneman's theory of homœopathy need be mentioned here to complete the list.[1] Thus we see that even some of the eminent men of science indulged in fanciful theories in quite modern times.

The study of ancient Hindu medicine has an antiquarian value. It is perhaps the oldest system of medical science still extant. Fragments of Egyptian and Assyrian medicine have no doubt been unearthed. But these cannot be compared with the complete system of the medical science as preserved in the early Sanskrit works on the subject. The Hindus believe their science of medicine to be of divine origin and this belief is founded upon the fact that the existence of the medical profession can be traced back to prehistoric times. The humoural theory is mentioned in the Ṛgveda[2] which according to the consensus of opinions amongst the European savants can not be later than 2000 B.C., and possibly earlier. The Buddhists relate a story, how, in one of his former births, Buddha was born as a medicine-man. "In the Mahosadha birth the archangel Sakka came to him as he was being born, and placing some fine sandal-wood in his hand, went away. He came out from the womb holding this in his fist. His mother asked him "What is it you hold, dear, as you come?" He answered "Medicine, mother!" So because he came holding medicine, they gave him the name of medicine-child (oṣadhadhāraka). Taking the medicine they kept it in a chatty (an earthenware water-pot) and it became

---

[1] Medicine in modern Europe. Payne in Albutt's System of Medicine, vol. I, p. 26, 29, 34.

[2] सोमानं स्वरणं कृणुहि ब्रह्मणस्पते कक्षीवन्तं य औशिजः ॥ तस्मै विधातु शर्म बहुलं गभस्त्योः ॥ Ṛgveda, i, 34, 6.

a drug by which all the sickness of the blind and deaf and others as many as came, was healed—so the saying sprang up, "This is a powerful drug"; and hence he was called Mahosadha (The great medicine-man).[1] This early date of the science amongst the Hindus is not exceptional. It is now well-known that so severe an operation as trephining the skull was often performed in the early stone age. "Trephined skulls from neolithic period have been found in most European countries, in Algiers, the Canaries, North America, Mexico, Peru and the Argentine"[2]. In the Code of Hammurabi, king of Babylon (2285-2242 B. C.), there are thirteen articles regulating medical practice. One deals with the responsibilities of a surgeon performing operations on the eye. The laws Hammurabi lay down that:—

"If a Physician cause a severe operation wound with a bronze operating knife and cure the patient, or if he open a tumour (cavity) with a bronze operating knife and save his eye, he shall have ten shekels of silver.

"If it be a freedman, he shall have five shekels.

"If it be any one's slave, his owner shall give the physician two shekels of silver.

"If the physician make a severe wound with a bronze operating knife and the patient die, or if he open a growth with a bronze operating knife and the patient lose his eye, he shall have his hands cut off.

"If a physician make a severe wound on the person of

---

[1] Rhys David's Buddhist Birth Stories, vol. I, p. 67-68.

[2] Neuberger's History of Medicine, P. 3.

a slave belonging to a freed man with the bronze operating knife and kill him, he shall replace the slave by another slave.

"If a physician heal a broken bone or cure diseased bowels, the patient shall pay the physian five shekels of silver."[1]

Homer pays tribute to Egypt for her

"Patron-god imparts
To all the Pharian race his healing arts."

Herodotus says that the Egyptian physicians were specialists of particular diseases, and Clement of Alexandria mentions forty-two Hermetic books on medicine by the god Thot.

"According to Manetho, he (Teta) constructed the Royal castle of Memphis and wrote a work on anatomy[2] being particularly occupied with medicine. The latter supposition is rendered more complete to a certain extent by the account, due to Ebers Papyrus[3], that the method of making the hair grow, described accurately therein, was supposed to have been discovered by our king's mother, Shesh."[4] Teta was the second king of the first dynasty of the old Memphis kingdom and flourished in 4366 B. C. King Senta of the second dynasty owned a medical work which belonged to Semti or Hesepti (4266 B. C.), the 5th king of the first dynasty.[5] "Tosorthros of the third dynasty, was said to have composed a treatise on medicine,[6] a fact which

---

[1] Neuberger. History of Medicine, P. 18.

[2] Manetho, in Müller-Didot, Fragmenta Historicum Græc, vol. II, pp. 539, 540.

[3] Ebers Papyrus, Pl. lxvi, 1, 5.

[4] Historian's History of the World, vol. I, Egypt and Mesopotamia. p. 91.

[5] Ibid, p. 68.

[6] Manetho, etc., vol. II, p. 544.

caused him to be identified with the healing god Imhotpû."[1] These facts suggest a great age for Egyptian medicine, Medicine flourished among the Assyrians: "Fragments of an old work on medicine have been found, which show that all known diseases have been classified and their symptoms described; and the medical mixtures considered appropriate to each being compounded and prescribed quite in modern fashion."[2]

The oldest medical treatise extant amogst the Chinese is the Neiching, the authorship being attributed to Hwang-ti; it dates back to B. C. 2597. Mr. Gatzlaff,[3] missionary in China, has given us a short view of a celebrated work, in 40 volumes, on Chinese medicines, which is called Ching che chun ching *i. e.*, "Approved marking line of medical practice."[4] So the Hippocratic treatises (460 B. C.) are rather modern compilations compared to these ancient books; and as told by Plato, the priest of Sais was fully justified when he addressed to Solon: "You Greeks, you are but children."[5]

It will be seen again that a comparative study of the science discloses remakable affinity to the systems of the other contemporary nations. The fabulous origin of medicine in India and Greece can not fail to attract the notice of even a casual observer. The resemblance of Dakṣa, the preceptor of the two Aṣvins, the offspring of Sun, who after learning the

---

[1] Ibid, p. 544 and 545.
Quoted in Maspero's "The Dawn of Civilization." Edited by Prof. Sayce, 5th ed. p. 238.
[2] Assyria; its Princes, Priests and Peoples, Sayce, p. 119.
[3] Proceedings of the Asiatic Society, Part VII, p. 154.
[4] Royle. Antiquity of Hindu Medicine, p. 67.
[5] Timæus, p. 22.

Āyurveda from their father became the medical attendants of the gods, to Æsculapius—the reputed son of Apollo, and his two sons Machaon and Podalarius, celebrated in the Homeric poems, is indeed remarkable. More remarkable is the belief in humoural pathology shared by the two nations, separated from each other by continents and seas, and alienated from each other by the differences in customs, manners and religion. The theory of independent origin and developement falls to the ground, especially when we consider the strange coincidence in the surgical instruments used by the two nations in performing surgical operations. Some of the instruments used by the Hindus were not only identical in structure and shape to the instruments of the Greeks, but they had even the same name. Thus for instance, the alābu yantra of the Hindus corresponds to the description of the cucurbitula of the Greeks, and both the terms mean a gourd. A śṛṅga is the horn; aṅguli yantra or mudrikā is the finger or ring-knife; yoni-vraṇekṣaṇa is the diopter or vaginal speculum; aṅkuśa is the hook; &c. Some instruments though they have different names are identical in structure and uses. Thus, the Scammum Hippocraticum or the Plinthium Nelei is the Greek counterpart of the Hindu kapātaśayana; the lithotomy binding of the yantraśatakam; the clyster of the vastiyantra; the saw of the karapatra; the needle of the sūcī; &c. Again many surgical operations are similarly described in both the systems, as for examples, the operations for stone and cataract may be cited. In the description of diseases, passages occur in books which seem to be a literal translation of one from the other. Thus in describing the symptoms of hydrophobia, Paulus quotes Rufus who pronounces it to be a

species of melancholy and then observes "Which reason accords also with those who say that they think they saw the image of the dog that bit them in water". The word "those" in the above sentence becomes clear to us when we read a similar passage in the kalpasthāna of the Suśruta Saṁhitā, and it may be thus translated:[1] "If the patient sees the image of the animal that bit him in the water or mirror, he is sure to die." Other passages might be multiplied but our limited space forbids any further quotations. All these coincidences can scarcely be accidental; and though we may not be able to trace the actual progress of medicine from India to Greece, yet the evidence in favour of its transmission is too strong to be held in doubt.

Thus the question of the relation of the medical science of the Hindus to that of the Greeks naturally suggests itself for solution. The possibility of a dependence of the either on the other can not be dismissed offhand for we have historical evidence of communication between the two nations at a very early age. We need not dwell at length upon those shoals and quagmires of historical controversies, the alleged conquest of India by Egyptian Seostris as recorded by Diodorus Seculus[2] in prehistoric times; the connection of the Phœnician traders as proved by the articles of merchandise,—cinnamon, aloes, onyx, agate, ebony, tin and ivory[3] diamond, gold and

[1] अप्सुवा यदि वादर्शे रिष्टं तस्य विनिर्दिशेत् ॥
तस्यत्यक्ष्माद योऽभीक्ष्णं श्वत्वाद्दष्टापि वा जलं।
जलवासन्तुविद्यात्तं रिष्टं तमापिकीर्त्तितं ॥

Suśrutā Sāṁhitā, V. vi.

[2] I. ib. I. ch. 43. Nolan.

[3] Strabo. xv 37. Quotes Megasthenes; Theophrastus quoted by MacCrindle in Ancient India as described by classical authors, p. 46; Virgil. Georg. 11. 116-17 ("India alone preduces black ebony"), Georg. 1. 57. ("India sends Ivory"), Lonsdale and Lee's trans.; Horace, odes 1. 31.

embroidered work[1] the commercial enterprises of the ships of Solomon (992 B. C.) from Ezion-Gaber[2] under the guidance of the mariners of Hiram (B.C. 980-917) which brought back the gold of "ophir," its almug trees and ivory, apes and peacocks; the possibility of an Indo-Hellenic intercourse to explain the remarkable coincidences between the systems of philosophy current amongst the two nations, and which culminated in the bold theory of Pococke[3] that Pythagoras, who is generally considered to be the founder of the healing art amongst the Greeks[4] was an adaptation of the Buddhugurus, and the assertion that Greece must have been an Indian colony before. Let us rather tread on firmer grounds and we know that two Greek physicians, Ktesias (about 400 B.C.) and Megasthenes (300 B. C.) visited Northern India. Ktesias in his Indica mentions the cochineal plant, its worm and dyes, monkeys, elephant and parrot. He says that the Indians were free from headache, toothache or ophthalmia and from mouth sores or ulcers. Alexander the Great (B.C.327), so says Nearchus, employed some Hindu vaids in his camp in India to consult them in cases of snake-bites and other dangerous ailments. Megasthenes mentions ebony as growing in Bengal, and tiger, monkey and elephants are also alluded to. Strabbo mentions that Daimacus was sent to the court of Candragupta's son, but unfortunately the book he wrote about India is lost to us. Mention also should be made of the intercourse of Egypt with India under the Ptolemies and we know, that Ptolemy

[1] Birdwood's Industrial Arts of India, pp. 263-4.

[2] I. King. ix. 27& xii, p. 22.

[3] India in Greece.

[4] See the Origin and Growth of the Healing Art—Bedroe. 162.

Philadelphous sent an embassy headed by one Dionysos to the court of Pātaliputra. Another source of dessimination of Hindu learning over the Western world is the emigration of the Buddhist missionaries to the kingdoms of Ptolemies and Greek kings as proved by the edicts of Aśoka. "And the Greek Simnoi (venerable) were no other than the Buddhist sramanas (these simnoi whom Clement of Alexandria has narrated to have rendered worship to a pyramid originally dedicated to the relics of a god, were the Buddhist Arhats (venerable) sramanas).[1] The intercourse of the East and West after the Christian era is well known and will not supply us with any proof as to the indebtedness of the Greeks and Hindus to each other; though "Dietz proves that the late Greek physicians were acquainted with the medical works of the Hindus, and availed themselves of their medicaments"; but he more particularity shows that the Arabians were familiar with them, and extolled the healing art as practised by the Indians, quite as much as that in use among the Greeks.[2]

But what is more important to us as a proof of the influence of the Indian medical science upon the Greecian system is the identification of drugs of Indian origin in the meteria medica of the Greeks. For instance the Sacred Bean of Pythagoras has been identified with Utpalam or Indian Nelumbium.[3] Hippocrates the Great, who was contemporary and kinsman of Ktesias[4] the court physician to the king of Persia, mentions:—Sesamum Indicum (Tila); Nardostachys Jatamansī

[1] Lalitvistaram. Mitter's ed. ch. 1.
[2] Journal of Education, Vol. viii, p. 176.
[3] Pratt's Flowering Plants, Vol. 1, p. 67.
[4] Galen; Comment, in libr. de artic. iii.

(Jaṭāmāṁsī); Beswillia Thurifera (Kunduru); Zinziber Officinale (Śṛṅgavera); and Piper Nigrum (Marīci). Dioscorides (1st century A.D.) in his Materia Medica describes:—Agallochum, Bdellium, Ebony (Diosphynos Ebenaster), Ammomum zinziberis (Ginger), Calamus aromatious (sweet cane of Scripture), Eletteria Cardamonmum (Elaci), Lycium Indicum or Russot, the product of Berbera lycium, Atramentum (Indigo), Onyx or the operculum of an Indian shell-fish, etc. In later times, we find Aetius, an Alexandrian writer of the 5th century describing Indian nuts, sandal wood, cocoanuts, etc. Symon Set mentions camphor; and Paulus Aegineta (7th century A.D.), a writer well known for his judicious condensation of the Greek medical literature, mentions Aloes, Cantharides (Mylabris Cichory), Cloves (Caryophyllum Aromaticus), Millet (Panicium Halicum), Costos (root of Auklandia Costos), Cassia (Cinnamomum Cassia), Indian stones as amulets, Malabathri or tejpāt (Laurus Cassia), Ambar, etc.

Now let us reproduce some of the conclusions arrived at by Western scholars as the result of the controversy. As regards philosophy, Colebrooke[1] asserts that "the Hindus were teachers and not learners". Cunningham[2] says: "Indians have the advantage in point of time; and I feel satisfied that the Greeks borrowed much of their philosophy from the East" Weber[3] remarks that "there is no ground whatever to suppose that Suśruta borrowed his system of medicine from the Greeks, on the contrary there is much to tell against such an idea".

---

[1] Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. I.

[2] Bhilsa Topes, pp. 32-33.

[3] History of Indian Literature.

Prof. Diaz of the Konnigsberg University, detects the principles of Indian medicine in the medical literature of the Greeks". "It is to the Hindus" says Wise, "we owe the first system of medicine." Royle has proved beyond doubt the indebtedness of the Greeks and Arabs to the Hindus. Haas's theory that Suśruta is the Indian adaptation of the Arabic name of Suqrat or Buqrat, the Arabic corruption of the Greek Hippocrates, and that Kāsi is an adaptation of the Island of Cos has been deservedly condemned as "an elaborate joke". Neuberger says:[1]— "The similarity between Indian and Greek medicine of the period is in its outline and in certain details so striking that it is hardly surprising that the originality of the former has frequently been questioned or even denied. The more so is this true since the dates of the more important Indian works are fixed with the greatest difficulty, and before the discovery of the most recent manuscripts they were quite indefinite.

In consideration of the outstanding independent achievements of the Indians in most branches of science and art, and of their aversion from foreign influences, the trend of opinion to-day, informed by recent discoveries is in favour of the originality of Indian medicine in its most salient features."

Another fact must here be pointed out that the Hindus always acknowledged any help they might have received from other nations for the development of their science. The striking proof of this is found with reference to the science of astronomy— the only branch of learning which seems to have been influenced by the Greeks. Varāhamihira compiled his famous Pañca-sidhāntica or the collection of the five old treatises on astronomy,

[1] Neuberger. History of medicine, Vol. I, p. 45.

viz., Paulisa, Romaka, Vaśiṣṭha, Saura, and Paitamoha. Both Weber and Kern have no doubt that Paulisa was a Greek and the name Romaka speaks for itself. But in the Hindu medical literature there is no mention of any foreign help, and the Indian medical treatises do not contain a single technical term which points to a foreign origin. It is interesting to quote the well known passage of Garga: "The Yavanas (Greeks) are Mlecchas, but amongst them the science (astrology) is well established. Therefore they are honoured as Ṛṣis—how much more than an astrologer who is a Brāhmaṇ". It is a standing monument of the catholic spirit of the Hindus, and they know no better way to show their respect for the learned men of the world. To this may well be contrasted the behaviour of the Greeks towards the other nations. The doctrines of Pythagoras are pre-eminently Indian[1], but that philosopher has not a word to speak of the Hindus. In astronomy the Greeks are indebted to Babylon: Ptolemy mentions that Hipparchus worked out and improved upon the astronomical computations of the Babylonians with reference to the moon; but recent discoveries from the clay tablets have shown that the figures ascribed to Hipparchus are merely copied from the numerical values worked out in Babylon. "The discovery of the precession of the equinoxes is generally ascribed to Hipparchus. It was he indeed, who brought this fact to the Greeks, and he estimated its yearly amount as from 36 to 39 seconds, but it is certain that he learned about it in Chaldea, and that he obtained the elements of his calculations from the astronomical observations made on the lower Euphrates".[2] Paulus Aegineta

[1] See Enfield's History of Philosophy.

[2] Historian's History of the World. Vol, I, p. 596.

gives us a complete system of operative surgery of the ancients. Celsus, in the last two books of his work, has treated of the surgical operations with considerable accuracy; and though the former availed himself of the labours of the latter, Celsus is never mentioned as one of the sources of informations used by Paulus who appears to have been wholly unacquainted with his works; and Adams remarks "but when did a Greek writer ever acknowledge himself under obligation to a Roman"?

But are we to suppose that the Greeks wilfully concealed the names of the Indian physicians in their books? Surely not. The Greeks might not have known the real source of the informations which they probably received second-hand. There is historical evidence of an intercommunication between Greece and Persia from the time of Ktesias or the 4th century B. C. to the 6th century A. D. We also know of a tradition that the services of the Great Hippocrates—a kinsman of Ktesias, were required in the Persian court, but he declined the invitation. Again we know that books on ancient sciences of India were possibly made use of by the Persians in early times, and to this intercommunication may be due "the coincidences which have been observed between the science of the Greeks and that of the Hindus" (Royle).

As regards the indebtedness of the Persians to Sanskrit literature," we have positive testimony on the subject, as the Baron de Sacy, in his account of the well-known Sanskrit origin of the Fables of Pilpay, states that these were first translated in Pehlevi during the reign of the Persian king Nooshirwan, who ascended the throne in 531, and died in 579 and who is reported by historians to have encouraged learning, and to have induced Greecian philosophy at his court. The translations

were made by the physician Barzouyeh who had brought the original from India with other books, and who by more than one previous journey to that country, had acquired a knowledge of Sanskrit. He is stated particularly, to have made two journeys, one for the purpose of procuring medicaments and herbs, and the other for obtaining specimens of literature of the Hindus"[1]. "Previous even to this (A. D. 330), we hear of the Persian king Bahram visiting, in disguise, the court of Basdeo, sovereign of Canouge, to study the laws, religion and manners of the Hindus."[2]

But whatever differences of opinion there may be as regards the relation of the Greeks to the Hindoos, there is no doubt that the medical science of the Arabs was materially influenced by Hindu medicine. For we know that the medical treatises of Caraka, Suśruta and Mādhava were translated into Arabic in the beginning of the 8th century A. D., and the names of Scarac, Scirac or Xarac and Sarad occur in the Latin translations of Avicenna, Rhases, and Serapion.[3] Rāy dwells at length on the similaritry of description of leeches as written by Suśruta and Rhazes. The modern medical science of the West is principally based on the Greecian system as preserved in the books of the Arabian authors and so indirectly depends for some particulars at least upon the Indian system.

Sachau in his preface to Alberuni's India[4] remarks as

---

[1] Antiquity of Hindu Medicine, p. 168-69.

[2] Ibid, p. 73.

[3] Rhazes: 'De Emblico,' (Scarac Indianus), 'De Zinzibere, (Sarac) Serapion: 'De Myrobalanis' (Xarch Indus), 'De Emblicis et bellericis (Xarcha Indus); Avicenna: 'Sub Emblico' (Scirac Indum).

[4] Alberuni's India, Preface, p. xxx-xxxi.

follows:—"What India has contributed reached Bagdad by two different roads. Part has come directly in translations from the Sanskrit, part has travelled through Iran, having originally been translated from Sanskrit (Pali? Prakrit?) into Persian, and further from Persian into Arabic. In this way, *e.g.* the fables of Kalila and Dimna have been communicated to the Arabs, and a book on medicine probably the famous Caraka. *cf.* Fihrist p. 303". The Arabs also translated "Indian works on snakes (sarpavidyā), on poison (visavidyā).....on the veterinary art[1].....But not only were the medical books translated into Arabic we have evidence that Indian doctors practised in foreign courts. Sachau continues:[2] "Another influx of Hindu learning took place under Harun (A. D. 786-808). The ministereal family Barmak, then at the zenith of their power, had come with the ruling dynasty from Balkh, where an ancestor of theirs had been an official in the Buddhistic temple Naubehar, *i. e.*, nava vihāra—the new temple (or monastery). The name Barmak is said to be of Indian descent, meaning paramaka, *i. e.*, the superior (abbot of the vihāra?) *cf.* Kern, Geschichte des Buddhismus in Indien, ii. 445, 543. Of course, the Barmak family had been converted, but their contemporaries never thought much of their profession of Islam, nor regarded it as genuine. Induced probably by family traditions, they sent scholars to India, there to study medicine and pharmacology. Besides, they engaged Hindu scholars to come to Bagdad, made them the chief physicians of their hospitals, and ordered them to translate from Sanskrit

[1] Alberuni's India, Preface, p. xxxiv.

[2] Ibid p. xxxii.

into Arabic, books on medicine, pharmacology, toxicology, philosophy, astrology, and other subjects. Still in later centuries, muslim scholars travelled for the same purpose as the emissaries of the Barmak, *e. g.*, Almuwaffak, not long before Alberuni's time (Codex Vindobonensis, sive medici Abu Mansur liber, fundamentorum pharmacologiæ, Ed. Selignann, Vienna, 1859, pp. 6, 10, and 15, 9)."

"Harun-al-Rashid (786-809) had two Indians Manka and Saleh, as physicians at his court"[1] Manka translated the classical work on medicine, Suśruta (*cf.* Steinschneider, Wissenschaftliche Blätter, Vol. 1, p. 79) and a treatise on poison, ascribed to Kânakya, from Sanskrit into Persian (see Prof. Flügel, in Zietschrift der D. M. G. xi. 148 and s. 325). A Hebrew treatise on poison, ascribed to the Indian Zanik (Kanakya) is mentioned by Steinschneider Wissenschaftliche Blätter, Vol. 1, p. 65). Alberuni mentions an Indian Kankab as astrologer of Harun-al-Rashid (Reinaud, memoire sur l' Inde, p. 315). He is likewise mentioned as a physican. Another Indian physician of Harun-al-Rashid is called Mankba (Reinaud). In the year 1381, a work on veterinary medicine ascribed to Salotar was translated from Sanskrit by the order of Firroz Shaha after the capture of Nagorecote. A copy of it was preserved in the Royal Library of Lucknow[2]. Among the Hindu physicians of the time one ابن دهن is mentioned *i.e.*, the son of DHN, director of the hospital of the Barmaks in Bagdad. This may be Dhanya, or Dhanian chosen probably on account of its etymological relationship with the name Dhaṇvantarī the name

[1] Prof. Dietz, quoted by Royle, p. 64.

[2] Maxmüller's Science of Language, Vol. I, p. 166.

of the mythical physician of the gods in Manu's law book and the epics (*cf.* A Weber, Indische Lithuraturgeschichte, pp. 284, 287). A similar relation seems to exist between the names Kanka, that of a physician of the same period, and Kankayana, an authority on Indian medicine (Weber 1. c., pp. 287, note, and 284 note, 302). The name اطر, that of an author of a book on drinkables, may be identified with Atri, mentioned as a medical author by Weber, 1. c. p. 288."[1]

For informations on the Arabic translations of Sanskrit works, see Analecta Medica by Dietz; Wustendeld's Geschichte der Arab Aerzte; Cureton, "A collection of such passages relative to India as may occur in Arabic writers"; Wilson's note to the above in J. R. A. S. old series, vi, pp. 105-115. Puschmann, p. 162; and Bedrœ, book iv. ch. 11. pp 286-299.

The Arabians added many durgs to the meteria medica of the Greeks and amongst them we find the following Indian drugs described :—

Diudar or Pinus Deodara.....Devadāru[2]
Artemesia Indica.....Nāgdamani.
Piper cubeba.....Sugandha marica.
Cassia fistula.....Suvarnakha.
Senna or Cassia obvata.....Sonāmukhī.
Galangal or Alpina galangal, Roxb.....Kulin-jana.
Ammomum grana paradisi.
Macis.....Mace.
Nux moschata.....Nutmeg.

[1] Sachau. Ibid p. xxxii.

[2] It is described by Avicenna under its Sanskrit name, where he says that deiudar, "est ex genera abhel juniperus, que dicitur pinus Inda; et syr diudar est ejus lac" (Quoted by Royle).

Bdellium.....Guggula.
Tamarindus Indica.....Tintiḍī.
Trifolia.....Triphala.[1]
Myrobalani.....Haritaki.
Turpeth or Convolvulus Turpethum.....Trivit.
Sel or Aegle marmelos.....Vilva.
Santalum rubrum.....Candana.
Melia azadirachta.....Nimba.
Tembul (Piper betel).....Tāmbūl.
Faufil (Arecha catechu).....Khadira.
Nux vomica.....Viṣamuṣti.
Musa paradisiaca or plantain.....Kadalī.
Moschos moschifera (from Thibet & India)Mṛganābhi.
Dolichos lebleb.
Orange or Citrus aurantium.....Nāgaraṅga.
Limon or citrus medica.....Mātuluṅga.
Pearls and other precious stones such as lapiz lazuli. Borax, &c.
Rhabarburnum or Indian Rhubarb, etc.

We can trace the Arabic and Greek names of some of the medicuments to a Sanskrit source. Royle has discussed them at length, so we need give here only a synopsis of it:—

Triphalā (S)—Tryphalla (A)—Tryphalla (G)—Tryphala parva (modern).

Devadāru (S)—Deiudar(Avicenna)—Deedara (G)—Pinus deodaru.

Tvaka-kshira (S)—Tabosheer (A).

Tamālpatra (S)—Malatroon or Malabathrum (G).

Tejapatra(s), or tuj—Sadej (A).

[1] Actuarius copies from Serapion and Mesue, the use of this medicine. The very name is Sanskrit, meaning the 3 myrobalans. Serapion refers to Xarch indus or Charak, in his De Myrobalani (Royle, P. 37).

Tāmbula (S)—Tumbol (P)—Tunbol (A).

Pippalī (S)—Pippul (H)—pilpil (P)—filfil (A)—(G)—piper (E).

Sṛṅgavera (S)—Shimgveez (P)—Zinzabil (A)—Zingiber (E).

Aguru (S)—aggur (H)—Agila (M)—Pao-d'aglia (aquilia) (po)—Aod Hindee Agallochum (G).

Candana (S)—chundan (H)—Shandana (T)—Sundul (P)—Santal (E).

Kolinjana (S)—Galanga (G).

Vaca (S)—Wuz (A).

Dāvrusita (S)—Darcheeni (H)—Darsheeni (A).

Cacyn-nama (C)—Akimona (P)—Kaimanis (M)—Cinnamon.

Kuṣṭha (S)—Kooth (H)—Kust (A)—Koosrus (G)—Koshta (Sy).

Abnus—Ebony (E).

Kubara (S)—pupal (P)—fufal (A).

Sajikā (S)—Sajiimattee, sajiloon, sajii (H)—Sajimen vitri (Geber)—Soza or soda (E).

Khar, khari (S)—Kali. (A).

Kussas, missy (India)—misy (A)—misy (G).

Tincana (borax)—Tinkar (P)—tincal (E).

Ambara (S)—Kharoba (A)—Amber, Ambegrise (E).

Kassis (tin)—Kassiteros (G).

Tuttha (S)—tootum or tutia (H)—tutia (P)—tatanagum (T)—tutenagun and tutty.

Manaśilā (S)—Mansil (G).

Haritāl (S)—hartal.

Sarkarā (S)—sakkara (T)—sukkur (A)—Sugar (E).

Sandaracha (S) or sulphuret of arsenic—Zarnach (P & G).

Sphotaka (S)—phoska (B)—pocca (A. S.)—pocke (Ger).

Tintiḍi (S)—Tamar Hind (A)—Tamuarin (Fr)—Tamarinds (Italy & Sp.)—Tamarind (B)—Tamarindus India (L).

Masurikā (S)—Masern (Ger)—Measles (E).

Vraṇa (S)—verole (Fr)—variola (L).

Danga (Hindus)—Dandy—Dengue (Sp).

S—Sanskrit. A—Arabic. G—Greek. T—Tamil. P—Persian. M—Malayan. Po—Portuguese. Sy—Syriac. Ger—German. A. S.—Anglo-Saxon. H—Hindi. E—English. B—Bengali. Fr—French. L—Tatin. It—Italy. Sp—Spanish.

Not only is the influence of the Sanskrit medical works detected in the Persian, Hebrew, Arabic, Greek and Roman works on medicine, there is evidence that the Hindu system of medicine was also adopted by the Tibetans and the Chinese. In the January No. 37 of the J.A.S.B. 1835 Vol. IV, an analysis of a Thibetan work is given by Alexander Csoma de Koros. It is called "rgyud bzhi" (the tract in 4 parts). It is attributed to Sakhya. "In the time of Khrisrong Dehutsan (*i.e.* 8th or 9th century of the Christian era) a Tibetan interpreter Bairotsana (or Vairochana) having translated in Cashmere, with the assistance of physician-pandit (Davam Non-gah) presented it to the above mentioned Thibetan king." In a Note on Thibetan surgical instruments, Walsh says:[1] "The present practice of surgery in Tibet is very simple, and, as already noted, consists chiefly of cupping, cauterizing, and bleeding. The Am-chhi informed me that the only instruments used are the cupping-bow (མེ་ཕུང་ me-puṅ, or མེ་བུམ་ me-bum, both meaning 'fire vessel'), in which

[1] The Thibetan Anatomical System by E. H. C. Walsh in J. R. A. S. 1910, pp. 1244-45.

paper is lit and the bowl is placed while hot over the part to be blistered; the sucking-horn (རྨིབ་རུ་ *h*jib-ru), by which cupping by vacuum is done; the cautery (ལྕགས་མེ་ *l*chags-me), the lancet (རྩ་ཨུ་ *r*tsa-u), for bleeding, and a golden lancet (གསེར་ཀྱི་རྩ་ཨུ་ *g*ser kyi *r*tsa-u) for operating on the eye.

In the journal of the Buddhist Text Society of Calcutta for 1894 three Tibetan block prints are illustrated, which contain representations of a large number of surgical instruments, some of them of an elaborate nature, including specula, saws, catheters, exploring needles, instruments for tapping hydrocele, and midwifery and other forceps. The block-prints were brought by Rai Saratchandra Das, Bahadur, from Lhasa,[1] and a description of the figures was given by the late Lama Śes-rab MGya Mtsho, the Abbot of Ghoom Monastery, near Darjeeling, who was formerly physician to the late Tashi Lama, which were explained in a paper read by Dr. Saradaprasad Banerjee.[2]

If the elaborate and various instruments shown in the block-print were ever in general use they appear to have now ceased to be used."

In the J.R.A.S. April 1907, is mentioned "a Chinese text corresponding to a part of the Bower manuscript" by Watanbe. The identified portion of the MSS. consists of the six leaves which appear in plates XLIX-LIV (Hoernle's ed). The corresponding Chinese text is contained in six translations of which the following three, correspond completely to the MSS.

---

[1] Journal of the Buddhist Text Society, Vol. II, Pt. III, Calcutta 1894. P. III.

[2] Ibid, pp. IX. X.

1. Mohamayuri vidya-rajui—translated by I'tsing 705 A.D.
2. ,, ,, ,, Amoghavajra 746 to 771 A.D.
3. ,, ,, ,, Sanghapala 516 A.D.

Again many articles are common to the Hindus and Chinese materia medica; as many aromatics (nutmeg, cloves, cinnamon and pepper), musk, rhubarb etc. And this is not at all surprising for we have evidence "that there was constant intercourse[1] between these countries even before the Christian era, by means of travellers and ambassadors; and that Buddhist priests in visiting China, took with them as presents classical Indian books. It is also worthy of note, in connexion with the chapter on this subject in Suśruta, that in A.D. 648, the Emperor of China having sent an ambassador to India, this officer met with a doctor, who told him that he was 200 years old, and that he possessed the recipe of immortality, upon hearing which, a second embassy was despatched in search of the philosophical stone" (Royle).

Even the modern medical science of Europe has been directly influenced by the Hindu system of medicine. In the materia medica used by the doctors in Europe now, we find the following curative agents—the produce of India. I quote here the list as prepared by Thakore Shaheb[2] :—

"Aconitum heterophyllum ... Ativisha.
Allium cepa ... ... Polandu.
Acacia catechu ... ... Khadira.

[1] See Asiatic Journal, July 1836.
[2] History of Aryan Medical Science, P. 128.

Alhagi maurorum	...	Yavasa.
Alstonia scholaris...	...	Saptaparna.
Ammomum elettarum	...	Ela.
Andropogon nardus	...	Ushira.
Andropogon schænanthus	...	Katurina.
Artemisia sternutatoria	...	Agnidamani.
Berberis lycium ...	...	Daruharidra.
Butea frondosa ...	...	Palasha.
Cassia lanceolata ...	...	Sonamukhi.
Cucumis colocynthis	...	Indravaruni.
Dhatura alba, niger &c.	...	Dhattura.
Justicia adhatoda...	...	Atarusha.
Luffa amara ...	...	Katukoshtaki.
Linum usitatissimum	...	Atasi.
Mallotus Philippiensis	...	Kapillaka.
Myrica sapida ...	...	Katfala.
Ophelia chiretta and Ophelia augustifolia ...	...	Kirata.
Pimpinella Anisum	...	Shatapushpa.
Pongamia glabra...	...	Karanja.
Ptychotis ajowan ...	...	Ajamoda.
Ricinus communis	...	Eranda.
Salvinia cucullata	...	Undurkarnika.
Santalum album & Santalum flavum ...	...	Chandana.
Shorea Robusta ...	...	Ajakarna.
Strychnos potatorum, Strychnos nux vomica ...	...	Katakafala.
Tinospora Cordifolia	...	Guḍuci.

Valeriana Hardwicki	...	Tagara.
Wrightia Antidysenterica	...	Indrayava."

To this list may be added the following drugs from the Indian and Colonial Addendum to the British Pharmacopœa, 1898 :—

Acacia Arabica ...	...	Vāvvula.
Acalypha Indica ...	...	Muktabarṣi.
Andrographis Paniculata	...	Kirāta.
Aristolochia Indica	...	Arkamula.
Arachia Hypogaea	...	Bucanaka.
Citrus Aurantium	...	Nāgaraṅga.
Azadirachta Indica	...	Nimba.
Aegle Marmelos ...	...	Vilva.
Piperbetel ...	...	Tāmbula.
Butæa Gummi.		
Cæsalpina Sappan...	...	Patanga or Bakam.
Calotropis Procera and C. Gigantiæ	...	Arka.
Gossypium Herbaceum	...	Kārpāsa.
Cambogia Indica.		
Cissampelos Pariera	...	Ambashthai.
Coscinum Fenestratum	...	Dāru-haridrā or darvi.
Gynocardia Odorata	...	Chālmugra.
Hygrophila Spinosa	...	Kokilāk:a.
Anogeissus Latifolia		
Embelia Ribes and E. Robusta...		Viḍaṅga.
Plantago Ovata ...	...	Ispaghula.
Ipomæa Hederacea	...	Kālādāna.
Ipomæa Turpethum	...	Trivit.

Mylabris Phalerta.		
Terminalia Chebula	...	Haritakī.
Sesamum Indicum	...	Tila.
Picrorhiza Kurroa ...	...	Katuka.
Urginea Indica ...	...	Vanapalāṇdu.

As regards the medicines used by the Hindus, Neuberger says[1]:

"The Pharmacopia, corresponding with the fruitful nature of the land was a rich one and stamps Indian medicine with a character entirely its own, whilst nothing speaks more eloquently for its originality than the fact that of all the many medicinal plants no single one was European."

Elphinstone wonders at the knowledge of simples in which the Hindus early gave lessons to Europe and "more recently taught us the benefit of smoking Datura in asthma and the use of cowitch against worms," and "the prescribing of Nux Vomica in paralysis and dyspepsia, and the revival of the use of Croton Tiglium" (Royle). In surgery, too, the modern surgeons of Europe have borrowed the Indian method of Rhinoplastic operation first made known to European surgeons by a letter which was printed in the Gentleman's Magazine for October 1794, p. 891. In fact Dr. Hirschberg of Berlin says that "the whole plastic surgery in Europe had taken its new flight when these cunning devices of Indian workmen became known to us. The transplanting of sensible skin flaps is also an entirely Indian method." The modern method of making pockets for the

[1] Neuberger, History of Medicine, vol. I, P. 54.

testicles under the Colles' fascia after the operation for scrotal tumour (elephantiasis) can be traced back to the age of Suśruta[1].

Thus we see that it can safely be affirmed that the medical science of Europe has been, both directly and indirectly, influenced by the Hindu System of Medicine.

---

[1] पादौ निरस्तमुष्कस्य जलेन प्रोक्ष्य चाचिणी।
प्रवेश्य तुन्नसेवन्या मुष्कौ सीव्येत्ततः परं॥

Suśruta Saṁhitā, IV. ii.

THE END.

APPENDIX.

I'Tsing[1] says :—

"The following are the eight sections of medical science. The first treats of all kinds of sores; the second, of acupuncture for any disease above the neck; the third, of the diseases of the body; the fourth, of demoniac disease; the fifth, of the Agada medicine (i.e. antidote); the sixth, of the diseases of children; the seventh, of the means of lengthening one's life; the eighth, of the methods of invigorating the legs and body. 'Sores' (1) are of two kinds, inward and outward. The disease above the neck (2) is all that is on the head *and face;* any disease lower down from the throat is called a 'bodily' disease (3). The 'Demoniac' (4) is the attack of evil spirits, and the 'Agada' (5, but 6 of Âyur-veda) is the medicine for counteracting poisons. By 'Children' (6, but 5 of Âyur-veda) is meant from the embrayo stage until after a boy's sixteenth year; 'lengthening life' (7) is to maintain the body so as to live long, while 'invigorating the legs *and body*' (8) means to keep the body and limbs strong and healthy. These eight arts formerly existed in eight books, but lately a man epitomized them and made them into one bundle. All physicians in the five parts of India practise according *to this book*, and any physician who is well versed in it never fails to live by the official pay. Therefore Indians greatly honour physicians and much esteem merchants, orf they do not injure life, and they give relief to others as well as benefit themselves. I made a successful study in medical

[1] A Record of Buddhist Practices, Ch. XXVII, pp. 127-8.

science, but as it is not my proper vocation I have finally given it up."

Dr. Takakusu[1] comments on the passage as follows :—

"The eight sections of Medicine which I-tsing describes are no doubt the eight divisions of the Âyur-veda. He mentions an epitomiser of these divisions, who seems to have been a famous physician and contemporary of I-tsing (or just before I-tsing). This epitomiser may be Susruta, who calls himself a disciple of Dhanvantari, one of the Nine Gems in the Court of Vikramâditya.

Prof. Wilson says in his Works, vol. iii, p. 274 :—

'The Âyur-veda, which originally consisted of one hundred sections, of a thousand stanzas each, was adapted to the limited faculties and life of man, by its distribution into eight subdivisions, the enumeration of which conveys to us an accurate idea of the subject of the Ars Medendi amongst the Hindus.

The eight divisions are as follows :—

I. *Sâ*lya (I-tsing's (1) cure of sores).

The art of extracting extraneous substances, grass, earth, bone, &c., accidentally introduced into the human body, and by analogy, the cure of all phlegmonoid tumours and abscesses. *Sa*lya means a dart or arrow.

II. *Sâ*lâkya (I-tsing's (2) art of acupuncture).

The treatment of external organic affections or diseases of the eyes, ears, nose, &c. It is derived from *Sa*lâkâ, "a thin and sharp instrument," and is borrowed from the generic name of the slender probes and needles used in operation on the parts affected.

[1] A Record of Buddhist Practices, Ch. XXVII, pp. 222-3.

The above two divisions constitute the surgery of modern schools.

III. Kâya-*k*ikitsâ (I-tsing's (3) treatment of the diseases of the body).

The application of the Ars Medendi (*K*ikitsâ) to the body in General (Kâya). It forms what we mean by the science of medicine.

IV. Bhûta-vidyâ (I-tsing's (4) treatment of demoniac disease).

The restoration of the faculties from a disorganised state induced by demoniacal possession. The art vanished before the diffusion of knowledge, but it formed a very important branch of medical practice through all the schools, Greek, Arabic, or European.

V. Kaumâra-bh*ri*tya (I-tsing's (6) treatment of the diseases of children).

The care of infancy, comprehending not only the management of children from their birth, but the treatment of irregular lactic secretion, and puerperal disorders in mothers and nurses.

VI. Agada (I-tsing's (5) Agada medicine).

The administration of antidotes—a subject which, as far as it rests upon scientific principles, is blended with our medicine and surgery.

VII. Râsâyana (I-tsing's (7) application of the means of lengthening one's life).

Chemistry, or more correctly alchemy as the chief end of the chemical combinations it describes, and which are mostly

metallurgic, is the discovery of the universal medicine—the elixir that was to render health permanent, and life perpetual.

VIII. Vâǵîkaraṇa (I-tsing's (8) methods of invigorating the legs and body).

Promotion of the increase of the human race—an illusory research, which, as well as the preceding, is not without its parallel in ancient and modern times.'

Prof. Wilson further remarks:—'We have, therefore, included in these branches all the real and fanciful pursuits of physicians of every time and place. Suśruta, however, confines his own work to the classes Śâlya and Śâlâkya or surgery; although, by an arrangement not uncommon with our own writers, he introduces occasionally the treatment of general diseases and the management of women and children when discussing those topics to which they bear relation.' (See Wilson's Works, vol. iii, p. 276.)"

List of Works Consulted.

Aetius.

Alexander Trallianus.

A l'histoire du Budh. Ind.

Analecta Medica—Dietz.

Analysis of a Tibetan work on Medicine (J. R. A. S.)—Csoma de Koros.

Anglo-Saxon Medicine—Payne.

Antiquities of Orissa—R. L. Mitra.

Antiquity of Hindu Medicine—Royle.

Archeological Survey of South India—Burgess.

Architecture of India—Ram Raz.

Aristophanes.

Arsnal de Chirug.

Assyria—Sayce.

Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā—Vāgbhaṭa II (Kunte's Ed.).

Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha—Vāgbhaṭa I.

Aśvavaidyaka—Jayadatta Suri.

Atharva Veda—Whitney's Translation.

Avenzoar.

Avicenna.

Āyurvedārthadipikā—Śivo Dasa Sena.

Bhāgavat—Vyāsa.

Bhānumatī—Cakradatta.

Bhāva Prakāśa—Bhāva Miśra.

Bhilsa Topes—Cunningham.

Bhoja Prabandha—Ballála (Jīvānanda Ed.).

Buddhist Jataka Stories—Rhys David.

Buddhist Records of the Western World—Beal.

Cakradatta—Cakradatta.

Cancer of the Breast—Velpeau.

Caraka Saṁhitā—{ Agnivesa. / Caraka. / Dṛḍhavala.

Caturvarga-Cintāmanī—Hemādrī.

Celsus.

Chirrug.—Albucasis.

Cikitsā Sāra Saṁgraha—Cakradatta.

Collection—Oribasius

Commentary on Manu Saṁhitā—Kallūka Bhaṭṭa.

Dawn of Civilization—Maspero.

De Chirurgiens Grecs.

De Med. Aegyptiorum—
Dhanurveda.
Discourse xi—Jones.
Discription of Hindusthan—Hamilton.
Domitan.
Early History of India—V. Smith.
Ed. Med. Essays—Simpson.
English Translation of Suśruta Saṁhitā—Dutt, Hoernle and Chattopādhya
Extant Works of Araeteus—Adams.
Flowering Plants—Pratt.
Fractures and Dislocations—Hamilton.
Galen.
Genuine Works of Hippocrate—Adams.
Geography—Strabbo.
Græco-Roman Surgical Instruments—Milne.
Gun Shot Injuries—Longmore.
Hārita Saṁhitā—Hārita.
Hastī-Āyurveda—Pālakāpya.
Hindu Medicine—Wise.
Hist. de la med.—Springel.
Historia Forcipum at Vecticum—Muld er
Historian's History of the World.
History of Aryan Medical Science—Thakore Saheb.
History of Hindu Chemistry—Rāy.
History of India—Elphinstone.
History of Medicine—Neuberger.
History of Philosophy—Enfield.
History of the Saracens—Amir Ali.
History of Sanskrit Literature—Weber.
India—Alberuni-(Translated by Sachau).
India in Greece—Pocock.
Indian Antiquities—Prinsep and Thomas.
Indian History—Arrian.
Indian Medicine—Jolly.
Indian Physicians at Bagdad—Wilson (J. R. A. S.).
Indian Tracts—Heynes.
Indo-Aryans—R. L. Mitra.
Industerial Arts of India—Birdwood.
Invasion of Alexander the Great—M'crindle.
Journal Asiatic Society Bengal, XXXIX 1870 and vol. XLII. 1835.
Journal Asiatique 1896.
Journal of Education, vol. VIII.
Journal Royal Asiatic Society, 1906-1907.
J. R. A. S. (Bombay Branch), vol. XX.

Juvenal.
Kaṭhopaniṣad.
Kauśika Sūtra—Bloomfield.
Laghumañjusā—Nageśa Bhaṭṭa.
Lalitvistāram—Mitra.
Lancet, 1845.
Latin Translation of Suśruta Saṁhitā—Hessler.
Mahābhārata—Vyāsa.
Mahānila Tantra.
Mahāvāgga—S. B. E.
Mahāvaṁśa.
Mālavikāgnimitra—Kālidāsa.
Māna Sāra.
Manu Saṁhitā—Manu (Jones Ed.)
Materia Medica of the Hindus—Dutt.
Medicine in Ancient India—Hoernle (J. R. A. S.)
Memoire Sur L'Inde—Reinaud.
Mesue.
Midwifery—Smellie.
Natural History—Pliny.
Nidāna—Mādhavakara.
Nīti Sāra—Kāmandakī (Bib. Ind.).
Nivandha Saṁgraha—Dallaṇa.
Obstetric Medicine and Surgery—Barnes.
Operations of General pra ctice—Corner and pinches.
Operative Surgery—Waring.
Ophthalmic Surgery—Carter.
Ophthalmology—Berry.
Oriental Magazine 1823—Wilson.
Origin and growth of the Healing Art—Bedroe.
Osteology—Hoernle.
Pāṇiṇi—Goldstucker.
Pāṇiṇi—Pāṇiṇi.
Paulus Ægineta—Adams.
Persius.
Pract.—Haly Abbas.
Priscianus.
Principle and Practice of Medicine—Francis.
Proceedings A. S. B. 1870.
Rāj Taraṅginī—Kalhaṇa (Steen's Ed).
Rāmāyaṇa—Vālmīki.
Rasa Ratna Samuccaya—Vāgbhaṭa III.
Rasendra Cintāmaṇi.
Recentes Deconvertes—Cordier.

Records of Buddhist Religion—I'Tsing (Takakusu's Ed.).
Rhases.
Report of Wellcome Research Laboratory, vol. III—Balfour.
Researches in Operative Midwifery—Playfair.
Review of the History of Medicine—Wise.
Ṛg Veda—Maxmüller and Wilson.
Rhinoplastic Operations—Keegan Paul.
Rock Inscriptions of Aśoka.
Saṅkara Vijaya.
Sāṅkhya and Likhita.
Sanskrit Literature—Macdonell.
Śārṅgadhara Paddhati—Śārṅgadhara.
Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha—Śārṅgadhara.
Sarva Darśana Saṁgraha—Mādhavācaryya.
Sarvāṅga Sundarī—Aruṇadatta.
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇas—S. B E.
Science and Art of Surgery—Erichsen.
Science of Language—Maxmüller.
Seutonius.
Siddhayoga—Vṛndamādhava.
Soranus.
Surgery—Billroth.
Surgical Emergencies—Swaine.
Suśruta Saṁhitā—Suśruta.
System of Medicine—Albutt and Payne.
System of Medicine—Osler and Mac Rae.
Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa.
Tanjore Catalogue—Burnell.
Tattva Candrikā—Śivodāsa.
Things Indian –Art Pinjrāpole—Crooke.
Tibetan System of Anatomy (J. R. A. S.)—Walsh.
Timeas—Plato.
Treatment of the Wounded in War—Esmarch.
Tree and Serpent Worship—Fergusson.
Upaskara—Śaṅkara Miśra.
Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī—Śrīkṛṣṇa Senmallik.
Vāgbhata L'Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā—Cordier.
Vaidyaka Savda Sindhu—Gupta.
Vaiśeṣika Darśana.
Vyākyā Kusumāvali—Śrīkānta Datta.
Vedārtha Prakāśa—Sāyaṇa.
Veterinary Art—White.
Viena Oriental Journal, Vol XI.
Viracintāmaṇi.

Vṛddha Śārṅgadhara.
Vṛhadāraṇyaka.
Vṛhat Saṁhitā—Ed. Kern.
Way of Buddha.
Yogaratnākara—Anandāsrama Series.
Zeit. Deat. Morg. Ges. T. LXIX.

INDEX.

ENGLISH.

A

PAGE.

Abdominal binder 181, 188
Abscess 233, 244, 249, 250, 251, 252, 254, 279, 291
Acacia Arabica 360
———catechu 39, 358
Acalypha Indica 360
Acanthobolus 207
Accessory Instruments 91, 94, 97, 175
———Sharp Instruments 282
Accipitar 179
Aconitum heterophylum 358
Acorus calamus 39, 41
Actual cautery 216,234
Actuarius 354
Adams xvi, 18, 146, 166, 169, 170, 201, 210, 217, 221, 224, 232, 258, 336
Ægle marmelos ... 38, 40, 268, 281, 353, 360
Æsculapius 156, 329, 342
Aetius 166, 169, 207, 217, 228, 230, 266, 336, 346
Agallochum 346, 355
Agate 343
Aggur 355
Agila 355
Ahmedabad 50
Ainsle 331
Akimona 355
Alberuni ... vii, 10, 16, 324, 334, 350, 352

Alberuni's India, Edited by Sachau, viii

PAGE.

Albucasis 108, 120, 123, 155, 166, 218, 223, 228, 230, 256, 260, 261, 266, 272, 277
Albutt 329
Alexander 62, 153, 344
Alexander Trallianus 116, 336
Alexandria 340
Alexandrian School 285
Alhagi maurorum 359
Ali Ibn Zain 10
Allium cepa 358
———Sativum 39
Aloes 343
Alpina Galangala 353
Alsaharavius 201
Amber 346, 355
Ambergrise 355
Ambrose Pare 272
Amir Ali 57
Ammomum grani paradisii 353
————elettarum 359
Amputation 231
Analecta Medica 354
Anæstheties ... ... iii, 59, 60
Anatomy 284, 285, 340
Ancient India 343
Ancylotomus 267
Andreas a Cruce 88
Andrographis Paniculata 360
Andropogon Muricatus 284
————nardus 359
————Schænanthus 41, 359
Angeissus Latifolia 360
Animal Hospital 50
Animism 337
Anthocephalous Kadamba 39, 292

	Page.
Antiquity of Hindu Medicine ...	23, 62, 330, 341
Antiseptic	144, 183
Ants	208, 209
Antyllus	154, 190, 191
——Band of	190
Aod Hindee Agallochum	355
Apolinose	210, 221
Apollo	342
Aquilia	355
Arabic Translation of Sanskrit Works ...	353
Arabic additions in Greek Meteria Medica ...	353
Arachia Hypogœa	360
Aræteus	60, 116, 146, 154, 254
Archigenes	164
Architecture of the Hindus	89
Areca catechu	354
Arrian, vii.	
Aristolchia Indica	360
Aristophanes	303
Army Surgeon, ii	
Aroma-pipes	85
Arrow	198, 199
——Extraction of	210, 213
Arrow-stem like rods	93
Arsenal de Chirrug	120
Artemesia Indica	353
Artemisia sternutatoria	359
Artery, delegation of	221
Ascites	122, 123, 242, 258
Assafœtida	41
Assyrian medicine	338, 341
Asthma	361
Astringent	221, 222
Astronomy	347, 348
Athens, v.	

	PAGE.
Atomic Theory	333
Atramentum	346
Atrocarpus	268
Aural Probe	219
——Polypus	278
Avenzoar	169
Avicenna ...	166, 167, 223, 260, 350, 353
Awl	95, 205, 262
Axe	95, 254
Azadirachta Indica	292, 360

B

Babylon	348
Bag ...	84, 85, 121, 129, 130, 133
———defects of	133
Bagdad	351
Bahram	350
Bairotsana	356
Balance	324
Balanites Rox	37
Baldness	253
Balena Cristata	272
Baliospermum montanum	219
Balsamodendron mukul	41
Bamboo 82, 83, 117, 125, 177, 194, 200, 278, 282, 283, 297, 309, 315, 325	
———forceps	106
———pipe	140
———tube	129
Banc de Hippocrate	89
Bandaging	281
Bandages	94, 176
————Kośa	177

PAGE.

Bandages Dāma 177
————Svastika 177
————Anuvellita 177
————Protolī 177
————Mandala 177
————Sthagikā 178
————Yamaka 178
————Khattvā 178
————Cina 178
————Vivandhana 178
————Vitāna 178
————Gophanā 178
————Pancāṅgi 179
————Mode of application of 179, 180
Banner bandage 178
Banyan Hospital 50
Barber 302
Barks, of trees ... 94, 177, 189, 193, 195, 283, 284
Bar-Magnet 213
Barmak 351, 352
Barmekides 10
Barnes 181, 202
Barnes' speculum 119
Baron de Sacy 349
Barzouyeh 350
Basdeo 350
Basella Rubra 292
BATH: ... ...
————Hot 323
————Ordinary 313
————Medical 313
————Vapour 322
Bathing 313, 314
Bdellium 346, 354
Beal ... ... vii, foot note 48, 299, 308, 317

PAGE.

Beal's Buddhist Records ... vii, foot note 1, 12, 48, 49, 299, 308, 317
Bear forceps 96, 102
Bed-pan 36, 317
Bedræ 344, 353
Bell-metal 64, 314, 125, 325
Bellows 328
Bench of Hippocrates 88
Beneras 3, 11, 32
Berberis lycium 359
Berlin 3
Berry 105
Betula Bhojpatra 39
Bhagalpur 16
Bhilsa Topes 319, 327, 346
Bibliotheca Indica, xv 17
Bignonia Snaveolens 310
Binder 188
Binding apparatus 185
Birdwood 344
Bivalve Speculum 119, 120
Bijnor 63
Bladder Sound 125
Blankets 177
Bleeding Lancet 248
Blood-stick 257
Bloomfield 4
Blow 201
Blue-Jay forceps 103
Blunt Instruments 90, 96, 99
———————Discription of 100
——hook 97, 166
——Probe 270
Board 86
Boil, ... 282 308

	PAGE.
Boil, Treatment of	182
Bone 67, 82, 83, 85, 117	
——Lever	172
Boots	308
Borax	354
Botanical Geography	334
Bower Mss.	357
Box for ointments	82
Branch of a tree 94, 210, 295	
Brass 123, 125, 300, 326, 328	
Bridle ring 210, 211	
British Museum	154
Broad Bandage	177
Bronze	82, 83
Brown	337
Brussels	174
Bucher-bird forceps	103
Bud shaped rods	93
Buddha Gurus	344
Buddhist Birth-stories	339
———Missionary	345
———Text Society	357
Buhler	3
Burgess	12
Burnell	5
Butea frondosa	359
———Gunmi	360
Buqrat	346

C

Cælius aurelianus	269
Cæsalpina Sappan	360

	Page.
Calopter	113
Calotropis Procera	360
———Gigantiæ	360
Cambogia Indica	360
Camper	258, 272
Cancer of the Breast	215
——— Knife	217, 218
Cane	177, 309
Canopy Bandage	178
Canula	122, 123, 260, 261
Caps	305
Carter	213
Cases of instruments	80
———ointment sticks	83
Cassia fistula	353
———obvata	353
——— lanceolata	359
Cataract	273
———Reclination of	63
——— operation of	273
——— Couching of	273, 274
———Binder	188
Cat forceps	102
Catheters	137
Caustic ...	94, 213, 214, 215, 219, 290
———Thread	175, 270, 271
Cautery ...	213, 216, 223, 281, 290, 357
Cedrus deodara	219
Celsus ...	60, 108, 110, 112, 117, 123, 154, 164, 165, 169, 174, 199, 210, 218, 223, 231, 246, 260, 266, 272, 273, 276, 349
Cephalandra Indica	268
Cephalotribe	165
Chaldæ	348

	Page.
Chamberlens	167
Chank-Shell	82, 83, 85, 117, 325
Chebulic Myrobolan	37, 41
Chemistry	333
Child's room	40
China root	32
Chinese Medicine	341
Ching-Che-Chun-Ching	341
Chintz	304
Chœnicides	231
Cinnamon	342, 355
Circular shaped instrument	96
——— Bandage	177
——— Cross Bandage	177
——— Chest Bandage	178
Circulation of Blood	332
Cissampelos Pariera	360
Citras medica	354
Citrus Aurantium	354, 360
Clement	340
Clement of Alexandria	345
Cloth 94, 177, 186, 189, 197, 304, 309, 310, 311, 321	
Cloth sieve	320
Clyster	86, 97, 281, 342
———urethral, rectal, vaginal	281
Cocculus cordifolias	220
Cold application	320
Colebrooke	346
Collection De Chirurgiens Grecs	88
Collyrium Probe	97, 160, 161
——— Pot	324, 325
Comb	303, 304
Continued sutures	209
Convolvulas	353
Cook	48

	Page.
Copper ...	63, 121, 123, 125, 160, 161, 162, 218, 273, 297, 300, 301, 314, 316, 325, 328
———Probe	272, 275
Coral	66, 325
Cordier	12, 24, 27
Corner	261
Cos	347
Coscinum fenestratum	360
Cotton	177
Craniotomy	239
Creepers	94, 196
Crescent shaped cautery	172
Cripple	196
Crocodile	99
———-forceps	102
Crooke	50
Crotalaria juncea	219
Crotchet	166, 195
Crow forceps	96, 103
Cruciform Instruments	91, 92, 100
Crystal	282, 286, 310, 316, 325
Csoma de Koros	356
Cucumis Sativus	280
———Colocynthis	359
——— Utillissimus	280
Cucurbita Pepo	39
Cucurbitula	342
Cullen	337
Cupping	148, 149, 150, 152
———-bow	386
———-Instrument	97
Cunningham	30, 50, 319, 327, 346
Curcuma Longa	291, 292
Cureton	353
Curlew forceps	103

PAGE.
Cythescomele, ... 158 160

D

Daimacus 344
Dallvaṇa's Commentary 12, 17, 57, 87
Dandruff 303
Dandy 356
Dar Atharvaveda 3
Darcheeni 355
Darsheeni 355
Davam Non-gah 356
Dawn of Civilization 341
Dead Fœtus; Extraction of 165
Decapitating hook 225
De Medicio 37
De Med. Ægyptiorum 153
Deedara 354
Deiudar 354
Delivery hook 97
Dengue 356
Depilation 303
Deodara 354
Deer forceps 96, 102
Dhatura alba 359
DHN 352
Diagnosis 202
Diary 36
Diaz 347
Dietz 345, 352, 353
Dilators 123, 125
———-urethral 123, 125

	Page.
Dilators, Rectal	124, 125
Diodorus Seculus	343
Dionysos	345
Diopter 113, 120, 342	
Diospyros Embryopteris	39
Dioscorides	59, 346
Director	173, 174
Discription of Hindusthan	50
Disenfection of rooms	147
Dislocation	194
————————of the neck	I94
————————lower jaw	201
Dispensaries, vii	34, 49, 57
Dissection	283
Dissection forceps	266
Distillation	334
Diudar	353
Division	280
Dolichos lebleb.	354
Dolichos Biflorus	37
————-Uniflorus	39
Domitan	303
Door-bed	87
Double nose-spoon	85
————-bag	85
————-bandage	178
————-edged knife	244
Dress	304, 305
Dressing forceps	106
Drinking Vessel	314
Dropper	327
Dropsy, 257	260
Dublin	195
Dung	216
Dunglison	179

PAGE.

E

Eagle Forceps 105, 202
Early History of India 6, 35, 49
Earth 312, 314, 316, 326, 328
Earth-worm like rod 93, 97
Earthen Ware 312
Ear scoop 107, 164
——Specillum 158, 164
——cleaner 163
——Perforator 263
Ebers Papyrus 340
Ebony 342, 343, 344, 346, 355
Edge 61, 69, 73
Edict of Asoka 47
Edinburg Medical Essays 240
Egypt 153, 344
Egyptian women 303
————Medicine 338
————Physicians 340
Electro-magnet 213
Elettarium Cardamomum 39
Elephantopus Scaber 291
Elphinstone, xiv 334, 361
Embelic Ribes 39, 360
Embryotome 230
Empyæma 241
Encircling bandage 177
Enfield 348
Enterocele 246
Epilation 105, 202
Erasistratos 285
Erichsen ... 106, 110, 149, 201, 213, 245
E. Robusta 360
Evacuation 281

	Page.
Excision	256, 266, 280
Execution	68
Extant Works of Ætius xvi	
Extraction	281
——————of foreign bodies from throat	109, 197 201
——————————— from ear	199
——————————— from eyes and teeth ...	213
——————of thorn	205
——————of bone	203, 210
——————of fish bone from throat	206. 297
——————————— dead fœtus	165, 226
——————————— nedles	238
——————————— soft structures ...	244
Extraction of stones from Urethra	265
——————— tartar from teeth	268
Ezion-Gaber	344

F

Fa Hian	49, 317
Falcon Forceps	103
Fan	308
Faufil	354
Fear	98, 212
Female catheter	137
Fergusson	159, 255, 324
Ferrula Assafætida	39
Field-hook	181
——-surgery	332
Ficus Bengalensis	220, 292
——Religiosa	292
Fihrist	9, 351
File	269
Fillet	167, 190

	PAGE.
Filfil	355
Filters	309, 319
Finger ... 83, 94, 161, 199, 200, 208, 291	
———-Knife	34, 94, 238
———guard	97 118
Firaṅga roga	28, 32
Fire	94, 290
Firroz Shaha	352
Fish-hook	93, 95, 264
Fish-bone, Extraction of	206
———forceps	207
Fissorius	256
Fistula-in-ano	271
Five-faced instrument	96
Five tailed bandage	179
Flax	210, 221
Fleam	256, 257
Fleet	6
Flower of Barley and Wheat	219
Fluxing	94, 212
Flügel	352
Fly-Brush	308
Fœtus-Hook	165
Forceps	92, 167
Fork-tailed forceps	103
Foreign origin of Hindu Medicine	348
Foot, sole of	94, 199, 200, 202
Foubert	272
Four-tailed bandage	178
Fracture-bed	86, 87, 88, 89
Fracture of nasal bone	117
———the lower extremity	193
———and dislocations	195
———of carpal and metatarsal bones ...	198
France	303

	PAGE.
Francis	335
Fufal	355
Funis	282
Fumigation	63, 144

G

Galanga	355
Galangal	353
Galen x, 60, 164, 171, 191. 218, 223, 231, 232, 269, 330	
Galzlaff	341
Gangrene	231
Gastroraphe	221
Gamma shaped cautery	160
Gauze	182
Genuine Works of Hippocrates xvi, 88, 113, 169, 174, 108	
Ghoom Monastery	357
Gingivitis	291
Giudo-de-Cauliaco	272
Glands	200, 236
Glass	125, 140, 282, 286, 316
Gloriosa Superba	39
Gmelina Arborea	292
Goad-like rods	93
Gold ... 64, 65, 66, 82, 83, 84, 117, 125, 135, 160, 161 177, 218, 273, 278, 299, 312, 314, 316, 325, 326.	
———Probe	218, 219
Goldstuker	1
Gossypium Herbaceum	360
Gouge	199
Gourd	...109, 150, 342
Granular lids	293
Greece	349

PAGE.

Greeco-Roman Surgical Instruments xvi, 146, 147, 153, 163, 167, 174, 199, 228, 230, 240, 246, 313.
Grewia Asiatica 37
Griffith 3
Grind stone 327
Gum-boil 242
Gunshot Injuries 200
Gut 98, 220, 221, 222
Gynocardia ordorata 360

H

Hahneman 338
Hair 94, 205, 206, 234, 304
Half-moon 96, 97
————probe 171
Half-moon Scissor 251
————Knife 251
Haly Abbas 120, 166, 219, 230, 260
Hammer 94, 96, 111, 198, 199, 256, 328
Hamilton 56, 195
Hand 90, 199, 200, 203
——Palm of 94, 321
Happiness 212
Hammurabi 339
————Laws of 339
Harp-string 221
Hartal 355
Harun-Al-Rasid 29, 351, 352
Haas 347
Hawk 103
Head dress 305
Headache 344

PAGE.

Herculaneum v
Hermetic Books 340
Hero 153
Heron forceps 96, 101, 103
Herodotus 191
Herophilus 269, 285
Hesepti 340
Hessler 17, 91, 104
Heyne 57, 326, 331
Hipparchus 348
Hippocrates ... ... 37, 88, 113, 123, 146, 159, 165, 169, 170, 173, 180, 210, 216, 217, 218, 221, 232, 239, 241, 258, 271, 272, 303, 347, 349.
Hipocratic oath 169, 345
Hipocratists 284, 285
Hindu system of Medicine xv
Hiram 344
Hirschberg 361
Hist. De. la medicine 232
Historia Forcepum-et-vecticun 166
Historian's, History of the World 340, 348
History of Aryan Medical Science ... xv. 23, 29, 316
History of Hindu Chemistry xv ... 6, 24, 28, 290
History of Indian Literature 346
Historv of philosophy 548
History of Medicine ... 209, 285, 286, 331, 347, 361
History of the Saraceens 57
Hiuen Tsiang 47, 299, 308
Hœrnle ... ... 5, 15, 16, 17, 19, 20, 21, 22, 24, 29, 204, 214, 216, 243, 251, 284, 331, 232.
Hœmorrahage 221
——————arrest of 221, 222, 223, 324
Hoffman 337
Hook ... 70, 96, 106, 165, 227, 229, 264, 266, 342
—— Lithotomy 97

	Page.
Hook, Delivery	97
——- Blunt	91
Hollow Instruments	91
——— Cylinder Bandage	177
Horace	343
Hordeum Vulgare	37, 41, 265
Homer	221, 340
Horn	66, 67, 82, 83, 96, 97, 109, 117, 119, 125, 148, 154, 161, 205, 325, 342.
Horse-hair	205, 208, 210
————Probang	207
Horse's Briddle	94, 210
Hospices	48
Hospitals	iv. vii, 8, 34
————requisities	295
————Merit of erecting ...	51, 52, 53, 54, 55
House of mercy	49
Hot Application	320
———Bath	323
Humoral Pathology	333
Huth George	23
Hyena forceps	102
Hydrocele	123, 205, 218, 242, 259, 261
Hydrophobia	342
Hydroctyle Asiatica	39
Hygienic appliances	295
Hygrophila spinosa	360
Hypodermic medication	235
————Syringe	235
Hwangati	341

I

Iatrum	37

	Page.
Ibn Abillsaibial	18
Iguana faced instrument	95
Imhotpu	341
Impellent	111
Impomea Haderacea	360
Impœa Turpethum	360
India in Greece	344
Indian Medicine	29
Indian Antiquary	6
Indian Antiquities	162
Indian Tracts	326
Indian Nelumbium	345
Indian Physicians in foreign court	351
Indian drugs in Greek Meteria Medica ...	353
Indian Rhubarb	354
Indigo	346
Indica	vii, 344
Indo-Aryan	62, 196, 304, 305, 308
Industrial arts of India	344
Inflammation	219
Instruments, Uses of	74
———Good and bad qualities of	73, 74
Interrupted suture	209
Intestinal obstruction, Operation for	209
Introduction	1
Iron ...	61, 91, 123, 160, 162, 177, 213, 218, 273, 278, 297, 315, 325, 326, 328.
I' Tsing ...	19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 297, 303, 312, 313, 317, 358.
Italy	303
Itch-cloth	182
Ivory ...	67, 82, 83, 117, 125, 204, 325, 343, 344.

J

Journal American Oriental Society	34

PAGE.

Jackal forceps 102
Jacobi 195
Jewet 195
Jolly 19, 21, 22, 29, 331
Jones, Sir William 192, 193, 329
Journal Asiatic Society of Bengal 6, 23, 30
Journal Royal Asiatic Society 6, 15, 19, 22
Joy 212
Jury mast 194
Justicia adhatoda 359
Jute 189
Juvenal 303

K

Kaimonis 355
Kali 355
Kalila and Dimna, Fables of 351
Karaka 9
Kashmir 3, 5
Kassiteros 355
Katiadion 254
Kern 348, 351
Khrisrong Dehutsan 356
Khoraba 355
Kih Futo 308
Kitchen 43
——Superintendent 43
Kitab-Shawshoon-al-Hindu 17
Kitab-i-Susrud 18
Kite Forceps 103
Knife-Shaped saws 231
—— double edged 249
—— Gold 278

PAGE.

Knife-Silver 278
——— Iron 278
———blades 177
Koningsberg 347
Kordofan 150, 217
Koshta 355
Koosrus 355
Kootha 355
Ktesios 344, 345, 349
Kust 355

L

L' Historia du Budh Ind 12
Lac 82, 83, 117, 123
Lama Śes-rale MGya Mtsho 357
Lanman 3
Lancet 260, 357
——Double-edged 242
——Straight 242
Lapis-Lazuli 314, 316, 325 354
Lhasa 357
Lead ... 63, 122, 123, 125, 160, 177, 218, 300
Leather 94, 177, 184, 185, 189
——— Bandage 184
——— Ligature 185
——— Shackle 185
——— Binder 188
——— Bags 188
——— Bag for the head 188
——— Band 189
——— Bottles, jar 191, 193
——— Belt 193
——— Shoe 307

	Page.
Leaves	253, 291, 292, 309, 315, 316
Lee	343
Leech	247, 282, 286, 350
——— Poisonous	287
——— Non-Poisonous	287, 288
——— Application of	288
——— Bite of	289
Leeds	213
Lemon	354
Lenticular	199
Leprous spot	247
Life of Atisa	30
Ligature	176, 205, 220, 223, 245
Linen	315
Linum usitatissimum	39, 359
Linseeds	41, 219
Lint	220, 321
Lion	101
—— Forceps	96, 101, 102
Liston	245
Lithotomy operation	86
——— Straps	185, 187
——— hook	97
——— Scoop	169
——— forceps	169
——— binder	342
——— crutch	187
Littlewood	213
Littré	88, 89, 169
Living fætus, Extraction of	167
Loadstone	94
Longmore	200
Long-mouthed-knife	233, 240
Lonsdale	343
Looking glass	304

	PAGE.
Louse	304
Luffa amara	359
Lucknow, Royal Library of	352
Lunatic	279
Lying-in-Room	38

M

MacCrindle	343
Macdonell	3, 81, 303, 330
Mace	353
Machaon	342
Macis	353
Magnet	212, 213, 333
Maison Dieu of Paris	49
Malabathrum	354
Malatroon	354
Mallet	199
Mallotus Philippiensis	359
Mandragora	60
Manetho	340
Mansil	355
Marsden	215
Marshall	213
Masern	356
Maspero	341
Massage	35, 333
Mussel-shell	326
Materia Medica of the Hindus	XV, 25
Maxmüller	10, 352
McClintock	167
Macrae	329
Measles	356
Measures	324
Medical bath	313

PAGE.

Medicina Aegyptiorum 303
Medicine 94, 219
Medicine glass 326
Medullary canal 263
Megasthenes, ... xiii, 35, 343, 345
Melia Azadirachta 354
Memphis 340
Mesue 277, 354
Mesua Ferrea 310
Metal plates 177
Michelia Champaka 310
Midwifery Forceps 166
Milne xvi, 120, 137, 144, 153, 163, 167, 199, 228, 246, 303.
Misy 355
Modioli 231
Mohamayuri Vidya-rajui 358
Moringa peterygosperma 219
Mortar 318, 319, 327
Moschos Moschifera 354
Mouth 94, 205, 264
Mulder 166
Muller 36, 68, 327
Musa Paradisiaca 354
Musée de Cinquantenaire 174
Mustard seed 39, 41, 219
Mylabris Phalerta 361
Myrica Sapida 359
Myrobalani 354
Myzon 266

N

Nævus 245
——— Needle 245, 246
Nail 94, 204, 291

	Page.
Nail-parer	94, 237
——-shaped cauteries...	159
——-shaped rod	98, 159
Nalanda	19
Nala reed	82, 83, 117
Naples Museum ...	V, 113, 120, 137, 154, 158
Nardostachys Jatamansi	41
Nasal-insufflator	116
—— polypus	252, 254, 278
—— -Speculum	115
Natural History	60
Naubehar	351
Navel cord	278
Nearchus	62, 344
Needle	94, 96, 99, 210, 243, 253, 262, 342
——— Curved	245
——— Cautery of gold	66
——— Four-ribbed	246
——— Golden	65
——— Half-curved	245
——— Round	246
——— Straight	245
——— Three-cornered	246
———-shaped Probe	271
Neiching	341
Nerium Odorum	219
Neuburger ...	209, 285, 286, 331, 339, 340, 347, 361
Neugebauer's speculum	119
New-born	202
Nooshirwan	349
Nose-spoon	84
Number of Surgical Instruments	90
Nurse	45, 202
Nutmeg	353
Nux moschata	353

	Page.
Nux Vomica	354, 361
Nyctanthes Arbor-tristis	291
Nymphæ Lotus	292
——— Stellata	310

O

Obstetric Medicine and Surgery	181, 202
Ocimum Basilicum	39
Odyssey	221
Officina chirrugica venetiis	88
Ointment box	84
——— pots	82
——— sticks	83, 84
Olivary probe	219
Onyx	342, 346
Opening	281
Operations	6, 8, 15, 24, 74, 76, 77, 78
Operations of General Practice	261
Operation-table	85
Operative Surgery	245
Ophelia augustifolia	359
Ophelia chiretta	359
Ophir	344
Ophthalmia	344
Ophthalmic Surgery	213
Opium	28, 33
Orange	354
Oribasius	116, 147, 154, 191, 217
Origin and Growth of the Healing Art ...	344
Ornamentation	69
Osler	329

PAGE.

Osprey forceps 103
Osteology, Hoernle 5, 15, 16, 19
———— of the Hindus ... ... xv, 241, 284
Owl forceps 103

P

Palm 199, 200
Panchanadapura 5
Panicum Dactylon 41
Panther forceps 102
Pao-d'aglia 355
Paracelsus 337
Paracentesis abdominis 97, 242, 257, 260
Parulis 242
Pasha, Sir R. 150
Pātaliputra 49
Patient, good qualities of 45
Paulus Ægineta 18, xvi, 105, 108, 110, 111, 112, 113, 117, 118, 120, 123, 149, 154, 159, 160, 163, 166, 170, 171, 172, 173, 187, 191, 199, 201, 205, 207, 217, 218, 219, 221, 223, 224, 228, 231, 232, 238, 242, 246, 354, 258, 260, 261, 266, 271, 277, 293, 336. 342, 346, 348, 349
Payne i
Peacock's feather 309
Pearl 310, 354
Pebble 94, 197
Pehlevi 349
Persia 349
Persius 303
Pestles 68, 172, 173, 318, 319, 327
Phaseolus mungo 37

PAGE.

Phaseolous Rox 37, 189
Philadelphous 345
Phlebotome 230, 241, 242
Phlebotomy 86, 186, 189, 190, 241, 259, 264
Phoska 356
Phyllanthus Emblica, ... 37
Physician, Qualities of a 52, 58
Picklock 91, 93, 106
Picrorhiza Kurroa 260
Pila 319
Piles 86, 205, 293
Pilum 319
Pilpay, Fables of 349
Pilpil 355
Pimpinella Anisum 359
Pincher 91, 92, 95, 103, 105, 234, 328
Pinches 261
Piñjrāpoles 50
Pinus 354
Pinus Deodara 39, 353
—— longifolia 219
Piper 355
—— betel 354, 360
—— cava 39
—— cubeba... 353
—— Longum 39
Pippul 355
Placenta 203
——— Removal of 203, 208
Plantago Ovata 360
Plantain 354
Plato 146, 341
Playfair 167, 209, 331
Plinthium Nileíí 88, 89, 342
Pliny 60

	Page.
Plumbago Zeylanicum	39, 219
Plums	37
Plum-seed-like rod	93
Pocca	356
Pocke	356
Pococke	344
Podalarius	342
Poison, Works on	351, 352
Poison extraction of	198
—— Stone	198
Polish	62
Polypus-scalpel	230, 278
Pompeii	V
Pomum somniferum	60
Pongamia glabra	39, 219, 359
Porcelain	312
Portable cases	80, 81, 82
Porus	62
Postural treatment	333
Potential cautery	213, 214
Potsherd	321
Poultice	219, 323
Practical Ophthalmology	105
Pricker	91, 155
Prickly tongue	229
Prinsep	162
Priscianus	157
Probang	207
Probe 95, 96, 99, 173. 215, 316, 235,	293
—— Aural	219
—— Blunt	270
—— Collyrium	160
—— Copper	272, 275
—— Gold	218, 219
—— Half-moon	171

PAGE.

Probe Hard 293
—— Jāmvovauṣṭha 159
—— Nail-shaped 159
—— Needle-shaped 271
—— Olivary 219
—— Sarapunkha-mukha 171
—— Sharp 269, 370
—— Snake's hood 168
—— Soft 293
—— Spoon-shaped 158, 215
—— Swab 157
—— Urethral 174
Probing 281
Prosper Alpinus 153, 303
Peterygium 116, 205, 226, 227, 228, 265, 266
Pterygotomes 228
Ptolemy 344, 345, 348
Ptychotis ajowan 359
Punjab 5
Punyaśālās ... ... vii, 48
Pupal 355
Pus basin 317
Puschmann 353
Pythagoras 344, 345, 348

Q

Quadrivalve speculum 120

R

Raisins 37
Rāmāyana 16
Ramosbotham 225
Ranula 229
Raphanus sativus 229

PAGE.

Rasendra Cintāmaṇi 67
Raspatoty 269
Rattan 264
Razor 81, 94, 155, 233, 234, 235, 236, 300, 301
Recentes Decouvertes 12
Records of Buddhist Practices 19
Records of Buddhist Religion 297
Rectal clyster 125
——— injections 125
——— speculum 113
Reinaud 352
Relation of Hindu and Arabic medicine ... 350
——— of Hindu and Greek medicine ... 343, 347
——— of Sanskrit and Persian medical works ... 349
Researches on Operative Midwifery ... 167
Rest-house 48
Retz 130
Review of the History of Medicine ... 330
Rgyud Bzhi 356
Rhabarburnum 354
Rhazes 9, 18, 23, 123, 166. 219, 221, 229, 260, 261, 277, 290, 350.
Rheims 163
Rhinoplastic operation 118
Rhys David 339
Ricinus communis 291, 359
Ring knife 240, 342
—— Scalpel 239
Rods 80, 91, 93, 97, 155, 215
Rogerius 272
Rolleston 329
Rope 177
Roth 3
Round headed knife 94, 225
Royle, xv, 23, 62, 330, 331, 341, 347, 352, 353, 354

PAGE.

Rubia Cordifoliatum 130
Ruby 282, 286
Rufus 342
Ryder 35

S

Saccharam Munja 283
Sachau, ... 10,324,350,351,353
Sacred Bean 345
Sacred Books of the East 4,11,13
Sadej 354
Sahabuddin 269
Sais 341
Saju 355
Sajiimattee 355
Sajiloon 355
Sajimen 355
Sakhya 356
Sakkara 355
Salvinia cucullata 359
Sand 321
Sandals 308
Sanskrit Literature 3,81,303,330
Santal 355
——— Album 359
——— Flavum 359
——— Rubrum 355
Saraca Indica 41
Sarad 350
Saradaprasad Banerjee 357
Saratchandra Das 357
Sarcostemna brevistigma 220
Satapatha Brahmana 15

	Page.
Saunaka School	3
Saussurea Lappa	39
Saw	73,94,96,230,231,342
Sayce	341
Sayre	194
Scales	324
Scammum Hippocratis	88,342
Scarac	350
Scarificator	238
Scarifying	253,254,256,279,281,291
Schultet	120
Sciatica	236
Science and Art of Surgery	106,110,149,201,213,245
Science of Language	10,353
Scindaspus Officinalis	39
Scirac	350
Scissors	234,249,250
——— Half-moon faced	251
Scoop	278
Scottish National Museum	154
Scraping	300
Scratching	253,293
Scrivonius Largus	158
Scrotal tumour	234,362
Sebaceous Cysts	242
Sel	354
Semecarpus Anacardium	39
Semti	340
Senna	353
Senta	340
Serapion	9,260,350,354
Sesame	37, 219
Sesamum Indicum	37, 361
Seutonius	303
Sewing	281

PAGE.

Shampooers 35
Shandana 355
Sharp Hook 264,266
—— Instruments 90,94,98,225
———— Mode of holding 279
—— Probe 269
Shaving 300,303
Shells of fruit 82,117
Shimgveez 355
Shoes 306,307
—— Leather 307
—— Wooden 307
Shorea Robusta 359
Short-mouthed knife 233,240
Shoulder, Dislocation of 173
———— strap 84,85
Sieves 319
Silk 98,177,304
Silver ... 64,65,66,82,83,84,117,123,125,160,161, 278,299,312,314,315,325,326,328
Simnoi 345
Simpson 239
Sindaxar 23
Sindh 25
Single-edged Knife 94,243
Sinus 270,293,294
Skins 192
Sling Bandage 178
Smellie, ... 167
Smoking 143,144
Snake-bite 150,185,199,237,344
—— charmers 198
—— Works on 351
—— hood like Rods 93,97,168
Snell 213

	Page.
Soda	355
Sodepore	50
Solanum Nigrum	292
Solomon	344
Solon	341
Soma	66, 68
Soranus	120, 147, 166, 229
Sorrow	212
Soza	355
Spathomele	157, 158
Spatula Probe	157
Specillum	163, 269, 272
——— Rectal	97
——— Vaginal	97
Spittle	94, 211
Spittoons	36, 317
Splints	193, 195, 196, 283
Spongio Somnifera	60
Spoon	317, 328
——— gold	16, 65, 92
——— shaped knife	168
——— shaped Probe	158, 160, 215
Sprengel	232
St. Andrews	239
Stahl, George Ernest	337
Staphyloma	246
Steel	61, 161
——— yard	324
Stein	24
Stems	293
St. Germain-en-Laye	163
Sticks	306
Still-born	198, 308
Stone 68, 94, 128, 160, 162, 197, 198, 310, 316, 325, 327	
——— Extraction of	168

PAGE.

Stool, Operation— 86
Strabo ... ... xiv 343, 344
Strainer 312, 319
Stricture dilators 125
Strychnos Nux Vomica 359
——— Potatorum 359
Studies in the Medicine of Ancient India ... 5
Styptics 223
Substitutes for cutting instruments ... 282
Sucking-horn 357
Suction 149
——— Apparatus 204
Sugar 204, 355
Sukkur 355
Sulphuret of Arsenic 355
Sundul 355
Supporter Bandage 178
Suppuration 98, 262
Suqrat 347
Surat 50
Surgical Emergencies 207
——— Instruments 14
——— Operations... 14
——— operations, practical training of ... 280
Suspension Apparatus 194
Suture 205, 243
——— Sling-like 209
——— varieties of 209
——— Material 208
Swabs 93
——— Probes 157
Swain 207
Sweet cane of Scripture 346
Sword-shaped cautery 218

	PAGE.
Sylvain	6
Sylvius	337
Symon Set	346
Syphilis	32
System of Medicine	329

T

Tabosheer	354
Tail-Bandage	177
Takakusu	19
Tamar Hind	356
Tamarinds	356
Tamarindus Indica	354
Tambapani	47
Tamuarin	356
Tangore Catalogue	5
Tanjur	23
Tapping	281
Tārakeśvar	ix
Tashi Lama	357
Tatanagum	355
Tectonia Grandis	291
Tembul	354
Tempering	70
Temple-Sleep	ix
Tenaculum	266
Tendrils	177, 189
Tents	117, 175, 181, 220, 322
Terminalia Bellerica	37
———— Chebula	130, 361
Teta	340
The Authorship of Caraka Saṁhita	5
The Invasion of Alexander the Great ...	xiv

PAGE.

Theodoric 60
Theophrastus 343
Things Indian 50
Thomas 162
Thot 340
Thread 94, 175
Three faced 95
Throat Speculum 96, 109
Thucydides vi
Tibet 356
Tibetan Block Prints 357
——— Surgical Instruments 356
Tiger Forceps 102
Tiger's Claws 99
Timæus 341
Time 98
Tin 63, 122, 343
Tincal 355
Tinkar 355
Tinospora Cordifolia 359
Tob Chini 32
Tongue 94, 203
——— Scraper 299, 300
Tonsil 254, 265, 266
——— Operation of 226
Tooth 94, 216, 268
——— False 269
——— Loose 268, 294
——— Wisdom 268
——— Ache 299
——— Brush 207, 295, 296, 299
——— Cleaner 298
——— Elevator 170
——— Extraction 171, 268, 269
——— Extractor 97

PAGE.

Tooth Pick 95, 297, 299
—— Powder 295
—— scaler 70, 204, 267
—— wood 297
Tootum 355
Toryne 254
Tosorthros 340
Toy Cart 35
Traction Hook 165
Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society ... 346
Treatise on Midwifery 167
Tree and Serpent Worship ... 159, 235, 324
Trepan 232
Trephine 231, 232
Trichiasis, ... 66, 105, 218, 228, 246
Trifolia 354
Trivalve Speculum 120
Trocar 261
Tryphala parva 354
Tryphalla 354
Tsae-urh 298
Tsâng-urh 298
Tube 121, 122, 129, 131, 132
—— Defects of 133, 134
Tubular Instruments 91, 93, 96, 108
———— for Ascites 122
———— of Cupping 148
———— for Fistula-in-Ano. ... 114
———— for Fumigations ... 140
———— for Hydrocele 123
———— for Inhalations 140
———— for Injections in the Rectum 125
———— for Inspection of Arrows ... 111
———— for Nose 115

PAGE.

Tubular Instruments for Piles 112
——————— for Rectal Stricture ... 124
——————— for Urethra 135
——————— for Urethral Stricture ... 123
——————— for Uterus 138
——————— for Vagina 138
——————— for Wounds 121
Tuj 354
Tumbol 355
Tunbol 355
Turbans 305
Turpeth 354
Turtullian 240
Tutenagum 355
Tutia 355
Tuthy 355
Twine 94, 176
Typha 254

U

Umbrellas 306
Urethral Probe 136, 174
——— Syringe 138
——— Tubes 135
Urginea Indica, ... 361
——— Jambolana 38
Urinal 36, 317
Uterine Clysters 138
——— Medication, ... 139
——— Tube 135, 138, 139
Uvula 265

V

Vagbhata et L'Astangahrdaya Saṁhita ... 24, 27

	PAGE.
Vaginal Clyster	138
Vaginal Speculum	97, 119, 120, 342
——— Tubes	135, 138
Valeriana Hardwicki	360
Vānumati	17, 31
Vapour-bath	68, 182, 322
Variola	356
Vessels, Puncturing of	255, 264
Vasti-yantra	36, 67, 86
Vata-Rakta	9
Vegetius	260
Velpeau	215
Venesection	256
Verole	356
Veterinary Art	257, 351, 352
Virgil	343
Visa-Vaidya	111, 45
Vitis Vinifera	37
Vṛddha Trayi	19, 21
Vullurs	17
Vulsellum	266
Vulture Forceps	103

W

Walsh	356
Waring	245
Warts	242
Watanbe	357
Water, cooling of	311
Water, Impure	312
——— Purification of	310

PAGE.

Water, Scented 314
——— Seasonable 313
——— Touched 312, 313
——— dipper 312
——— Vessel 312
——— Vessel, Stand for 311
Way of Buddha 309, 312
Weber 346, 348, 353
Weighing Scales 36
Weights 324
Wellcome Research Laboratory, Report of ... 150, 217
Wheat 219
Whetstones 36, 80
Whisker 302
White 257
Whitney 3, 137
Willi 337
Wilson, ... V, 10, 64, 320, 331, 353
Winding suture 209
Wine 59
Wise ... ... XV, 254, 330, 347
Withania Somnifera 220
Wolf Forceps 102
Woman-milk 275
Wood 68, 82, 83, 117, 123, 125, 140, 177, 397, 300, 307, 315, 316, 328
Wooden Hand 196
——— Splints 196
Woollen Threads 210
Wounds 291, 292
——— Fumigation 97, 122, 144
——— Syringe 99, 121, 281
Wrightia Antidysenterica 360
Wustendeld 353
Wuz 355

PAGE.

X

Xarac 350, 354

Y

Yolk's Tail 309

Z

Zanik 352
Zarnach 355
Zeit. deut 23
Zingiber 355
Zinzabill 355
Zizyphus Jujube 37
Zoology 334

INDEX.

SANSKRIT.

A

	PAGE.
Abāṅmukha	99
Abhayā	37
Abnus	355
A. Caṭṭopādhyāy	17
A. C. Kaviratna	9, 17
Ācūṣaṇa	75, 76
Adhamulla	32
Adhijihvā	229
Adhyarddhadhāra	98, 243
Agada	2
Agastya	51, 192
Agni	94, 215
Agnidamani	359
Agnika	[illegible]
Agniveśa	4, 7, 22, 25, 26
Agniveśatantra	130
Agra-bakra	168
Aguru	355
Āharaṇa	75, 76, 77
Airvvārukamukha	92, 103
Ajakarṇa	359
Ajamoda	359
Ākāsa-gotta	xi
Alābu	97
Alābu-Yantra	150, 342
Alagarddā	288

	PAGE.
Amarāvatī	306
Ambara	355
Ambashthai	360
Āmlakī	37
Amoghavajra	358
Amṛta	220
Anaka	96
Āñcana	75
Aṅguli	94, 199
———Śastra	98, 238, 342
———Yantra	342
Aṅkuśa	165, 328, 342
——— Cautery	160
———vadana	93
Antarmukha	78, 95, 98, 250, 251
Antarvalkala	193
Antiochus	47
Anuśastra	282
Anuvellita	177
Anuyantra	98
Ārā ...	95, 98, 205, 262, 263, 279
Archæological Survey of South India ...	12, 30
Arddhacandra	96, 99, 251
———-———mukha Śalā	171
Arddhacandrānana	98, 251
Arddhadhāra	77, 94, 243
Arddhendu	98
Arhats	345
Arjuna	292
Arka	360
Arkamūla	360
Aruṇadatta	24, 27, 237
Aśadhara Sallaxana	28
Āsava	39
Aśmabhālam	318

PAGE.

Aśmarī 97
Aśoka ... ... iv, 8, 34, 41, 47, 49, 345
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya Saṁhitā 18, 19, 23, 25, 26, 67, 69, 73, 76, 79, 81, 86, 88, 92, 98, 101, 104, 105, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 117, 118, 119, 121, 122, 127, 136, 141, 143, 148, 151, 156, 157, 159, 160, 163, 165, 168, 175, 186, 187, 189, 190, 195, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 203, 204, 206, 208, 211, 214, 217, 222, 225, 230, 232, 237, 239, 240, 244, 247, 250, 251, 253, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 262, 264, 265, 267, 270, 271, 272, 276, 278, 280, 290, 333
Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdayatīkā 28
Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha 18, 23, 24
Aṣṭhīlaśma 94, 197
Asutosh Mookerjee, Hon'ble Justice Sir ... xvi
Āśvabala 292
Aśvagandhā 220
Aśvakaṭaka 94, 210
Asvavaidyaka 114, 130, 158, 235, 241, 242, 258, 266, 316, 334
Aśvins 4, 12, 341
Atarusha 359
Atasi 39, 359
Atharva Veda ... 1, 3, 15, 39, 61, 137, 303, 304
Āṭī 249
Āṭīmukha 78, 95, 249
Āṭīvadana 98
Ativisha 358
Ātreya, Punarvasu 4, 15, 18, 21, 130
Atri 353
Aupadhenava 17
Aurabhra 17
Avabhanjanamukha 92, 103
Avantī 308
Ayaskānta 94, 212
Āyurveda 1, 13, 22, 342
Āyurvedārthadīpikā 7

PAGE.

B

Bael Fruit 281
Bamśabidala 106
Bakam 360
Bandhana 74, 76
Baptista 60
Barley 41
Behicharlal Nathuram 27
Bhāba Prakāśa 32, 33, 99, 128, 138, 194, 195, 200, 296, 300, 301, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 312, 313, 316, 323, 325, 332
Bhāgavat 16
Bhallātaka 39
Bhāndarkar 6
Bhaṅga 76
Bhañjana 75
Bhānumatī 107
Bharadvāja 4
Bhāsamukha 92
Bhāsamukha Forceps 103
Bhāskara 17
Bhāvamiśra v, xiv 22, 99, 128, 193, 194, 195, 200, 295, 299, 300, 301, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 312, 313, 323, 324
Bhedana 77, 80
Bhela 4, 5, 25
Bheṣaja 94, 219
Bhīṣma ii
Bhoja 60, 230, 231, 232, 248, 249, 254, 257, 262, 264
Bhoja Prabandha ... ... iii, 60, 231
Bhṛṅgarājamukha 92, 103
Bhūrjja 39
Bhūtvidyâ 2
Bihat 63, 162
Bijnor 162

PAGE.

Bīrājacaran Gupta 5
B. L. Sen 5, 27
Brahmā 1, 4, 12, 22, 301
Bramhadeva 17
Brāhmaṇas 9
Bṛsavadhvaja 8
Bucanaka 360
Buddha ... ... ii, XI, 46, 182, 308
Buddhadāsa 49, 50
Buddhaghosha 327

C

Cacyn-nama 355
Cakradatta 29, 30, 31, 62, 66, 67, 124, 126, 128, 141, 143, 161, 162, 164, 173, 175, 176, 183, 185, 189, 190, 200, 201, 218, 222, 227, 228, 229, 245, 248, 253, 255, 258, 323, 327
Cakradhāra 243
Cakrākṛti 96
Cakrapāṇi 41, 125, 164, 204, 259, 265, 271, 282, 292, 350
Cakrapāṇidatta 7, 9, 10, 17, 29, 30, 31, 62, 63, 67, 104, 107, 115, 149, 183
Cakratattwadīpikā 31
Cāla 76
Cālana 75
Chalmugra 360
Cāmara 308
Campaka 310
Candana 354, 355, 359
Candracandana 28
Candra Gupta 35, 40, 344
Candrakumar Das Kavibhusan 31
Candrāte 16
Candravarga 99

PAGE.

Canouge 350

Caraka, x, 4, 5, 7, 7, 10, 11, 18, 20, 21, 23, 25, 26, 30. 31, 34, 38, 59, 65, 67, 78, 114, 125, 129, 139, 140, 142, 143, 144, 146, 147, 149, 152, 166, 174, 176, 179, 181, 197, 201, 202, 203, 205, 207. 209, 236, 246, 252, 269, 278, 248, 292, 293, 296, 300, 304, 305, 206, 316, 318, 351, 354

——— Saṁhitā 2, 4, 7, 8, 9, 31, 34, 40, 41, 59, 65, 67, 78, 86, 115, 126, 130, 133, 136, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 146, 147, 149, 151, 152, 174, 176, 179, 201, 203, 205, 207, 209, 217, 237, 247, 269, 292, 293, 300, 301, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 316, 318, 320

——— Tattva-Pradīpikā 10

Carma 94, 183

Cāsamukha 92, 103

Cashmere 5, 356

Caturvarga Cintāmaṇi 56

Cavya 39

Chatra 306

Chedana 77, 79

China 358

Chīna 178

Cikitsā Sāra Saṁgraha 30, 31

Cillimukha 92, 103

Ciravilva 39, 219

Citraka 39, 219

Classification of Instruments 90

D

Dahana 80, 177, 221

Dākodara 97, 122

Dakṣa 4, 12, 341

Dallaṇācāryya 12, 17, 57, 107, 211, 225, 230, 233, 237, 243, 249

Dāmodara 98, 31

PAGE.

Danga 356
Danta 94, 204
Danta-kāṣṭha 297
———lekhana 98, 267
———śaṅku 70, 71, 95, 267
Dāntī 219
Dāraṇa 75
Dārila 4
Dāruharidrā 359, 360
Darvvī 214, 328, 360
Daśaratha 16
Datta 17, 25, 219, 251, 331
Dvārusita 355
Devadāru 319, 353, 354
Dhāi 218, 282
Dhammapada 84
Dhanian 352
Dhanurveda 62
Dhanvantari... ... ... 11, 12, 14, 352
Dhar 232
Dhattura 359, 361
Dhatushena 50
Dīrghavaktra 233, 240
Divodāsa 11
Dravasveda 323
Dṛḍhavala ... 5, 8, 19, 130, 132, 141, 182, 185, 326
Droṇī 323
Dṛti 192
Dvīpimukha 92, 102
Dvitāla 93, 96
Dyatūha 99

E

Ekatāla 93, 96
Elā 39, 359

PAGE.

Enīpada 269
Eraṇḍa 291, 359
Ervārūka 280
Eṣaṇa 76, 77, 79
Eṣaṇī 77, 78, 79, 80, 95, 98, 99, 173, 174, 269, 273, 279

F

Faṇībaktra 97

G

Gaṇḍūpadamukha 93, 97, 98
Ganeśkṛṣṇa Garde 27
Ganeś Śastré Tartevaidya 27
Gaṅgādhar Kaviratna 9, 10, 20
Garbhaśaṅku 97, 165
Gayadāsa 17, 195
Ghatīyantra 97, 151
Gocandana 288
Godhāmukha 95, 99
Goji 282, 291, 292
Golomi 41
Gomedaka 310
Gophaṇā 178
Gophaṇikā 209
Grahaṇa 80
Gṛdhramukha 92, 95, 103
Gṛdhrapada 96
Guḍuci 292, 359
Guggula 41, 354
Gupta 9

H

	Page.
Haricandra	10
Haridrā	291, 292
Harikṛṣṇa Sen Mallik	28
Harināth Viśārada	10
Harīta	4, 5, 25, 90, 93, 96, 129, 231, 323
Haritakī	130, 354, 361
Haritāla	55
Hārīta Saṁhitā	104, 251, 283, 323
Harṣa	94, 212
Har acarita	12
Hastipippalī	39
Hastyāūrveda	15, 99, 130
Hata	328
Hayamāraka...	219
Hemādri	28, 54
Hiṅgu	39
Hirendranāth Mukhopādhāya	XX
Hrasvavaktra	233, 240
Hṛdayabodhikā	38

I

Indra	4, 12
Indravāruṇī	359
Indrayava	360
Indrāyudha	288
Inguda	39, 40
Ispaghula	360

J

Jalavardhanī	249
Jambul	38

	PAGE.
Jāmvavavadana	93
Jāmvovouṣṭha	97, 99, 159, 217, 234
Jānumatrāsana	86
Jaṭila	41
Jatukarṇa	4
Javamukhī	245
——Śalākā	275
Jayacandra	269
Jayadatta Sūri	114, 158, 235
Jejjaṭācāryya	17
Jīvaka	II, XIII, 231
Jīvānanda Vidyāsāgara	9, 17, 21, 27, 33
Jihvā	94, 203
——kaṇṭaka	229
——nirlekhana	299
Jonivraṇekṣaṇa	119, 120
Jośodānandana Sarkār	9, 28, 31
Jūthikā	263

K

Kadalī	354
Kadamba	39, 292
Kākamācī	292
Kākamukha	92, 103
Kākolyādi	220
Kālādānā	360
Kalasī	311, 322
Kalodaka	313
Kāmadeva	28
Kāmandikya Nītisāra	35, 45, 198
Kanāda	333
Kānakya	352

	PAGE.
Kaniṣka	6, 16
Kaṅka	353
Kankab	352
Kaṅkamukha	92, 99, 101, 103
Kaṅkapada	96
Kaṅkapatra	96
Kaṅkāyaṇa	353
Kaṇṭhaśalyāvalokiṅī	96, 109
Kapāṭa-śayana	87, 342
Kapila	288
Karanja	359
Karapatra ...	73, 77, 94, 96, 98, 230, 279, 342
Karapatraka	96
Karavīrakapatraka	96
Karkataka	99
Karmāra	264
Karṇa-śodhana	163
Karṇa-vedhanī	98, 253
Kārpāsa	350
Kartarī	98, 250
Karvura	288
Kṣārapāṇi	4
Kāsī	347
Kaśmarīpatra	292
Kashmir	313
Kassis	355
Katakaphala	310
Katfala	359
Kaṭhopaniṣada	301
Kapillaka	359
Katuka	361
Katukoshtaki	359
Katurina	359
Kātyāyaṇa	16
Kaumārabhṛtya	2

	Page.
Kauśika Sūtra	4
Kāya Cikitsā	2
K. C. Sen	5, 27, 33
Kerala Putra	47
Keśaprasādhanī	303
Keśava	4
Khadira	354, 358, 30
Khaja	S0, 98, 253
Khal	68, 158, 180, 327
Khallamukha	93
Khar	355
Khāraṇāda	128, 129
Kharjjūrapatrika	99
Khatvā	178
Kikitsa-Vidya	314
Kilima	39
Kirata	359, 360
Kokilāk a	360
Kolāsthidalumukha	93, 97
Kolinjana	355
Krauñcamukha	02, 103
Kṛṣṇa	8, 287
Kṣāra	94, 213
Kṣura	234, 235
Kubara	355
Kulinjana	353
Kuliśamukha	99
Kullattha	37
Kumuda	292
Kunte	24, 27
Kuraramukha	92, 103
Kuravaka	272
Kuravakaśalā	98
Kūrcca	98, 215, 252, 253
Kuśa	177, 195

PAGE.

Kuśapatra ... 70, 78, 94, 98, 99, 247, 248, 249
Kussas 355
Kuṣṭha 39, 355
Kuṭhāra 254, 256
Kuṭharikā ... 70, 77, 95, 96, 98, 254, 256, 279
Kuṭṭana 79, 99

L

Laghumañjuṣā 7
Lakṣmī 8
Lāngoli 39
Laśuna 39
Latā 94, 195
Laṭaka Miśra 32
Lekhana 77, 79
Likhita 193
Lodhravalī 30
Lohārṇava 62
Louhamāraṇa-Vidhi 62

M

Mādhava 17, 19, 29, 30, 350
Mādhavācāryya 29
Madhusūdan Gupta 17
Mahābhārata, ... i, ii 15, 16
Mahānīlatantra ix
Mahāvaṁśa 50
Maheśvara 10
Mahosadha 338
Maireya 39
Makaraka 99

PAGE.

Makaramukha 102
Makha-deva jataka 105
Mālatipuṣpavṛntāgra 93
Mālavikāgnimitra iii
Mallaka Saṁputa 143
Mals 277
Mānadaṇda 324
Maṇdala 177
Maṇdalāgra 70, 77, 79, 94, 98, 99, 165, 225, 226, 227, 228, 230, 239, 260, 279
Maṇdukparṇī 39
Mañji ṭhā 130
Manka 352
Mankba 352
Mānosāra 39
Manaśilā 355
Manthana 80
Manusaṁhitā ... iii, iv, viii, 65, 191, 192, 193, 353
Mārga Viśodhana 75, 76
Mārjāramukha 92, 102
Māṣa 37, 189
Maṣaka 191
Māsha 219
Masūradalabaktra 97
Masūradalamukha 93
Masurikā 356
Mātuluṅga 354
Mahāvagga, ii, xi, 45, 46, 82, 116, 182, 231, 308, 316, 319, 320, 327
Mṛganābhi 354
Mucuṇdī 106
Mucuṭī 69, 96, 105, 106
Mudga 37
Mudgara 94, 96, 198
Mudrikā 77, 94, 165, 238, 342

PAGE.

Mukha 94, 205
Muktābali 31
Muktabarṣi 360
Mukulāgra 93
Mulaka 219
Muñja 283
Muñjavalaya 311
Muṣala 172, 318
Mūṣika 288

N

Nāḍī 91, 93, 96, 108
Nāgadamani 353
Nāgakeśara 310
Nagara 39
Nāgaraṅga 354, 360
Nāgārjūna 16, 61, 298
Nagorekote 352
Nāgeśa Bhaṭṭa 7
Nakha 94, 204
Nakhaśastra 70, 77, 79, 94, 98, 237
Nālī 264
Nāmana 76
Nandimukhamukha 92, 99, 103
Nandipurāṇa 52
Nārāyaṇa 30
Natthukaraṇī 84, 116
Nava Vihara 351
Nayapala 30
Nibandha Saṅgraha 17, 107, 148, 151, 196, 211, 225, 230, 233, 237, 243, 247, 249, 250, 255, 257, 264, 263, 264, 265, 267
Nidāna 29, 30

	PAGE.
Nimba	354, 360, 292
Nimi	14
Nirghātana	74, 76
Nirmālaya	310
Nītisāra	35, 45, 198
Nāya	9
Nāya Candrikā	17

O

Oṣadhadhāraka	338

P

Pācana	221
Padārthacandrikā	28
Padatala	94
Paippalada	3
Paitāmoha Sidhyānta	348
Pālakāpya 16, 90, 99, 102, 122, 130, 229, 235, 238, 241, 246, 247, 248, 256, 261, 264, 266, 269, 273, 334	
Palasha	359
Pañcabaktra	96
Pañcamukha	110
Pañcaṅgī	179
Pañcasidhantica	347
Pāṇimantha	205, 262
Paṇini	7, 8
Paṇipadatala	199
Paṇitala	94
Pañjikā	17
Paramaka	351
Parāśara	4

	Page.
Parisrāvana	312
Paruṣa	37
Pāśa	187
Paṭala	310
Paṭalī	292
Pātaliputra	345
Pāṭana	78, 79
Patañga	360
Patañjali	7, 10, 62
Pāṭhya	28
Paṭṭa	94, 176
Paulisa	348
Pavitra	320
Phalaka	310
Phalavarti	175
Pīḍana	75, 76
Pilindava*kkha*	84
Piṅgala	288
Pipe	85
Pippali	39, 216, 292, 355
Piṣana paṭa	327
Piṣṣana-śilā	327
Piyadasi	47
Palāṇḍu	358
Pouṣkalāvata	17
Pradhamana	76
Pradīpa	28
Prakṣālaṇa	76
Pramārjana	76
Pratuda	279
Pravāhaṇa	94, 211
Pracchāna	79
Pramārjana	93
Pratoli	177
Prubhurām Jībanarām	17

	Page.
Pundarikamukhī	288
Pūraṇa	74, 76
Puṣpanetra	135, 136
Pyārimohan Sengupta	31

R

Rājavallabha	309
Rajju	94, 175
Rājṣāḍava	316
Rājataraṅginī	16, 24
Rāma	11, 16
Ramānāth Vaidya	28
Rampaka	99, 238
Ram Raz	39
Rasīarṇava	28
Rasāyana	2
Rasik Lāl Gupta	33
Ray 6, 24, 28, 290, 350	
Ṛgveda 1, 2, 61, 62, 64, 68, 80, 191, 192, 301, 318, 319, 338	
Ṛjugranthi	209
Ṛjukaraṇa	76
Ṛkṣamukha	92, 102
R. L. Mitra IV ... 62, 192, 193, 196, 304, 305	
Rabi Dutta	27
Romaka	348
Romapāda	16
R. R. S.	28

S

Saleh	352
Sāhasāṅka	10
Sāhasāṅkacarita	10

PAGE.

Śaivālamula, ... 310
Sajika 355
Śaka 291
Śākhā 94,282,291
Śākya Muni 8
Śalākā 91,93,96,97,99,155,215,216
Śālākya Tantra 2
Sālotar 352
Śalya 91
Śalyanirghātanī 74,96,111,198,199
Śalya Tantra 2,14
Sāḍāsi 106
Śamī 96,113
Sammohinī 60
Sāmudrikā 288
Saṁvyuhaṇa 76
Sana 219
Sanasrad 290
Sanchi 306
Sanchi Topes 327
Sandaṁśa 80,91,92,95,96,103,104,105,106,232
Sandaracha 155
Sandhāna 221
Saṅghapāla 358
Sañjibanī 60
Śaṅkarācāryya XIII
Śaṅkara Miśra 213
Śaṅkaravijoya XIII
Saṅketamanjarī 28
Śaṅkha 210
Śaṅku 97,156
Śaṅkumukhī 288
Saptaparṇa 359
Sarad 18
Sarala 219

PAGE.

Śarapuṅkhamukha 93,97
Sarāba Saṁputa 143
Śararī 249
Śararīmukha 78,95,98,249
Śararīmukha Probe 171
Śārddūlamuṣṭhika 99
Sarjarasa 219
Sarkarā 355
Śārṅgadhara 31,66,68,115,122,128,140,142,143,144,145,147, 162,175,188,235,286,294,322,323,333.
Śārṅgadharapaddhati 62
Śārṅgadhara Saṁgraha 31,66,67,68,115,122,128,138,140,142, 145,147,162,175,188,235,136,286,322,323,333.
Śārṅgadharatīkā 32
Sarpavidyā 351
Sarpaphaṅamukha 93,168
Sarpāsya 98,277,278
Sarṣapa 39
Sarvadarśana Saṁgraha 29
Sarvāṅga Sundarī 27,118,225,237
Śaśaghātīmukha 92,103
Śastras 90,94,160,225
Śatapatha Brāhmana 164,301
Śatapuṣpa 359
Śaṭṭaka 316
Satyaputra 47
Saubatsika 96
Saura Siddhīnta 348
Savarikā 288
Sāvitrī 303
Sāyaṇa 29,64
Sāyaṇa's Commentary, I
S. C. Das 30
Sermicarpus Anacardeum 219

PAGE.

Śephālikā 282,291,293
Śibadāsa 10,30,31,62,227,293
Siddhayoga 29,30,184
Śigru 219
Śikya 311
Śilāditya ... ... II, 47,49
Siṁhadaṁṣṭrā 99
Siṁha Gupta 25,21
Siṁhamuka 92,96,101
Śīrovasti 188
Śīvana 78,79
Skandana 221
Skanda Purāṇa 55
Soma 220,303,318
Sonāmukhī 353,359
Sonnā 106
Sphoṭaka 356
Śramaṇa 345
Śramaneris 303
Śṛgālamukha 92,102
Śrībatsa, ... 96
Śrīkaṇṭha 124
Śrīveṣṭaka 219
Śṛṅga 96, 148, 151, 205, 342
Sṛṅgavera 355
Śrutavimśatikoṭī 48
Sruva 103, 164
Sthagikā 178
Sṭhīvana 94, 211
Sūcī ... 77, 78, 79, 94, 96, 98, 99, 243
Sūcīmukha 98, 99, 342
Sugandha Marica 353
Sukti 326
Śūlī 96
Surat Hospital 50

PAGE.

Suśruta IX,X, 2, 5, 6, 11, 12, 13, 74, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 28, 30, 31, 38, 42, 43, 57, 58, 59, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 73, 74, 77, 80, 86, 90, 91, 98, 106, 190, 111, 112, 114, 117, 118, 122, 123, 124, 126, 135, 138, 140, 143, 144, 145, 147, 148, 149, 150, 157, 161, 166, 168, 170, 171, 172, 173, 176, 179, 180, 184, 186, 188, 193, 194, 195, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 203, 204, 205, 206, 209, 213, 214, 215, 216, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 226, 230, 234, 237, 245, 249, 250, 252, 257, 259, 262, 263, 265, 267, 268, 269, 271, 273, 274, 279, 280, 290, 291, 292, 293, 295, 297, 299, 300, 303, 305, 306, 307, 308, 310, 312, 315, 322, 325, 326, 346, 350. 358.

Suśruta Saṁhitā 1, 2, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17, 19, 31, 38, 42, 44, 57, 58, 59, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 73, 74, 77, 80, 86, 87, 91, 92, 100, 101, 103, 106, 107, 108, 109, 114 117, 118, 121, 122, 123, 224, 133, 134, 135, 139, 141, 143, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 155, 161, 165, 168, 170, 172, 173, 175, 176, 178, 179, 180, 182, 185, 186, 187, 188, 190, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 216, 218, 222, 223, 226, 227, 234, 237, 238, 243, 245, 249, 257, 259, 263, 265, 269, 270, 271, 213, 274, 279, 280, 282, 283, 286, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 297, 299, 300, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 320, 321, 324, 325, 326, 332, 333, 355, 336, 343, 362.

Suvarnakha 353

Svastika Bandage ...

Svastika Yantras 91, 92, 96, 100, 101, 177

Śyenamukha 92, 103

T

Tāgara 360

Taittirīya Brahmaṇa 195

Tāla 91, 93, 96

	PAGE.
Tāla Yantra	106
Talipot	309
Talponi	309
Tamālpatra	354
Tāmbūl	354, 355, 360
Tanjore Library	5
Tantras	336
Tapasveda	321
Tarakṣumukha	92, 102
Tathāgata	308
Tattva Candrikā	227, 229, 253, 293
Tejapatra	354
Tejpat	346
Thakore Saheb	XV, 29, 331, 358
Tila	361
Tincana	355
Tinduka	39, 40
Tintiḍī	354, 356
Tīsaṭa	16
Trapuṣa	280
Tribaktra	95
Trikurccaka	78, 95, 98, 251, 279
Trimukha	110
Triphalā	354
Tripiṭaka	6
Trivit	354, 360
Tryasṭaka	311
Tūlā	324
Tunna Sevanī	209
Tuttha	355
Tvaka-kshira	354

U

Ubhalta	17
Udakamañcikā	311

	PAGE.
Ulūkamukha	92
Ulūkamukha Forceps	103
Ulukhala	318
Umeścandra Gupta	24
Undurkarnika	359
Unmathana	75
Unnamana	75, 76
Upānaha	307
Upānahasveda	323
Upaskara	213
Upatisso	49
Upaveda	1
Upayantra	91, 94, 175
Uṣanas	72
Ushira	359
Uṣīra	284
Uṣṇasveda	321
Uṣṇīṣa	305
Utkula	196
Utpala	310, 345
Utpalapatra ...	77, 94, 98, 99, 240, 241, 242, 258
Utpātana	79, 345
Uttara Tantra	12, 13, 24
Uttara-Vasti	121, 135, 138, 139

V

Vāca	39, 41, 355
Vaḍiśa	70, 77, 93, 95, 96, 97, 98, 98, 207, 264, 261
Vāgbhaṭa	5, 6, 7

PAGE.

Vāgbhaṭa I (Elder) ... 18, 19, 20, 21. 22, 23, 24, 25, 31
Vāgbhaṭa II (Younger) 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 28. 31, 67, 69, 73, 76, 79, 86, 88, 90, 96, 98, 104, 109, 113, 114, 117, 127, 136, 141, 143, 144, 148, 151, 156, 159, 160, 166, 186, 187, 189, 190, 195, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 203, 204, 206, 211, 212, 214, 220, 222. 225, 230, 232, 237, 238, 239, 243, 247, 250, 252, 253, 255. 256, 257, 258, 259, 262, 267, 271, 272, 276, 277, 280, 289
Vāgbhaṭa, III 28
Vāgbhaṭārtha Kaumudī 28, 67, 81, 118, 119, 121, 197, 203, 205, 211, 212, 223, 225, 231, 233, 237, 239, 240, 244, 247, 250, 251, 253, 255, 259, 263, 264, 265, 267, 270, 271, 272, 278
Vaidyaka 71
Vaidyakaśabdasindhu 24
Vairocana 356
Vaiśeṣika Darśanam 212
Vaiśeṣiki 9
Vājasenīya Saṁhitā 195
Vājīkaraṇa 2
Vajramukha 95
Vāla 94, 205
Vālaprabodhikā 28
Valkala 94
Vallāla 60, 231
Vallija 39
Vāllūki 148, 151
Vāṇa 12
Vanapalāṇḍu 361
Vanauṣadhi Darpaṇa 5
Vānu 30
Varāhamihira 347
Vartana 74
Vārttikas 16
Varuṇa 39

	PAGE.
Vaśiṣṭha	348
Vaśiṣṭha Siddhānta	348
Vastï Yantra	97, 99, 125, 137, 342
Vastra	94, 197
Vāsudeva	8
Vata	292
Vatsadanta	99, 256
Vāvvula	360
Vayasthā	41
Vāyu	303
Vedana	77
Vellitaka	209
Veṇikā	94, 176
Vetasa	98
Vetaspatra	77, 80, 95, 98, 264
Vibhītaka	37
Vi aṅga	39, 360
Vijayratna Sen Gupta	26, 27
Vikarṣaṇa	75
Vikramāditya	49
Vikula	196
Vilva	38, 268, 354, 360
Vimbi	268
Vināmana	75
Vinaya Saṁgraha	303
Vīracintāmaṇi	62
Vīrasvamī	17
Viṣagranthi	310
Viṣakha	46
Viṣamuṣṭi	354
Viṣa-pāthara	198
Viṣavaidya	351
Viśrāvaṇa	78
Viśvāmitra	11, 14, 15, 51
Viśvaprakāśa	10

PAGE.

Vitāna 178
Vivaraṇa 75
Vivartana 75
Vraṇa 356
Vraṇa-vasti 97, 121
Vṛddha Sarṅgadhara 70, 71
Vṛddha Suśruta 14
Vṛddhipatra 70, 77, 79, 94, 98, 99, 226, 232, 234, 235, 241, 279
Vṛhadāraṇyaka 81
Vṛhat Saṁhitā 72
Vrīhibaktra 98
Vrīhimukha 77, 95, 96, 99, 123, 256, 257, 258, 259, 279
Vṛkamukha 92, 102
Vṛnda Mādhaba 29, 30, 184
Vyādhana 77, 78, 80
Vyāghramukha 92, 102
Vyājanī 308
Vyākhyā Kusumāvalī 124
Vyāvartana 76
Vyūhana 74

Y

Yājñavalkya 20, 21
Yajurveda 195, 301
Yamaka 178
Yamaka-natthu-karaṇī 85, 119
Yantras 90, 100
Yantra-Saṭaka 185, 186, 342
Yaṣṭi 306
Yaṣaṭi-yantra 99
Yava 37, 265

PAGE.

Yavana 348

Yavāsa 359

Yogaratnākara 66, 124, 148, 151, 162, 168, 174, 185, 189, 194, 208, 248, 259, 271

Yoni-vraṇekṣaṇa 97, 342

Yudhiṣṭhira 21

Yujña-śaṅku 166